Telegraphic Address:
"DOBSONS,
BOLTON."
National Telephone:
No. 601

Established 1790

Codes Used:
A B C, Western
Union, Lieber, and
Bentley's.

DOBSON & BARLOW

LIMITED

BOLTON, ENGLAND

SAN FRANCISCO PUBLIC LIBRARY

3 1223 90046 7227

SAN FRANCISCO
PUBLIC LIBRARY
BUSINESS, SCIENCE &
TECHNOLOGY CENTER
REFERENCE
BOOK

Not to be taken from the Library

TEXTILE ENGINEERS IN THE

Telegraphic Address:
"DOBSONS,
BOLTON."
National Telephone:
No. 601.

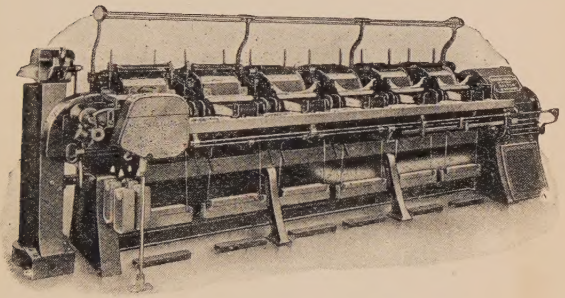
Established 1790

Codes Used:
A B C, Western
Union, Lieber, and
Bentley's.

DOBSON & BARLOW

LIMITED

BOLTON, ENGLAND



IMPROVED NASMITH TYPE COMBING MACHINE.

MAKERS OF THE FOLLOWING:—Cotton Gins, Hopper Bale Breakers and Mixing Lattices, Patent Pneumatic Delivery Arrangement, Hopper Feeders, Porcupine Openers, Vertical and Horizontal Openers, Patent Exhaust Openers, Scutchers, Carding Engines, Improved Grinding Machines, Improved Grinding Rollers, Stripping and Burnishing Brushes, Sliver Lap Machines, Derby Doublers, Draw and Lap Machines combined, Heilman & Nasmith Combing Machines, Drawing Frames, Fly Frames, Self-acting Mules, with Wood or Steel Carriages, Self-acting Twiners, Self-acting Billeys, Ring or Flyer Spinning Frames, Ring or Flyer Doubling Frames, Reels, Winding and Gassing Frames, with or without Quick Traverse Motion, Banding Machines, Bundling Presses.

ALSO MAKERS of Machinery for Wool, Worsted, Silk, and Waste Yarns, and of many other Machines, Tools, Spindles, Flyers, Rollers, etc., etc.

MACHINERY

FOR

DOUBLERS

OF ALL CLASSES OF

YARNS

AND

THREADS.

JOSEPH STUBBS LTD.

MILL STREET WORKS, **ANCOATS,**

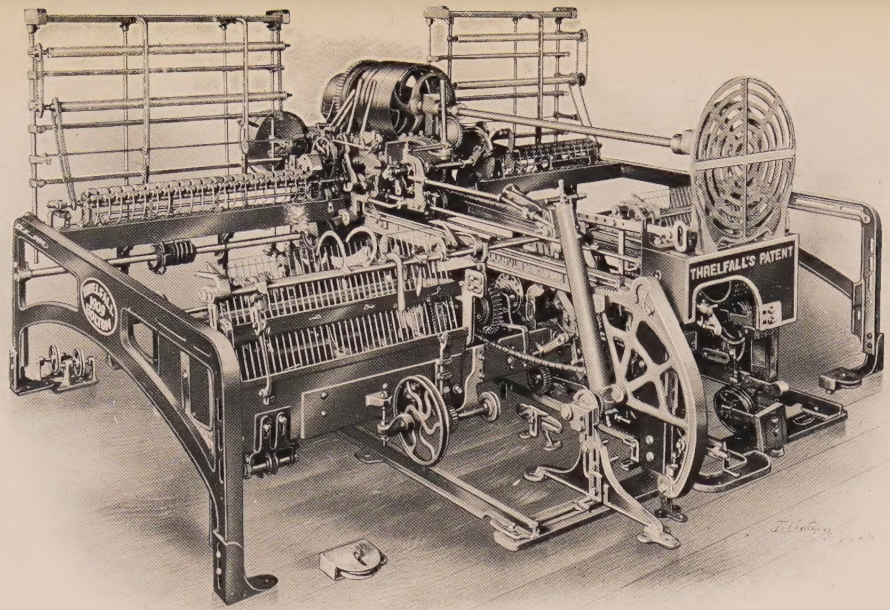
BRANCH WORKS:
OPENSHAW.

MANCHESTER.

OPENSHAW WORKS:

IRON CASTINGS,

ORDINARY, SOFT, & ANNEALED.



RICHARD THRELFALL,
BRIDGEMAN PLACE WORKS,
BOLTON.

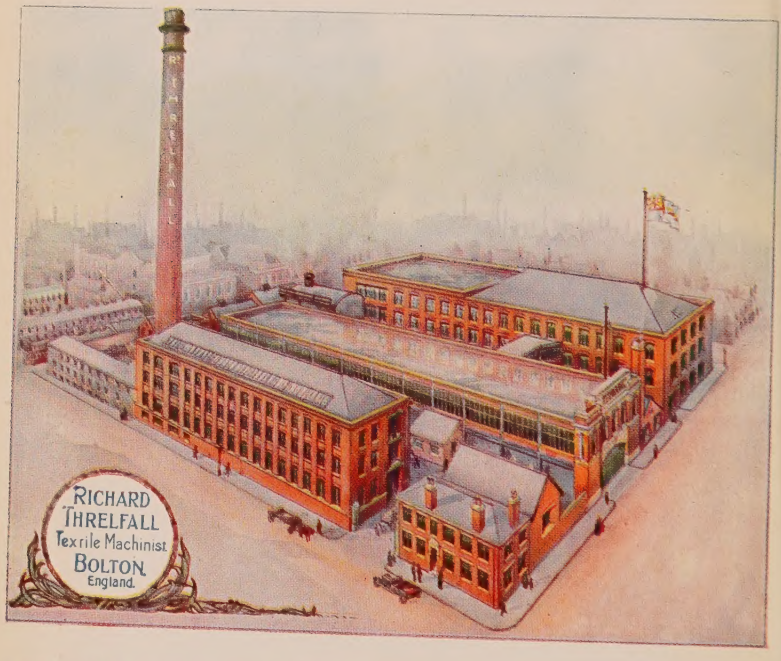
Maker of
MULES for COARSE, MEDIUM,
and FINE YARNS.

RICHARD THRELFALL,

BRIDGEMAN PLACE WORKS,

BOLTON.

ESTABLISHED 1834.



MULES FOR MEDIUM & FINE YARNS

60's TO 150's.

Speciality :

MULES FOR EXTRA FINE YARNS

UP TO 350's.

Telephone :
1228 BOLTON (2 lines).

Telegrams :
"THRELFALLS," BOLTON.

COTTON SPINNING

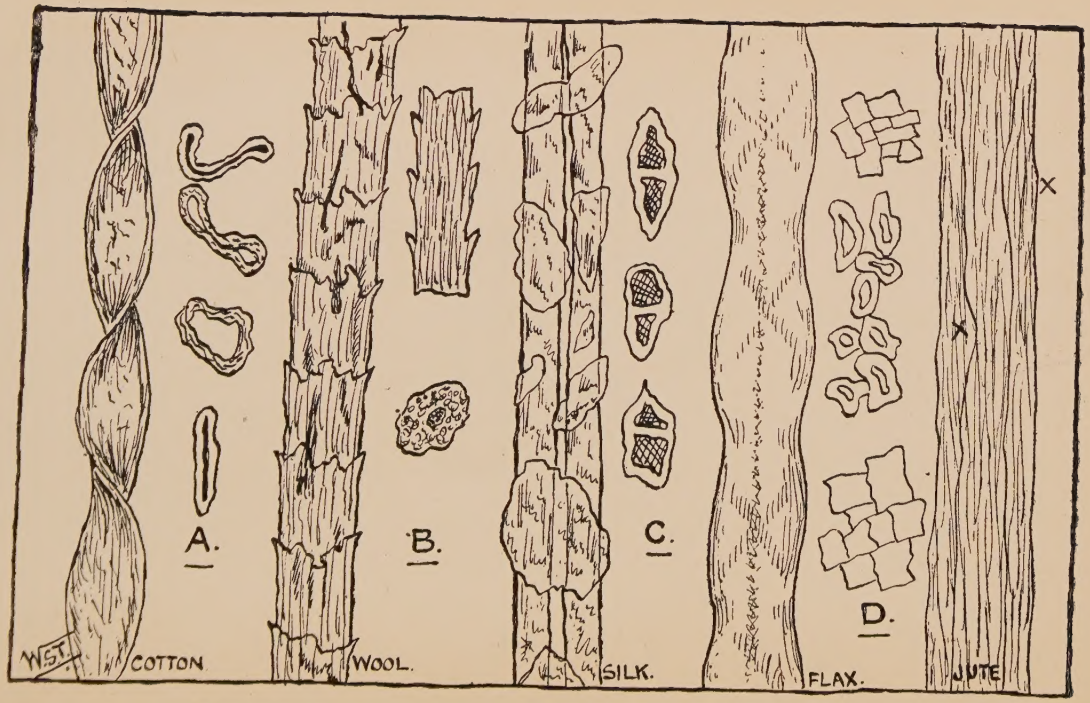
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
LONDON · BOMBAY · CALCUTTA · MADRAS
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
NEW YORK · BOSTON · CHICAGO
DALLAS · SAN FRANCISCO

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, LTD.
TORONTO

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/cottonspinning0001will



CHARACTERISTIC APPEARANCE OF VARIOUS FIBRES UNDER THE MICROSCOPE.

COTTON SPINNING

BY

WILLIAM SCOTT TAGGART, M.I.Mech.E.

AUTHOR OF
'COTTON MACHINERY SKETCHES,' 'COTTON SPINNING CALCULATIONS,'
'QUADRANT AND SHAPER OF THE S.A. MULE,'
'COTTON MILL MANAGEMENT,' ETC.

LATE EXAMINER IN COTTON SPINNING TO THE CITY AND GUILDS OF LONDON INSTITUTE
ASSESSOR IN COTTON SPINNING AND WEAVING TO THE WEST RIDING OF YORKSHIRE

VOLUME I

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS

EIGHTH EDITION

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
ST. MARTIN'S STREET, LONDON
1924

COPYRIGHT

First Edition 1896
Second Edition 1902. *Third Edition* 1906. *Reprinted* 1908
Fourth Edition 1913. *Fifth Edition* 1915
Sixth Edition with Appendix 1919
Seventh Edition with Appendix 1920
Eighth Edition 1924

REF 677.2 T128c 1924
v.1
Taggart, William Scott,
b. 1865.
Cotton spinning /

1924-

212555

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN

S.F. PUBLIC LIBRARY

PREFACE

THE following pages, which formed originally a series of articles in *The Textile Mercury*, have been written with the avowed intention of supplying to the students of our technical schools the means of gratifying what is undoubtedly a growing desire for the acquisition of knowledge on the subject of cotton spinning. Whilst as a nation we are in a position in many respects to maintain an industrial supremacy, yet it cannot be denied that at present we are passing through a very severe crisis, and unless something is done to keep apace of the enormous strides other countries are taking, and which enable them to compete successfully with our own products, we shall find ourselves lagging behind and losing the advantages we have hitherto possessed.

The keen competition engendered by this state of affairs is resulting in the intensifying of the truth of many economic laws which in prosperous times are too often ignored, but which in their logical sequence prove only too clearly, like the laws of evolution, that the weakest must

go to the wall, the fittest only can survive in the industrial world. Apart from the commercial aspect of the question, there is within most people some desire to gain knowledge for its own sake, for the sake of the pleasure it gives in enabling something to be done well, in fulfilling a duty satisfactorily, or in the exercise of ability when it assists in the performance of a work which is done better than any previously attempted.

Much has been done during the last few years to remedy the shortcomings in our educational system, and the results of these efforts are beginning to make themselves felt, and are widespread in their beneficial effects; technical education is making progress, and several excellent books have been written by men competent to speak with authority, but there is an ever-growing demand for fuller details, increased facilities for reasoning, for opportunities of the development of ingenuity which is fostered by the presentation of the most recent efforts and results, and in addition some encouragement towards a graphic method of conveying our ideas to others. All these demands call for immediate attention, and the present book is given to the world in the hope that it makes a step forward in the right direction towards the satisfaction of the requirements indicated above.

The greatest care has been exercised in bringing every subject fully up to date, and an especial feature has been

made of the illustrations, both in number and quality. It cannot be too strongly insisted upon that all possible incentives ought to be given to students and others interested in cotton spinning, to take advantage of every opportunity that presents itself of sketching for themselves portions of the machines they are studying, and in the following pages this feature has been kept well in the foreground, to such an extent that the author can reasonably claim to have done considerably more in this direction than any previous writer. An endeavour has also been made to bring the text more into line with the educational status of the present day reader, who demands something more than mere description, and who is beginning to understand the subject sufficiently to enable him to see through the fallacies of many of the so-called explanations of its difficulties.

It is a somewhat remarkable fact, but nevertheless a demonstrable one, that cotton spinning has never taken the place to which it is entitled among the other great branches of mechanical science, and this in spite of the fact that it presents probably more difficult mechanical problems successfully solved than any of the other departments to which so much attention is directed; it rests with the rising generation to say whether it can be raised from a mere process into the dignity of an important section of mechanics, and this can only be done by showing that the

subject possesses within itself principles and actions that have the highest claim to attention both from a mechanical as well as a scientific standpoint; there exists a few who are doing their utmost to establish it on a proper basis, and whose work appeals to all thoughtful readers, but only the outskirts in this direction have been touched. Technical education is widening the field of thought and preparing the ground for a more thorough appreciation of its importance, and it is upon the results of such teaching that our future growth and success must be based.

W. S. T.

BOLTON, *November* 1895.

PREFACE TO FOURTH EDITION

THE book has been brought up to date and much new matter and drawings added. The various firms who have so willingly assisted in granting the use of sketches or blocks are thanked for their kindness. Both the Author and Publishers trust that the present edition will prove as interesting and useful to the student and to the practical cotton spinner as the previous ones have done.

WM. SCOTT TAGGART.

BOLTON, 1913.

PREFACE TO FIFTH EDITION

A CONSIDERABLE amount of additional matter has been added in the form of an Appendix, and a number of new drawings of machines and details have been prepared. Some of these drawings are hand-sketched as examples to those readers who may be studying cotton spinning in the Technical School. Attention is specially directed to the remarks on the testing of laps and slivers, and also to the more exact methods of ascertaining the length of the cotton fibre.

Several firms are thanked for their kindness in allowing the author to represent the latest types of machines.

WM. SCOTT TAGGART.

BOLTON, 1915.

PREFACE TO SEVENTH EDITION

A LARGE amount of new matter has been added to the Appendix, to which special attention is directed. Whilst orthodox methods are necessary in a text-book of this kind, it has been thought advisable to make suggestions that the opening, cleaning, and carding processes are by no means perfect, and that much remains to be done in the way of research work in order to lay a foundation on which improvements can be built.

Young students must, of course, learn the methods and details of present practice, but the older students and those in responsible positions in the industry must enter more fully into the underlying principles, and realise that considerable advances are still possible in many directions in cotton-mill processes and the practical details of machinery, and even supervision.

WM. SCOTT TAGGART.

BOLTON, 1920.

PREFACE TO EIGHTH EDITION

(NINTH ISSUE)

THE book has been brought up to date, and the Appendix of the previous edition has now been incorporated in the body of the book. Owing to the retention of machinery for long periods in some of the cotton mills, it has not been considered advisable to eliminate some of the details that are now discarded. Blowing room machinery has received recently far more attention than has previously been given to it, and the Author's contention in the early 'nineties that the Crighton Opener could and ought to be used for all classes of cotton is now bearing fruition, and many mills are now using this opener for fine counts. Other openers have also received considerable attention, but much more remains to be done before it can be said that the lap produced in the blowing room is in a fit condition to be presented to the card. The use of cages, on the aspirator principle, for the pneumatic carrying of cotton from machine to machine along dust trunks, etc., promises to develop into an important feature.

The Carding Engine is beginning to be a little better understood, and the old-fashioned ideas on the settings and adjustments are loosing their hold on the younger authorities in our mills. The Author's book *Cotton Mill Management* enters very fully into a mass of practical detail connected with the processes and machinery dealt with in this volume, and to those directly interested a perusal of it may prove advantageous.

WM. SCOTT TAGGART.

BOLTON, 1924.

CONTENTS

PAGE

INTRODUCTION xxv

CHAPTER I

The Cotton Fibre, Varieties of Cotton, etc. 1

CHAPTER II

Cotton Gins 35

CHAPTER III

Bale Breakers 56

CHAPTER IV

Cotton Mixing, Hopper Feeders, etc. 74

CHAPTER V

Openers and Scutchers 101

CHAPTER VI

Carding 225

INDEX 367

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG.		PAGE
	Microscopic Views of various Fibres . . .	*Frontispiece*
1.	Map of the Cotton Growing Countries of the World . .	3
	Diagram of Prices of Standard Grades of Cotton . . .	16
2.	Microscopic appearance of the Cotton Fibre	25
3.	Diagram of Irregularities in the Twist of the Fibre . .	28
4.	Section of Double "Knife Roller" Gin	39
5.	Diagram showing effect of Knives in "Knife Roller" Gin .	40
6.	Section of the Ginning Organs of "Knife Roller" Gin .	40
7.	Section of Single "Macarthy" Gin	43
8.	Ginning Organs in the "Macarthy" Gin	44
9.	Section of a Double "Macarthy" Gin	46
10.	Double Roller "Macarthy" Gin	48
11.	Section of a "Saw" Gin	49
12.	Bars of "Saw" Gin	50
13.	Section of "Saw" Gin with Double Row of Saws . .	51
14.	,, ,, Breast Rollers . . .	52
	Foot-Roller Gin	55
	Churka Gin, Simple Form	55
15.	Section through Roller Bale Breaker	61
16.	,, Pedal ,, ...	63
17.	,, Porcupine ,, ...	64
18.	,, Hopper ,, ...	66
19.	,, ,, ,, ...	67
20.	,, ,, ,, ...	68
21.	,, ,, ,, ...	69
22.	,, ,, ,, ...	69
23.	,, ,, ,, ...	71
24.	,, ,, ,, ...	72
25.	,, ,, ,, ...	73

FIG.		PAGE
26.	Mixing Room	75
27.	,,	77
28.	Combination of Hopper Bale Breaker, Hopper Feeder, Buckley Opener, and Lap End	78
29.	Plan and Elevation of Combined Machines	79
30.	,, ,, ,, ,,	80
31.	Hopper Bale Breaker and Hopper Feeder. Platts	82
32.	Pneumatic Delivery of Cotton. Dobson and Barlow	83
33.	Details of the Pneumatic System. ,,	84
34.	Pneumatic Delivery. Another Method	85
35.	Details of same	87
36.	Pneumatic Delivery of Cotton to Mixings	88
37.	Section of Hopper Feeder	91
38.	,, ,,	93
39.	,, ,,	95
40.	,, ,,	96
41.	,, ,,	96
42.	Plan of Opening Machines	98
43.	Section through Hopper Feeder	99
44.	,, ,,	100
45.	,, Small Porcupine Opener	102
46.	,, ,, ,,	102
47.	,, ,,	104
48.	,, a Vertical Beater Opener	106
49.	,, Ball Bearing Footstep	107
50.	,, Footstep Bearing	110
51.	,, ,,	111
52.	,, Double Vertical Opener	111
53.	,, Vertical Opener with Horizontal Beater and Lap Part	112
54.	,, Horizontal Conical Beater Opener	113
55.	,, Large Porcupine Opener (Single) with Hopper Feeder	116
56.	,, Large Porcupine Opener (Double) with Hopper Feeder	116
57.	,, Buckley Opener (Single)	120

FIG.		PAGE
58.	Section through Buckley Opener (Double)	121
59.	,, Horizontal Exhaust Opener	123
60.	,, ,, ,, Feed Part	125
61.	,, Porcupine Feeder and Vertical Opener	126
62.	Combined Vertical Opener, Hopper Feeder, Porcupine Beater, Bladed Beater, and Lap part	127
63.	Horizontal Exhaust Opener	127
64.	Large Horizontal Opener (Single)	128
65.	,, ,, (Double)	128
66.	Double Cylinder Opener	129
67.	Single Scutcher	129
68.	Hopper Feeder and Small Porcupine Opener	130
69.	Double Opener, with Condenser Feeding Cages	131
70.	Buckley Opener. Taylor and Lang	132
71.	,, ,, ,,	132
72.	,, ,, Howard and Bullough	133
73.	,, ,, for Four Laps. Taylor and Lang	133
74. 75. 76.	Youlten Opener	136
77.	Hopper Spiked Lattice	140
78.	Evener Lattice	141
79.	,, ,,	141
80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87.	Patent Lattice Opener	142–146
88.	"S.T." Opener	148
89.	Single Scutcher	150
90.	,, ,,	151
91.	,, ,,	152
92.	Diagram of Doubling from Laps	153

FIG.		PAGE
93.	Longitudinal Section through Pedals and Roller	155
94.	Diagram explanatory of the Curves on Cone Drums	156
95.	,, of Construction of Cone Drums	159
96. 97. 98.	Feed Regulating Motion of Openers and Scutchers	161
99.	Bowls and Bowl Rail to reduce Friction	163
100.	,, ,, ,, ,,	164
101.	Link and Lever Regulating Motion	166
102.	,, ,, ,,	167
103.	Wire ,, ,, ,,	168
104.	Link ,, ,, ,,	169
105.	Feed Part of Scutcher with Pedals	170
106.	,, ,, ,, Feed Rollers	171
107.	Adjustable Beater Bars	172
108.	,, ,,	173
109.	Feed Rollers and Pedals	174
110.	Stripping Plate, Beater Bars, etc.	174
111.	Adjustable Beater Bars, etc.	175
112.	Elevation and Plan of Double Scutcher	176
113.	Section through Beater, Beater Bars, etc.	177
114.	Teacher's Patent Pedal	178
115.	Three-Bladed Beater	179
116.	Two-Bladed ,,	179
117.	Krishner's Combing Beater	183
118.	Lap End of Scutcher	184
119.	Stop Motion for Full Lap	185
120.	,, ,,	186
121.	,, ,,	187
122. 123.	Weighting of the Calender Rollers of Lap End	188
124.	Diagram of a Perfect Lap	189
125.	,, an Irregular Lap	189
126.	,, Pedal Roller Ends	190
127.	,, Scutcher and Opener Cone Drums	194
128.	,, ,, ,, ,,	194

FIG. PAGE
129. Diagram of Scutcher and Opener Cone Drums . . . 196
130. 131. Locking Motion for Beater Covers 199, 200
132. Section of Scutcher 201
133. ,, ,, ... 202
134. Dust Grid Lattice 203
135. Lap End of Buckley Opener 204
136. Pressure Gauge 205
137. Diagram of Two Wheels in Gear 208
138. ,, a Train of Wheels 209
139. Elevation of the Gearing of a Scutcher 213
140. Plan ,, ,, ,, ... 214
141. Dust Flues and Dust Chimney 223
142. ,, ,, ,, ... 223
143. ,, ,, ,, ... 224
144. ,, ,, ,, ... 224
145. Section through Roller and Clearer Card 229
146. View of Roller and Clearer 230
147. Section through the Revolving Flat Card 234
148. Feed Roller Arrangement in Card 235
149. Dish feed ,, ,, ... 235
150. Effect of Taker-in on the Cotton 238
151. Dish Feeds for various Cottons 239
152. Dish Feed Taker-in, Mote Knives and Casing . . . 240
153. 154. 155. Diagrams of the Action of Taker-in Teeth . . . 242
156. Card Gauges 244
157. Section through Feed Part of Card 246
158. ,, ,, ,, and Taker-in Cylinder, etc. . 246
159. ,, ,, Taker-in and Cylinder 246
160. Section of Card Filleting 247
161. Open Set Card Wire 248
162. Twill Set ,, ... 248
163. Rib Set ,, ... 248
164. Angles of ,, ... 248

FIG. PAGE
165. Section showing Flats entering upon the Cylinder . . 251
166. Relative Positions of Flats and Cylinder 251
167. Diagram Explanatory of the Effect of Grinding . . 255
168. Card Flexible Bend, Five Setting Points 257
169. ,, ,, Single ,, ,, ... 258
170. ,, ,, Diagram of ,, ... 259
171. 172. 173. ,, ,, Five Setting Points 262
174. Card Bend with Steel Bands 265
175. ,, Flexible Bend, Single Setting Point 267
176. ,, ,, Diagram 267
177. ,, ,, Single Setting Point 269
178. ,, ,, and Framing Section of . . . 270
179. ,, ,, Single Setting Point 273
180. ,, ,, Five setting Points 275
181. ,, ,, Adjustments for 276
182. Adjustable Card Centre 278
183. ,, ,, ... 279
184. ,, ,, ... 280
185. ,, ,, ... 281
186. Section through Doffer and Cylinder 283
187. 188. 189. 190. 191. Coiler and Details 284
192. 193. Flat Stripping Comb 287
194. ,, ,, ... 288
195. Section of Card Wires 290
196. 197. 198. 199. 200 Flat Grinding Method 293

FIG.		PAGE
201.	Flat Grinding Method	294
202.	,, ,,	295
203.	,, ,, Diagram of	297
204.	Horsfall Grinding Roller	298
205.	Doffer Driving	299
206.	Comb Box	300
207.	Slow Motion for Doffer	302
208.	Weighting of Card Feed Roller	303
209.	Diagram of Card Web	304
210.	,, ,,	306
211.	Gearing of Card, Elevation of	307
212.	,, ,, Plan of	308
213.	Mote Knives and Undercasing	319
214.	Flat Grinding Apparatus	320
215.	Doffer Slowering Motion. Howard and Bullough	321
216.	Grinding Roller Transverse Motion	322
217.	Card Web, Arrangement of Fibres in	323
218.	Mixed Carding Engine	324
219. 220.	Locking Motion for Card Covers	325, 327
221 to 230.	Diagrams illustrating Experiments in the Bending of Card Wire	328–337
231 to 238.	Diagrams illustrating the various Carding Actions	340–345
239 to 244.	Diagrams illustrating Notes on Carding	347–353
245. 246.	Diagrams of the Length of Fibres	358, 360
247.	,, Irregularities in Scutcher Laps	363
248. 249.	,, ,, ,, Card Sliver	364, 365

INTRODUCTION

THE enormous changes that have effected the well-being of the world in every direction during the last hundred years, as well as those that are constantly taking place around us at the present time, have crowded so quickly upon us as to prevent us judging adequately of their true relative importance; our being in constant touch with them and surrounded by their effects cause us to fail in conceiving of their magnitude or appreciating their worth at its real value: in this way we loose all sense of proportion, and our estimate of their utility compared with previous conditions is considerably reduced or impaired as a consequence; it is therefore most desirable that a brief review of the history of cotton spinning should be given in order to present in a kind of perspective the order of succession of the great changes that have ultimately led up to its present position.

The cotton industry, which has now spread itself over almost the entire inhabitable globe in its great centres of population, is undoubtedly one of the most potent factors the world has had in its civilising influence, and it has probably done as much or even more in contributing to the welfare of mankind and his progress as any of the other great branches of industry. Like all the important facts of our existence, whether we deal with the formation

of the universe or the building up of a man's character, we must be prepared to recognise in its essentials that all-pervading force known as the law of evolution. The cotton industry is no exception, in its methods of development, to this mighty principle of the universe, and in tracing its history we shall see that there has been a gradual growth, from practically the most primitive beginnings, going on through all the intermediate stages up to its present position. We must be quite ready to acknowledge that there has been long periods of apparently unbroken calm as well as sudden outbursts of energy in its growth; but it does not follow that such erratic actions in its mode of development neutralise the theory of its growth, any more than the sudden shock of an earthquake or the unexpected outburst of a volcano destroys the scientific story of creation; thought and action for long periods may apparently be stationary, but a casual glance at the world's history will show that, no matter how abrupt the introduction of inventions have been which make what might be termed a fundamental departure from previous methods of action, the people have accepted them as an evitable step in the advance of progress, and whilst some have suffered through their introduction and fought blindly against them, their display of ignorance has been but a feeble attempt to keep the world in a state of infancy and themselves in a continual condition of drudgery. In tracing back to its beginnings the story of cotton spinning, we must first try to realise that many of the great difficulties that surrounded the successful formation of yarn had been solved long periods before the principles were applied to the making of cotton, for the use of cotton as a fibre for the purposes of thread-making and weaving is a very recent occurrence compared with

the remote antiquity of other fibrous substances and their manufacture for similar purposes, and it is to these that we must seek for many of the beginnings or steps that have led up to its present position. In the first place, it is highly probable that the coverings used by primitive man as a protection were of two kinds and contemporary in their origin, viz. that afforded by the luxuriant vegetation of the remote ages, and the shelter furnished by the skins of animals; these would be used chiefly as a shelter against climatic conditions, and only after long periods of time would they begin to be used as a distinct covering for the bodies. During this time there would be gradually evolved some idea of connecting two or more pieces of the respective substances together. The vegetable and animal kingdom contain several distinct means of solving this problem, and are of such a nature as to be easily recognised. The grasses and seeds would be taken advantage of at an early period for this purpose, and the forests would present many means of doing the same thing in its climbing plants and the long thin trailing branches of many of its trees; fibres of a finer character would be discovered in due course, when much of the vegetation, after its decay, left the skeleton of its leaves and bark existing as fine filaments which could easily be recognised and put to some use. Those who took advantage of the opportunities or facilities afforded them by the animal kingdom would quickly see the advantages of the fibrous covering of the skins, and some method of tying hairs together to obtain longer strands would naturally follow; stronger forms of bands or ligaments were readily made by cutting the skins into thin lengths, and there would be no difficulty in knotting or tying these together to get any required length; but so far this was not spinning, and the great

problem connected with this feature as yet remained unsolved. Spinning is in its essential the practice of twisting, and in the subject under consideration the name has been appropriated as a description of a complete process, in which a number of loose fibres are bound together as one thread simply by means of a twisting operation. The practice of twisting for such a purpose was unquestionably the beginning and end of the whole art of spinning, and upon it is based the foundation of the industry. In principle it remains to-day what it was in the beginning, and its two great objects, viz. that of bringing into a smaller compass and more orderly condition a large number of loose fibres so as to form a strand, and also by this means to enable the bound fibres to offer greater resistance to being pulled asunder, which resulted in a greatly increased strength, are to-day the chief aims towards which all the operations of a modern cotton-mill try to attain perfection.

It will be quite obvious to even a casual observer that the act of twisting any substance of a fibrous nature has the direct effect of weakening it, and according to the amount of twist given to it the reduction in strength will vary in the same degree and in some fixed proportion. We thus see that in any yarn we find it impossible to obtain the maximum strength of the multiplied individual fibres, and one chief cause of this is the loss of strength owing to the fibres being twisted together; this is by no means a small matter, as the loss in many cases reaches a very high percentage of the calculated strength of an individual fibre. Much remains to be done in the direction of ascertaining the influence of twist on the strength of yarn, and although at present we recognise several rules as to the amount required for certain purposes, it is almost

unnecessary to point out that such a basis is far from being exact or satisfactory.

In twisting a number of fibres together, although each individual fibre is weakened, we must understand that the ultimate strength of the yarn is not tested by strains which act at such a distance apart as the length of the staple, but generally at a considerably greater distance, and in this case the weakness of the collected fibres would be their readiness to slide over each other; it is this weakness that is enormously strengthened by the twisting process. The precise point at which the maximum strength is attained is a very moot point as yet, but it is easily seen that after a certain number of twists are given to the yarn its strength begins to be reduced, and the excessive strain put upon the individual fibres through the distortion of twist, reaches a point where finally the mere fact of carrying the twist a little farther causes rupture.

This all-important origin and foundation of spinning was known and practised from the remotest period of the known history of the world, and, moreover, its many corollaries, or rather the several consequences which would naturally follow the doing of it in as perfect a manner as possible, were also thoroughly understood; the specimens of yarn that have come down to us, and the description of still more remote work to which older writers refer, show us that uniformity of twist was recognised as of vital importance; rotundity of the thread and regularity in its diameter was a feature that was carefully kept in view, and the degree of fineness to which a thread or yarn could be spun is scarcely credible, seeing that even the best machines of the present day are unable to produce better results.

The attainments to which this feature of forming threads

had reached must have been a growth of a very long period, and innumerable steps were no doubt necessary before the intermediate stages and difficulties were successfully overcome. Probably the first means of twisting fibres together would be for some one to take a bunch of hair or strands of bark, and drawing them out into as equal a line as possible, and of a quantity suitable for the purpose in view, and then to take it and twist it by means of the two hands into a band or strand; such a method as this would be somewhat limited in the length to which a rope could be made, and it would be quickly improved by employing two persons to do the work, one to twist at one end of the newly-formed band, whilst the other attended to the equalising of the loose fibres that were being twisted together; this last man would readily see that by laying fibres upon those that were receiving the twist, so as to cause an overlapping, an incorporation of the whole took place, and from the observation of this fact would naturally follow the continual twisting and addition of new material, so that no limit was placed on the length to which a strand could be made. This, it will be noticed, was all hand labour, and necessarily slow and tedious, so there came a time when an improvement was effected in obtaining a quicker mode of twisting; the twisting of different diameters of threads between the two hands would lead to the suggestion that a certain diameter seemed to be easier to turn with the least fatigue to the worker, and from this would come the improvement of using a short rod of suitable diameter, and to the end of which the twisted strand would be hooked or fastened; an improvement on this would be made when advantage was taken of a bent piece of wood, shaped in such a manner that if simply held loosely in one hand the twists could be put in by the turning of

the other end; it is easy to conceive of a variety of circumstances that would suggest such a course, and it must have been a comparatively early mechanical means of effecting the result; most probably for a long period this would represent the highest point capable of being reached in the spinning process, and even to-day for work of a casual nature, such as the forming of rough bands, etc., we find it very frequently employed. We now come to a stage in the history, nearer to our own time, and one mere conjecture gives place to positive fact, where the order of successive steps can with tolerable certainty be pointed out, and where distinct claims to invention can be made. So far the progress has been apparently very slow, and has spread itself over long ages of the world's history; but, nevertheless, each step has been a fundamental advance upon its predecessor; the effect of twist was one of the greatest discoveries of any century, and the various methods of obtaining it were distinct and sound inventions, and no mere details of working. The crank applied to the purpose, whether it was original or not, so far as its other uses were concerned, must have caused what might be termed a revolution in the trade; and, together with all this, there would be going on a gradual building up of knowledge as to the requisites for making a perfect thread, all of which would be but a preparation for the further improvement which followed.

The next great step was the devising of some means whereby a reduction in the number of the hands employed could be obtained. Hitherto it required two people to produce the yarn; this was an inconvenience, and efforts were made to overcome it. It must have been noticed at some time that the occasional accidental slipping away of the twisting stick from the hands of the twister at the be-

ginning of the spinning operation would cause all the twist to be taken out, and the momentum of the hanging stick would enable it to continue turning and to put twists in in the opposite direction. Some ingenious mind would take advantage of the suggestion offered by this action, and very soon the world was treated to a means of spinning in which only one person was necessary. The way it was done was by using a species of spindle with a nick or slit at one end; a portion of the fibres of wool most probably was fastened in the slit, and the spindle hanging down was set revolving by one hand, whilst the other fed or pierced up the fibres to form the thread. When a sufficient length had been made, the twisted portion was wound on the spindle and its end again fixed in the slit, and another length made in the same way. This went on until a spindle was full. In several parts of the world, but notably in the country districts of South America, this system of spinning is extensively practised, with only slight variation of details from that described. The girl or woman during a walk carries out with her a stock of wool or cotton and her spindle, and whether standing, walking, or sitting, her spinning is always going on and her spindle filling. Several details were added which improved this spinning process, notably the one where the weight of the spindle was recognised as an important factor in the maintenance of its revolution; we therefore find that a heavier spindle was used, or its weight increased, by an additional weight to give it a momentum. The method of carrying the loose fibrous substance was found to be inconvenient, and after a time a preliminary process in the winding in a very loose condition of the wool upon a long stick was employed. This stick is known as a distaff, and though not a necessary adjunct,

yet its usefulness came to be generally acknowledged and extensively used.

So far, the description has given processes in which no mechanical power had been called in to produce the result, with the exception of the crank; but in course of time the pulley and its multiplying power of speed was taken advantage of and introduced. The crank was quickly displaced, and a reversion made to the old hook and stick; but instead of turning it with the hands, a band was passed round it and over a large pulley in such a way that one revolution of the latter caused the stick to revolve a number of times, according to their relative diameters. Two people would be necessary to work this primitive machine at first; but very soon it would be found an easy matter for the man who fed the loose wool to revolve the pulley himself by having an endless band connected with it, and which he drew along as the yarn was spun. Such a system as this is still generally used in various parts of Europe, especially in Germany, and large quantities of ropes, etc., are manufactured by the process.

Following upon this discovery came the recognition of what is the basis of our modern mule spinning. Hitherto either a hook or slit in the spindle end had been used to fasten the thread whilst spinning was taking place. Some observant mind noticed—what must have been a very frequent occurrence—that if the thread was moved out of a straight line with the axis of the spindle, and at the time became loose from the slit, the spinning continued, and twists were put in just the same. The reason for this is not far to seek. If yarn is held at an angle, the spindle in revolving will naturally attempt to wind it on; but in doing so the thread travels up the spindle till it reaches the point, and here it slips over. If the revolution

is continued, this slipping over the end of the spindle is repeated, and every time it happens a twist is given. Apparatus incorporating this improvement were largely used. A large pulley, moved by the hand of the worker, drove a small pulley on the spindle; a distaff containing the loose fibres was supported on the lap or the floor, and the material guided at an angle on to the spindle. In this position the twists would be put in, and after a suitable length had been spun, the pulley would be reversed and the yarn wound on the spindle. Other forms of spinning machines, differing from this in the method of twisting and winding, are in existence, and even in use, showing clearly the advances that have been made in our modern systems, especially in the details. The continuous spinning and winding of yarn by means of a flyer is a very old means of working, and yet its persistence has been remarkable.

It must be understood that it is more than probable that most, if not all, the improvements pointed out were made in connection with the manufacture of wool or some species of long fibrous vegetable material; but when cotton came to be acknowledged as a suitable substitute for other fibrous substances, adaptations would readily be made to render them capable of treating such a delicate and short fibre. The freeing of the cotton from the enclosed seeds exercised the ingenuity of several nations, especially India, and labour-saving devices were employed to dispense with the tedious and slow process of hand-ginning. At first an iron or wood roller was placed upon a heap of seed cotton, and by means of the feet a native would move it backwards and forwards, at the same time exercising as much pressure as possible. This would have the effect of forcing the seeds away and leaving the fibres com-

paratively free. It was of necessity a very slow process, and a great advance was made upon it when the churka was introduced. This machine consisted of two rollers of unequal diameters and each running at unequal speeds; the small top one, generally made of iron, revolved much quicker than the large wooden bottom one. The effect of this is such that the fibres of cotton are drawn through the rollers, leaving the seeds behind, the space between not permitting them to follow. Six to eight pounds of clean cotton could be obtained per day, and it is still extensively used in India.

After the introduction into Europe of the common or Jersey spinning-frame, about the year 1530, and the more recent improvement upon it in the flyer spinning-frame of Saxony about forty years later, a great demand sprung up for some kind of preparing operation which would enable the cotton to be spun with a less degree of care and skill than formerly. This meant that instead of having a mass of the fibres and taking small quantities from it as the spinning progressed, and exercising great care in doing this so that a uniform thread would be spun, if the fibres could be formed into some kind of regular order and made more free from the entanglements that always existed, it would lessen the skill required, and thus enable many people to do the work who were otherwise incapable of it.

Cotton has from time immemorial always been subjected to a cleansing action after its separation from the seeds, principally by means of an elastic bow, which acted almost like a whip and flipped the cotton about in a way that forced from it much of its broken seeds, leaf, stalk, sand, etc. But now another process was required, some kind of combing action was demanded, and, as on

other occasions, recourse was had to the means used for a similar purpose in the wool industry. The cotton was placed upon a short length of boarding covered with a number of needles. Over it was placed a corresponding board or card, as it was termed, and by drawing this over the lower one the cotton was dragged through the needles. This was done several times, until it was found to be fairly well opened. It was then lifted off as a thin fleece, and in this form could easily be made into a thick sliver for the spinning-machine. The various fleeces were pierced up, and continuity in the length of the yarn obtained.

The next step was to adopt some means of drawing out this rather thick sliver by a mechanical arrangement, as it was found to be a very slow process when performed during the twisting. Out of this necessity was developed one of the most important principles upon which success in spinning depends, viz. the drawing-out process by means of successive lines of rollers running at accelerated speeds. Wyatt, in 1738, through the medium of Lewis Paul, was the first to employ rollers for this purpose, and to him ought to be given the credit due to one who displayed such original ingenuity in the establishment of a fundamental basis for future progress. Through some cause or another very little was done to persevere in their use, and it was not until Arkwright, in 1769, recognised its superiority over existing methods that it came to be a fixed feature in cotton spinning; he perfected its adaptation to the purpose of drawing the fibres, and in various ways did so much to make it successful that it came to be thought that Arkwright was the original inventor. He aided this view himself by incorporating it in a patent which he took out in 1769, but it was too palpable a copy, so much so that

on one memorable occasion when he tried to insist on its validity a jury refused to sanction his claim.

The year 1748 is notable as the one in which two important improvements were effected in the carding of cotton. Lewis Paul and Daniel Bourne both made great strides in improving the output of the carding operation, each used a cylinder covered with needles, and upon which was superimposed a covering of similar needles, between which two surfaces the cotton was passed; it was afterwards stripped off by means of a hand-comb and then pieced up to the previous length. This was greatly improved by Hargreaves somewhere about the year 1762, who tried to card the cotton by passing it between two revolving cylinders running almost in contact with each other; he also added a doffer for stripping the cotton from the cylinder, but it resulted in failure.

Other details of the card were rapidly added. In 1772 Lees gave to it a feeding arrangement in the form of an apron, and almost at the same time Arkwright introduced the cotton in the form of a lap. Other improvements were also made by Arkwright—notably the doffer and doffing-comb, which stripped the cotton from the doffer in a continuous fleece, in which form it was gathered together, and after being passed through a conical opening was carried forward and placed in a revolving can or coiler, though this latter differed from the one in use at the present time. Innumerable details of a very important character have been introduced into the card, many of which are quite recent, but as a machine in its essential principles and actions it differs little from that used in the beginning of the century, and to the men who then had its inception belongs the credit of its future importance.

Contemporary with this advance of the card must be

noticed a similar if not greater progress in the spinning frame, chiefly owing to the large demands for yarn in consequence of Kay's improvement of the loom in 1738. This advance followed the two great principles of spinning shown in the common spinning wheel: twisting from the spindle point, and the Saxony method, in which a flyer and bobbin were used.

Hargreaves, between 1764-67, invented a machine called a spinning-jenny, capable of working a number of spindles through bands driven from a cylinder. He kept to the old method of drawing the cotton out by a receding motion limited to a certain length, and then after twisting, winding on the yarn during the return of the frame carrying the spindles. The horizontal position of the spindle was, however, made vertical in this machine, and in this position it has ever since remained.

Arkwright, working to improve the flyer spinning-wheel, achieved an equal success when his machine was given to the world in 1769. He, however, borrowed freely from previous inventors, but it must be allowed that apparent failures in other hands were turned into successes when adopted by Arkwright.

His machine is chiefly characterised through his employment of rollers for drawing purposes, and the great advance he made in the performance of details requisite to successful and quick work. A traverse arrangement was given to the bobbins so that they were built up automatically, and the means of doing this effected by employing a can. The machine was termed a water-frame, because at this time water power was the means used to drive them.

The two main features of these machines, viz. the drawing rollers of Arkwright's frame and the stretch and twisting arrangement of Hargreave's jenny, were joined

together in the invention of Crompton of 1779. When the modern mule first saw light, whilst incorporating the best features of each of the previous machines, his own inventive faculties were given full play and several novel and ingenious elements introduced, notably the fixing of the creel as part of the framing and the placing of the spindles on the moving carriage.

Hargreave's jenny suffered greatly owing to the enormous success of Crompton's mule, but it was turned to other uses as the preparing frame for the roving to be used in spinning, and after considerable improvements it was enabled to again compete with the mule for certain classes of work.

The mule continued to be improved by added details, but it still remained a machine that required manual labour, and that of a very skilful kind. Efforts were therefore made in the closing decade of the last century to remedy this by means of an entirely automatic action. The headstock had already been placed in the centre of the spindle carriage, and a squaring band used to maintain the carriage in a straight line as it moved in and out and so neutralise the deflection. But it contained many defects, for which its growing use demanded a remedy. Several attempts were made, all of which more or less ended in failure, until Richard Roberts of Manchester took the matter in hand. It was a long struggle, for after his first patent in 1825 it was five years before a machine was made capable of fulfilling the work demanded of it. Ultimately, however, it proved successful, and from it we date the birthday of our present self-actor mule. In it we have the solution to most of the problems presented in such a complicated piece of mechanism as the hand-mule was. The winding was performed in a distinctly novel

manner by means of a quadrant; the counter and copping faller wires were arranged to work in unison; the backing off and drawing up was practically as we have it to-day, and the shaper or builder motion gave to it an incalculable value as a labour-saving appliance and productive machine. The employment of the scroll, though by no means novel, was yet so far improved as to merit such a description, and it gave to the carriage such a control of movement as to be scarcely creditable. Constant improvements have been made in important details, but nothing that has been done can compare with the wonderful result of Roberts' labour. It has been truly described as "one of the greatest triumphs of mechanical genius that has ever been achieved," and in the harmonious working of its many and various actions and the compactness of its parts, we can still point to it, even among the many ingenious mechanical productions of the present day, as one that may claim to be excelled by none whether judged by a mechanical standard or by its results.

Whilst the mule was being evolved out of the primitive machine which preceded it, great advances were being made in the other machines used in the preparatory processes. The gins in use were unable to do the amount of cotton necessary to supply the demand, and so we find that this machine received considerable attention. But nothing of importance was done until Eli Whitney, in 1793, introduced his saw gin, which worked a complete revolution both in the social and commercial condition of America, and gave a production that, for the time being, amply supplied the wants of the world.

The scutching machine is an advanced mechanical method of freeing the cotton of dirt, etc., and although the operation started as a bowing process and passed on

through primitive forms of willows, it was not until Mr. Snodgrass, in 1797, invented a machine somewhat on the same lines that our present day machines are worked. Many details of great importance were subsequently added, such as cages, fans, lap parts, and regulating motions. This latter improvement is one of the most important ones the machine has had applied to it, and to Mr. Lord is due the credit, he having patented it in 1862. For a long number of years it was known as Lord's piano motion.

The drawing frame was a natural result of the drawing process, and was early recognised as a distinct operation. Arkwright saw its advantages, and he also applied it for the same purpose that the flyer frames are used at present. He obtained the twist by causing the can, into which it was delivered, to revolve quickly, and by another process winding it on bobbins ready for spinning. These two separate actions were soon after combined into one by placing the bobbins in the revolving can and giving to it a turning motion. Arkwright, however, very soon saw the advantages of the old Saxony flyer spinning-wheel for the object he had in view, and very quickly a machine was made incorporating his ideas. The bobbin and flyer were both driven positively, but he was unable to satisfactorily overcome the difficulty of giving the bobbin a varying speed according to the diameter that was being wound, and it was not until Green, in 1823, invented several methods of doing it, but they were clumsy and inadequate. Arnold, in 1822, effected a radical alteration in the means then employed, but his invention was ignored until Houldsworth, three years later, incorporated its principle in his own patent differential motion. This motion, sometimes called the sun and planet motion, came to be the chief means employed through which the driving of the

bobbin was effected. About the same time two cone-drums began to be employed for reducing the speed of the bobbin as its diameter enlarged, or *vice versâ*.

The flyer throstle quickly developed into a complete and effective machine, and although an effort was made to improve it by Danforth, it was not until the invention of the ring-spinning system, about 1828, that it began its retrograde movement. At the present time improvements, principally in detail, are being constantly introduced, and although no radical change can be expected of the present system of spinning, there is at least hope that in the future many complications that at present exist will be dispensed with and more simple and better methods take their place.

Brief Summary of the Development of Cotton-Spinning Machinery

Ginning.—By picking the fibres from the seed by hand. Practised up to recent times by natives.

Foot Roller Gin. Chiefly used in the southern Mahratta part of India. Also still used in some parts of Africa.

Churka Gin. Each roller operated by a native female.

Pennigi Gin. Similar to the Churka Gin, used in Borneo. Still in use.

Chinese Gin. Similar to the Churka Gin, but one roller operated by treadle and the other by hand. Still in use in China.

Churka Gin. The two rollers geared together and worked by one person. Still used in India, and often used for the purpose of sampling seed cotton.

Saw Gin. Introduced by Eli Whitney, an American, 1794.

Macarthy Gin. Introduced by Macarthy, an American, 1840.

Roller Gin.

Distaff-spinning. Origin unknown.

Spinning-wheel. Origin unknown.

Spinning-wheel with three spindles. Origin unknown.

Jersey wheel.

Brunswick wheel about 1533.

Saxony wheel. Flyer for twisting the fibres first used on this wheel.

James Hargreaves, out of the spinning-wheel, evolved the Spinning-Jenny; perfected in 1757, patented in 1770. Blackburn weavers smashed his machine and forced him to flee the town and take up his residence in Nottingham. The Spinning-Jenny gave us the travelling carriage and the upright type of spindle. No rollers were used.

Lewis Paul had taken out a patent in 1738 for the use of drawing rollers. Hargreaves does not appear to have heard of this patent or at any rate did not take advantage of it. The patent expired in 1752, no success attended their use.

Several attempts were made to utilise drawing rollers after this, including Highs of Leigh (sometimes spelt Heys, Heyes, and Hays), Kay, Wyatt, and Arkwright.

Arkwright patented a new type of spinning-machine in 1769, which received the name of "Water Frame" by reason of water-power being used to drive the machines. This machine incorporated a vertical spindle, flyer, wharves, and drum, and four lines of drawing rollers. Building the bobbin was done by hand. Although Arkwright did not invent the drawing rollers, he was the first who made a practical success of them.

First cotton mill driven by water-power was erected at Cromford in Derbyshire in 1771. Coniah Wood in 1772 introduced a movable rail for winding, and this was sub-

sequently, 1775, improved by Arkwright by operating this winding rail automatically through a heart-shaped cam.

Arkwright's machine was capable of being used as a drawing frame, and the whole series of flyer frames. The first drawing frame was made by Arkwright in 1780 as a single head machine. Owing to the sliver can being fixed and a door arranged in it for taking out the sliver, the machine came to be known as the "Lantern Frame." A cone drum on the flyer frames is also credited to Sir Richard Arkwright. Arkwright died in August 1792 in his sixtieth year.

Cotton was originally opened and cleaned by placing a bowstring in contact with the ginned cotton, and then setting the string of the bow in vibration. This agitated the cotton and opened it out into a loose fluffy mass. The term "Bowed" cotton is still in use. The Chinese used a thin flat board connected by a string to an elastic strip of wood, so that by beating the flat board when it was placed over a table spread with cotton, a vibratory effect was set up which opened the cotton and freed it from impurities. Another method was to spread the cotton over a perforated table, and to beat it with willow twigs. This opened the cotton and the dirt fell through the perforations in the table. The Willow received its name as the mechanical successor of this method. Various forms of willowing machines were adapted, but it was not until 1797 that Snodgrass of Glasgow produced the main elements of our present scutcher. Cages, fans, lap part, and regulating motions were gradually added.

Lord invented the regulating device, or "piano motion," as it was called, in 1862. Lord's Horizontal Conical Beater came out in 1867; Crighton's Vertical Conical Beater about the same time. Both these machines were developed

out of the conical or cone willowing machine. Green in 1823 invented several methods of varying the speed of bobbin on the flyer frames, but they were unsatisfactory.

Arnold also, in 1822, tried, unsuccessfully, to solve the problem.

Houldsworth, on the basis of Arnold's efforts, was able in 1825 to produce the differential motion, or "sun and planet" motion as it was termed, and which yet retains the name.

About 1825 two cones came into use on the flyer frames instead of one previously used.

Carding was probably a process borrowed from the method adopted by the wool comber. It consisted in drawing a flat piece of wood, covered with pins, over a similar but fixed surface, the cotton being placed between the two wire surfaces. Hand or stock cards were the names applied to the wire boards. Hargreaves improved these stock cards by duplicating and triplicating them.

Lewis Paul took out a patent in 1748, which may be termed the parent of the present card. Fixed cards were used over the revolving cylinder. About the same time Daniel Bourne was evolving the roller and clearer card, the patent for which is dated 1748.

No doffer was used on either of these cards, female labour being employed to strip the fibres from the cylinders by hand cards. Feeding of the cotton to the cylinder was also very unsatisfactory, but this feature was greatly improved by John Lees of Manchester in 1772.

James Hargreaves gave carding some considerable attention, and it is to him that a doffing arrangement is due, but his method was very defective mechanically, and it also injured the fibres of cotton.

Arkwright was the first to introduce a satisfactory

doffing arrangement that gave a continuous fleece, which, by passing it through a tube, gave us the sliver.

Carding engines first introduced into Lancashire in 1760.

Carding engines first introduced into Bolton, 1785.

Fixed flat carding engine and roller and cleaner carding engines were distinct machines for some time after their invention, but ultimately carding engines were made, having partly fixed flats and partly roller and clearers. The type became known as the Breaker Card, and the system continued in use up to recent times. Arkwright introduced filleting on the card. Automatic arrangement for lifting the flats, in order to free them from waste, dirt, etc., invented by Archibald Buchanan in 1823. The methods were not such as to lead to general adoption. George Wellman, an American, invented a satisfactory device in 1853 to perform the stripping of the fixed flats, and the card became known as the Wellman Card. This card became very popular and had a great vogue for a considerable time, but is now completely superseded by the revolving flat card. Smith, in 1835, introduced a method of stripping the flats by causing the flats to revolve, but it was not until 1850 that Evan Leigh overcame the mechanical difficulties, and enabled the revolving flat card to commence its career of success.

Heilman's Comber, patented 1846. This machine was introduced for wool-combing originally. It was exhibited at the London International Exhibition, 1851, and it met with enormous success. It has had many improvements effected to it to enable it to increase production and to comb shorter cotton, but to Naysmith belongs the honour of bringing out a comber to deal with short fibres and economical production. His machine is of recent date.

Samuel Crompton, born 1753.

Crompton put to spinning on one of Hargreave's spinning-jennies in 1769.

Crompton commenced to construct his first "Mule," 1774, so called because it was a combination of Arkwright frame and Hargreave's jenny.

Crompton's first mule completed in 1779. Machine-breaking riots in 1779. Crompton took his machine to pieces and hid them. Crompton obtained 26s. per lb. for 60 counts, and 42s. for 80 counts.

William Kelly, in 1792, patented a method of driving the "Mule" by water-power.

Wright introduced the arrangement of placing a carriage on each side of the headstock.

Crompton died, 1827, aged 74 years.

Crompton's "Mule," though driven by power, required considerable manual skill and effort to perform some of its operations, especially the winding. Many attempts to make the machine automatic were made, but with little success until Richard Roberts of Manchester introduced his machine in 1825, and five years afterwards still further improved it. This machine formed the basis of our present self-actor mule, and included the quadrant.

Present form of copping rails patented by William Eaton in 1818.

A multitude of important improvements in details have added to the various machines in the cotton-spinning mill since the middle of the last century.

Historical Notes on Cotton

Material made of cotton would appear to have originated in India. The date of origin is unknown.

A digest of ancient laws, supposed to have been drawn up by Manu in 800 B.C., contains frequent references to cotton both as a plant and as a textile material.

Herodotus, the Greek historian, refers to the wool which grows on trees in India, and other Greek writers mention the cotton tree and the cotton material worn by the natives of parts of India.

From 1500 B.C. to about A.D. 1500 India was the centre of the cotton industry, and even carried on an export trade with adjacent countries extending to Africa. Marco Polo, in his book published A.D. 1298, mentions that on the coast of Coromandel they produce "the finest and most beautiful cottons that are to be found in any part of the world."

Travernier says that "some calicuts are made so fine you can hardly feel them in your hand, and the thread when spun is scarce discernible," also that "the rich have turbans of so fine a cloth (cotton) that thirty ells of it put into one turban make it weigh less than four ounces." Muslins were made so fine that "when it is laid on the grass to bleach and the dew has fallen upon it, it is no longer discernible."

Oriental writers referring to the extreme delicacy of the cotton fabrics speak of them as "webs of woven wind," and a writer in an English Review at the latter part of the seventeenth century designates the fabrics as "the shadow of a commodity."

China commenced to grow cotton for general use about A.D. 1300.

The commercial activities of the Phœnicians and Egyptians spread a knowledge of the uses of the cotton plant, and introduced cotton cloths into the countries on the Mediterranean sea-board, and the Roman conquests in Asia between 150 and 30 B.C. brought it into use among the

Romans, but only to a slight extent and for special purposes.

The Mohammedans were the first real introducers into Europe of the cotton plant and the manufacture of its fibres into cloth.

Abderahman III., the Moorish ruler in Cordova 912 to A.D. 961, introduced cotton growing into Spain.

Although the cotton plant was grown and material made from it in Asia Minor at an early date, it would appear that Turkey in Europe did not take up the industry until the fourteenth century, but soon after this time the cotton plant found suitable conditions for growth in Roumania and Macedonia, and in 1835 Baines speaks of the cotton industry of these states as being one of the most important in the country.

The manufacture of cotton was confined to the southern borders of Europe until the sixteenth century. Barcelona was the chief centre of the industry. Fustian was made here.

Cotton manufacture in Italy, so far as can be ascertained, dates from the beginning of the fourteenth century, when it was introduced into Venice.

Among imports to Antwerp in 1560 mention is made of fustian and dimities of many fine sorts from Milan. Antwerp also about this time exported to England cottons and cotton-wool—the latter of which is said to have been obtained from Portugal. Fustian, made in Nuremberg, was imported into England in 1601.

It is not known definitely when cotton manufacturing was introduced into England. The poor law of Elizabeth, 1601, mentions hemp, flax, and wool, but no mention is made of cotton. The first record of its existence in England is made by Roberts in a pamphlet titled *Treasures of Traffic*, 1641. It is highly probable that the artisans who

fled from Flanders in the latter part of the sixteenth century and came to England brought with them experienced workers in the spinning, weaving, and finishing of cotton. These artisans would gravitate to the various centres of textile industry, and the downfall of Antwerp as the chief continental port would result in England receiving the raw cotton.

It may be assumed that cotton had become a fairly fixed industry in 1641.

The spinning and weaving at this period were done by individuals and families in their own houses. The methods were little better than those in use 2000 years earlier. The distaff was common, and even the best implement was the one-thread spinning-wheel. The loom was practically the same as used by the East Indians for hundreds of years previously. No fine yarn could be made, it was always spun loose and flimsy, and when strength was required it was made heavy and coarse.

The cloth made by these hand spinners and weavers had to be carried long distances to market, and it was not until 1760 that Manchester merchants began to organise the industry by furnishing the artisans in the neighbouring villages with raw material and linen yarn and fixing a price for the finished cloth. This introduced greater regularity of work and increased production, so that England was able to export cotton goods. A demand was created, but the spinning of cotton yarn, weft, limited the production although the linen warp was plentiful. In the middle of the eighteenth century, therefore, the production of cotton yarn had reached its limit, and the crude machines, such as the hand carders, single-thread spinning-wheels, and the hand loom, failed to meet the demand. At this period commenced the activities of the founders of the modern

cotton-spinning machinery as set out briefly in a foregoing paragraph.

As machinery developed and production increased, the supply of raw material became a problem. The West Indies, the Levant, and India were the chief sources of supply, and these supplies became inadequate. At this time the United States of America produced little or no cotton, and only Brazil could be relied on for an addition to the usual sources of supply.

Just as Great Britain, now the greatest textile industrial country in the world, was the last European country to start cotton spinning and weaving, so the United States was the last country to commence cotton growing, and has now been for a century the greatest source of supply of this raw material.

It is doubtful whether the cotton plant is a native of North America, and no records exist of the date of the introduction of the plant into the United States. It is probable that the earliest colonists brought seeds and grew cotton at Jamestown. In 1609 a writer states that cotton would grow as well in Virginia as in Italy, and a further writer in 1620 mentions cotton as grown in abundance in Virginia.

Cotton growing spread slowly in America, and a variety of seeds were imported in small quantities. All the cotton grown was used for home purposes, the ginning, preparing, spinning, and weaving being conducted on the same kinds of primitive appliances as in England and on the Continent of Europe.

It is somewhat difficult to fix on the first export of American cotton to England. Samples of cotton would almost certainly have been sent or brought to England from the early days of the colonists.

It is on record that a Swiss in Georgia brought over some cotton to London in 1739 to show what could be raised in Georgia. This visit was connected with the controversy over the introduction of slaves in America.

In 1747 several bags of cotton, valued at £3 : 11 : 5 per bag, were exported from Charleston. This was described as Carolina cotton. This may have been re-shipped cotton, having been sent from the West Indies to Charleston and from there re-shipped to England. Cotton had been grown, however, in South Carolina many years previous to this date.

In 1753 and 1757 cotton is mentioned as having been exported from Carolina.

In 1764 eight bags of cotton were imported into Liverpool from the United States.

In 1770 seventeen bales and three barrels of cotton were sent to Liverpool from various ports in America.

In 1784 fourteen bales were shipped to Great Britain, of which eight were seized on the ground of fraudulent importation as it was not believed that so much cotton could be produced in the United States.

In 1785, five bags imported into Liverpool.

In 1786, 900 lbs. imported into Liverpool.

In 1787, 16,350 lbs. imported into Liverpool.

In 1788, 58,500 lbs. imported into Liverpool.

In 1789, 127,500 lbs. imported into Liverpool.

In 1791, 189,500 lbs. imported into Liverpool.

In 1792, 138,328 lbs. imported into Liverpool.

In 1793, 487,600 lbs. of cotton were exported by the United States.

In 1794, 1,600,000 lbs. of cotton were exported by the United States. This was the year when Eli Whitney took out his patent for the Saw Gin.

The following tables present at a glance the enormous extent to which cotton spinning has developed all over the world. No later figures are available since the Great War commenced in 1914. The figures are taken from the Statistical Returns of the International Federation of Master Cotton Spinners' and Manufacturers' Associations.

TABLE I.

COTTON-SPINNING SPINDLES, 1st MARCH 1914. (Spinners' Returns.)

Countries.	Mule Spindles in work as per Returns.	Ring Spindles in work as per Returns.	Spindles spinning Egyptian Cotton as per Returns.	Spindles spinning American, East Indian, and Sundry Cottons as per Returns.	Spindles in course of Construction as per Returns.	Total Number of Spindles as per Returns in work at present.	Total World Estimated Number Spinning Spindles.
Great Britain	40,791,564	9,777,230	13,879,269	36,689,525	337,174	50,568,794	55,971,501
Germany	5,334,233	5,829,265	1,463,108	9,700,390	146,744	11,163,498	11,404,944
Russia	3,183,572	4,622,287	850,677	6,955,182	52,068	7,805,859	9,111,835
France	3,927,511	3,313,059	1,543,859	5,696,711	10,616	7,240,570	7,400,000
India	1,175,099	3,976,194	25,640	5,125,653	108,900	5,151,293	6,397,142
Austria	2,444,006	2,387,846	573,394	4,258,458	27,664	4,831,852	4,941,320
Italy	1,016,270	2,864,515	154,446	3,726,339	21,480	3,880,785	4,600,000
Japan	49,450	2,365,094	315,444	2,099,100	334,693	2,414,544	2,414,544
Spain	787,080	1,088,120	*none*	1,875,200	7,000	1,875,200	2,200,000
Belgium	510,469	1,007,665	2,700	1,515,434	16,000	1,518,134	1,518,134
Switzerland	1,042,962	230,052	728,378	544,636	*none*	1,273,014	1,383,572
Holland	194,822	305,172	*none*	499,994	*none*	499,994	499,994
Portugal [1]	100,000	300,000	*none*	400,000	*none*	400,000	482,000
Sweden	100,468	279,927	500	379,895	7,208	380,395	550,000
Denmark	13,396	80,092	*none*	93,488	*none*	93,488	93,488
Norway	14,000	41,772	*none*	55,772	8,288	55,772	55,772
U.S. America [1]	4,139,193	27,380,573	758,000	30,761,766	*not stated*	31,519,766	31,519,766
Canada	342,779	512,280	7,440	847,619	*none*	855,059	860,000
Brazil, Mexico, etc.	36,877	494,918	19,080	512,715	1,200	531,795	3,300,000
Total	65,203,751	66,856,061	20,321,935	111,737,877	1,079,035	132,059,812	144,704,012

[1] Approximately.

TABLE II.

CONSUMPTION OF ALL KINDS OF COTTON, on the basis of Spinners' Returns, calculated per 1000 Spindles.

Countries.	CONSUMPTION (Actual Bales) for the Year ending 31st August.			
	1913	1912	1911	1910
Great Britain . .	76·80	77·27	70·47	63·50
Germany . .	157·95	167·61	165·23	165·69
Russia . . .	272·30	261·92	266·43	264·99
France . . .	136·49	138·22	132·99	133·56
India . . .	357·94	363·84	352·18	360·35
Austria . . .	170·52	180·10	172·08	176·54
Italy . . .	171·73	224·33	214·66	192·44
Japan . . .	690·63	662·04	716·98	684·88
Spain . . .	179·35	170·39	179·17	148·83
Belgium . . .	172·47	168·91	178·32	149·79
Switzerland . .	70·45	70·67	59·95	60·38
Holland . . .	177·17	186·92	191·68	182·42
Portugal . . .	163·64	165·71	156·96	121·87
Sweden . . .	215·83	208·22	205·01	208·45
Denmark . .	284·87	300·48	273·29	236·18
Norway . . .	154·20	146·60	152·31	153·52
U.S. America . .	183·65	177·09	162·65	166·04
Canada . . .	132·70	148·29	138·83	150·08
Brazil . } Mexico, etc. } .	350·81	414·45	361·44	351·89

CHAPTER I

THE COTTON FIBRE

Cotton is the name given to the product of a class of plants which have, as a process of Nature, evolved out of themselves a method of perpetuating their kind by a distinct system in the distribution of their seeds. We find throughout the vegetable kingdom a large variety of wonderful means employed by plants in serving this purpose, and that adopted by the cotton plant is no exception, for it is both ingenious and effective. Its seeds, encased in a pod, are in groups, and during their development, after the disappearance of the flower, they become gradually surrounded with a soft downy fibrous substance. This growth continues until they arrive at maturity, when the excessive pressure within the pod, produced by the masses of fibres and the enlargement of the seeds, causes the pod to burst—a ball of whitish fibres is thus brought to light, and if Nature was permitted her way, this would enable the wind to distribute the seeds in every direction, and to carry them considerable distances, where they would find a suitable place for growth. This fibre is commercially a very valuable substance, and though from time immemorial it has been employed in the making of cloth for various

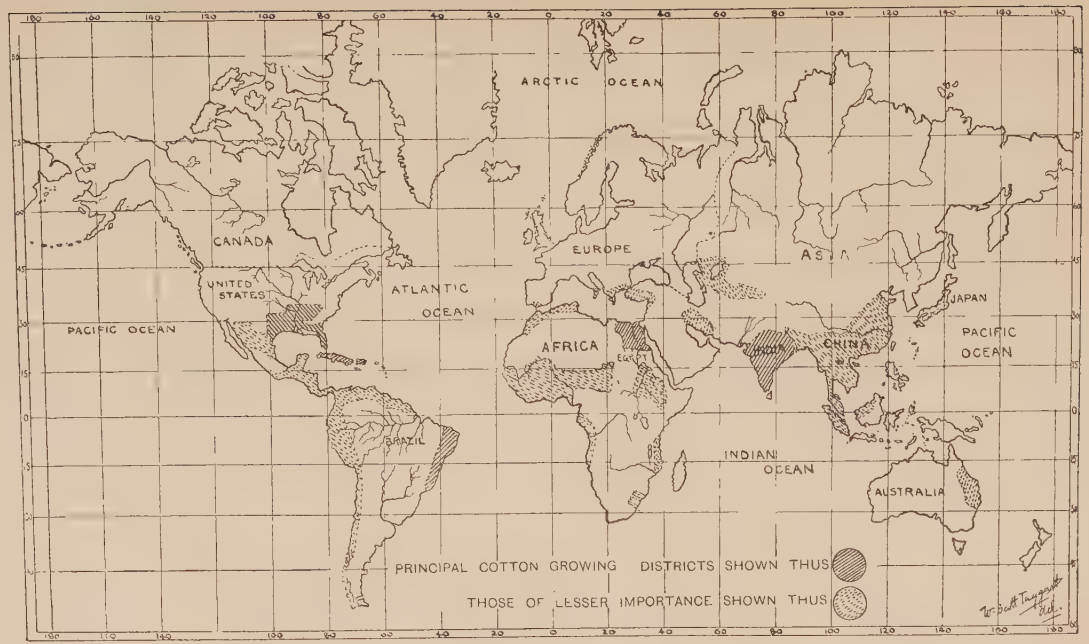
purposes it was not until mechanical methods were introduced of performing the necessary operations leading up to the finished material, that its cultivation was commenced on a large scale, and its quality greatly improved by the adoption of scientific principles in the choice of district, soil, climate, species, and fertilisation as aids to its successful growth.

The cotton plant is scientifically known as Gossypium, and the group of plants to which it belongs, or the family of which it is a member, is that of the Malvaceæ or Mallows. The greater part of the world is suitable to its growth, but commercially it is practically confined between the 40° North latitude and the 30° South latitude—the accompanying map of the world (Fig. 1) enables this to be seen at a glance; and we can also understand from it, in the diversity of climate and country that is there presented in such a vast belt of the globe, what a variety of species of the plant must exist. Botanists differ greatly in the enumeration of the principal divisions of these varieties. The classification in favour for general purposes is the one where they are all grouped under the four following heads: Gossypium Barbadense, Gossypium Hirsutum, Gossypium Herbaceum, and Gossypium Peruvian.

Under these names we give below a list of most of the cottons of commerce, the names of the district in which they are grown being generally adopted in denoting them.

Botanical Varieties

Gossypium Barbadense.—Sea Islands, Florida Sea Islands, Figi Sea Islands, Tahiti Sea Islands, Laguayran Sea Islands, Peruvian Sea Islands, Gallini.



MAP OF THE COTTON GROWING COUNTRIES OF THE WORLD

FIG. 1.

Gossypium Hirsutum.—Uplands, Mobile, Texas, Orleans, White Egyptian.

Gossypium Herbaceum.—Brown Egyptian, Smyrna and Greek, Hingunghat, Dharwar, Broach, Dhollerah, Oomras, Coomptah, Scinde, Bengal, Tinnevelly, Western or Madras.

Gossypium Peruvian.—Brazilian and Peruvian cottons are almost all classed under this head.

A detailed description of each class of cotton, together with their characteristic features, will now be given, and as a variation from the above list they will appear under their general commercial title, which they receive from the country of their growth, as a distinction from the names of the varieties whose names and characteristics follow and are those of districts. The chief countries from which we receive our cotton supply are Egypt, America, Brazil, and India. Other large tracts of country in various parts of the world grow cotton very extensively, as shown in the map, but it is used principally by the natives themselves, so that for practical purposes we may say that exportation to Europe in large quantities is confined to the four countries named.

Sea Island Cotton

Sea Island came originally, it is supposed, from Barbadoes, hence the name Barbadense. It is the most valued species of cotton, and is grown in the southern portions of the United States, on the Carolina and Georgia coasts as well as the islands lying off the mainland. It has a long, fine, soft, and silky fibre, which unfortunately suffers rather severely in some of the future processes, especially Ginning. It varies very little in length or twist, and immature fibres are not frequently present. Its colour is of a light creamy tint. Great care is taken in its cultivation, and as a rule

it is very clean, and free from the impurities caused through careless picking. The climatic and agricultural conditions under which it is grown tend to produce the above excellences, and it quickly deteriorates if an attempt is made to grow it in districts where these favourable circumstances do not exist to the same extent, though even then its fibres are still of a superior kind. Yarn in twist or weft up to the finest numbers can be spun from it. The three main divisions of Sea Island cotton grown in the U.S.A. are Florida, Carolina, and Georgia.

Florida Sea Island.—This cotton is somewhat similar to Sea Island, being grown from the same seed, but on the mainland of Florida and adjacent states. It has a smooth, bright, silky appearance, but a large percentage of immature fibres prevents it being used for the highest numbers of yarn, its limit in this respect reaching about 200^s; unless for special purposes, it is not used for lower numbers than about 140^s twist or weft.

Fiji and Tahiti Sea Island.—Grown on the Fiji Islands in the Pacific Ocean. The fibres of this variety are more irregular in length than the preceding, but attain a greater maximum length; other defects, such as the presence of immature fibres and irregularity in the twists, however, reduce its value considerably.

Peruvian Sea Island.—Grown on the western coast of Peru from Sea Island seed. It has a slight brownish tint and its fibres are fairly strong, but in appearance it is inferior to Sea Island, and is quite 20 per cent less in value than Fiji; it is occasionally very dirty through careless picking. Though Dr. Bowman states that up to 200^s can be spun from it, it is very seldom that 150^s are exceeded.

All the above classes of Sea Island cotton have a yellow

flower, and seeds that are small and black; they are also free from the undergrowth of short fibres, which are present in many other varieties of cotton, and which materially lessen their value.

Egyptian Cotton

The following list gives a number of Egyptian cottons that have been or are being grown at present. It is given here to illustrate an important factor in cotton growing which has some considerable influence on the quality of the yarn spun in our mills :—

Jumel, introduced about	1822,	ceased to be grown	1862.
Ashmouni,	„	1863, still grown.		
Gallini,	„	1868,	ceased to be grown	1887.
Bamieh,	„	1878,	„ „	1898.
White,	„	1867,	„ „	1890
Mit Afifi,	„	1892, still grown.		
Joanovitch,	„	1897,	„	
Nubari,	„	1904,	„	
Abassi,	„	1895,	„	
Sakellarides, introduced recently.				
Voltos,	„	„		
Assili,	„	„		

It will be noted that several well-known kinds have gone out of cultivation completely, and it may be added that two of the others, viz. Ashmouni and Mit Afifi, are deteriorating very rapidly, and although they are still grown in immense quantities, other kinds are being brought forward which will quickly displace them.

The following list gives the main types of Egyptian grown at present :—

Mit Afifi or Afife.—The chief type, or, as it has been termed, "the bread and cheese" quality of Egyptian cotton. Colour brown, glossy and strong; length of fibres varies

from $1\frac{1}{4}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches. It is deteriorating rapidly both in quality and production or yield per acre. The best type of Mit Afifi is known as Domains Afifi.

Assili.—A new cotton destined to displace Mit Afifi has been recently introduced; it is known as Assili or Thoroughbred. It is finer in feel and in appearance than Afifi and more regular in staple than Domains Afifi. It is also very strong. It was discovered about 1905, and at the present rate of increase enough seed will be obtainable by 1914 to plant the whole acreage now occupied by the Mit Afifi crop. The yield from the gin is at least 6 per cent higher than Afifi and Nubari and 10 per cent higher than Joanovitch. It compares very favourably with Afifi in length, fineness, strength, and regularity, and its colour is uniformly brownish. It is also free from the short white cotton which has for several years been increasing in Mit Afifi.

Abassi.—This is the only white Egyptian cotton. It has a finer fibre than Afifi. The first pickings are the best.

Ashmouni.—This is the old cotton of Egypt. It used to be grown all over Lower or North Egypt, but is now confined entirely to Upper or South Egypt, where it ripens earlier than in the north. It is used extensively for mixing with Afifi cotton. As much as 12 per cent of the Ashmouni crop is used fraudulently in mixture with the brown Egyptian crop of Afifi, the mixture taking place at the ginneries of Lower Egypt. Inferior cotton is the natural result, and, as the seeds of the two types are mixed, the plants suffer considerably by the hybridising process. This same process caused the formerly long staple of Indian cotton to deteriorate to the short fibres so characteristic of present-day Indian cotton. The fibre is from 1 to $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches

long, and is not so bright in appearance as Afifi. By more careful cultivation it is hoped that a larger yield may result in the near future.

Joanovitch.—This is the most glossy and fine cotton at present produced in Egypt. It is a selected type of Afifi, but not so brown; the fibre is fully $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches. Deterioration has set in, and although only introduced to cultivation in 1897 the white short-staple cotton termed "Hindi" is now found well mixed with it.

Nubari closely resembles Afifi, of which it is also a selected type.

Sakellarides.—A recent variety of long-staple cotton, of a similar type to Joanovitch but superior in some respects, and equal to Sea Island for certain purposes. It is being grown extensively, and the yield is high.

Voltos.—Another high-grade cotton recently introduced to cultivation. It is a very pure white and is a grade of Abassi.

AREAS PLANTED IN 1911 OF EGYPTIAN COTTONS.

Mit Afifi.	Abassi.	Joanovitch.	Ashmouni.	Nubari.	Sakellarides.
Feddans.	Feddans.	Feddans.	Feddans.	Feddans.	Feddans.
845,666	33,384	250,972	329,843	115,492	119,636

Other varieties amounted to 16,235 Feddans.
A Feddan is a little over an acre, = 1·038 acres.
A Kantar = 99·05 English pounds.

The gin used for Egyptian cotton is the Macarthy. There are some 3000 to 4000 machines of this type in use in Egypt. Egyptian cotton is *graded* as follows—Fair, Good Fair, Fully Good Fair, Good, Fine, Extra Fine; and, as an example of *official quotations*, the *Liverpool Exchange* and our newspapers would express prices of the above grades as follows:—

	F.	G.F.	F.G.F.	Good.	Fine.	Ex. F.	
Egyptian Brown	9·25	9·80	10·05	10·50	10·95	11·35	Dec. 1912.
Egyptian Upper	8·45	8·75	9·30	9·65	9·80	9·96	

The above prices are expressed in pence and hundredths of a penny.

F.G.F. (Fully Good Fair) is the standard for Egyptian cotton, and spot prices are based upon it. Of course, it must always be understood that there are innumerable marks and grades of cotton sold, and at prices that vary from the above standard. Such differences are due to a variety of causes, and the buying and selling of such grades are personal matters between the purchaser and the grower or merchant, but in all cases the standard grades are used as a comparison, and as the standard grades rise or fall so do the intermediate qualities.

Brazilian or Peruvian Cotton

Rough Peruvian.—A native cotton of Peru and Brazil. It is perennial, growing several years in succession, the second and third years' crops being the best. Its colour is light cream, and its fibres are harsh and wiry to the touch, which characteristic enables it to be mixed with wool. It has a good appearance, and is generally very clean. Its use is limited to 70^s for twist only.

Smooth Peruvian, or *Smooth Egyptian* as it is known locally, differs in feel and pliability from the above, and is not quite as strong; its colour, dull white to cream, enables it to mix well with Orleans; its soft character renders it suitable for weft up to about 70^s. Sea Island and also Mit Afifi are grown.

Maranham.—From the north-east coast of Brazil, has a dull golden appearance, and is rather dirty in foreign matter; its feel is harsh but elastic. It mixes well with Egyptian and American cotton when the colour permits, 50^s twist and weft.

Pernam or Pernambuco.—The best Brazilian cotton, both in length, diameter, strength, and twist, this latter feature being remarkably regular; it is harsh and wiry compared with other cottons, and consequently is used chiefly for twist yarns. It is mixed largely with White Egyptian. 60^s twist is the extent of its usefulness in yarn.

Ceara, Parahyba, and Maceio compose a very large portion of the Brazilian cotton crop; the better grades are fairly clean. Its staple is variable in length, whilst its general characteristics are similar to Peruvian yarn. Up to 50^s twist or weft are spun from it; when mixed with White Egyptian, higher numbers than these can be obtained.

Brazilian cotton is graded as follows—Middling, Mid Fair, Fair, Good Fair, Good, Fine; and official quotations are expressed as—

M.F.	F.	G.F.
6·74	7·44	7·91

The prices are in pence and hundredths of a penny.

Fair, or, as it is often expressed, *Fair Pernams*, is the standard for spot quotations, etc. It often happens that the quality of the different growths of Brazilian cottons are equal. For instance, the official prices given below show this (Jan. 1913).

	M.F.	Fair.	G.F.
Pernam	6·74	7·44	7·91
Parahyba	6·74	7·44	7·91
Maceio	6·74	7·44	7·91
Ceara	6·74	7·44	7·91

American Cottons

American cotton is the staple cotton of the world, and is grown in a number of the States in the south of North America. Its general excellence is accounted for by the peculiar suitability of the soil, the humidity of the atmo-

sphere, the uniformity of its temperature, and the high state of its cultivation. Its character as the "typical cotton" is not given to it for any of the highest qualities cotton possesses, but because it is produced in such immense quantities, and is of a character that renders it suitable for use in innumerable directions by people throughout the world. It is quite natural to find a variety of classes or grades of cotton existing in such a large tract of territory; the various districts, or natural features of the district, giving their names to the classes grown within their boundaries. The names given to these classes of cotton are often local, and they are bought and sold in the market under these local names. The following are specimens of names — Black Rattler, Peterkin, Griffen Variety, Boyd's Prolific, Triumph, Toole Variety, Texas Big Boll; but, as a rule, American cotton is classed under some more general term. We have the term "Uplands" or "Boweds," grown in the Carolinas, Florida, Georgia, Alabama, and Tennessee—a class of fibre used extensively for weft, and with a staple of $\frac{3}{4}$ to $1\frac{1}{16}$ inches long. In Texas, Mississippi, Arkansas, Louisiana also grows a vast quantity of cotton of 1 to $1\frac{3}{16}$ inch staple suitable for twist, whilst in the lower parts and the swampy country of these States fine cotton is grown from $1\frac{1}{8}$ to $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches long.

Other terms are found, such as "Peelers," "Allen Seed," "Extras," etc., all selected growths of a long-fibred character up to $1\frac{5}{8}$ inches. The United States Government and the various States interested in cotton growing carry on large experimental farms for the improvement of the cotton plant both as regards its quality as well as its productivity, and new developments are constantly taking place in the introduction of new forms to supplant those that are

deteriorating. The development of fine spinning has been an added stimulus to the growers for a higher grade of American cotton.

Orleans, the most important of the American cottons, is grown principally in the plantations of the Mississippi and Louisiana. It is wonderfully clean and easy to work, and though differing greatly in its grades in different seasons, its better qualities maintain a fairly regular staple. Its colour is mainly white, which develops into a faint cream in varieties. Its fibres are sufficiently strong for ordinary purposes, being also soft and elastic, rendering it extremely suitable for twist and weft up to about 50^s counts.

Other American varieties, as well as Egyptian and Peruvian cotton, are easily mixed with Orleans owing to their similarity in colour.

Uplands, grown on the elevated portions of Georgia, Carolina, and other States adjacent to them, is a cotton possessing characteristics suitable for weft yarn, as it has a soft, moist, and pliable fibre, though not very strong. Its colour is white, with variations to light cream, and can consequently be mixed extensively with other cottons. As a rule it is fairly clean, but it contains numerous partially developed fibres.

Texas, from the State of that name in the Gulf of Mexico, ranks almost on an equal footing at the present time with Orleans in its general quality. Its colour is a light brownish tint, otherwise its characteristics are very similar.

Mobile.—An inferior cotton, though exported in large quantities. It is used for numbers from 10^s to 25^s principally weft yarns. Surats and Indian cottons are frequently mixed with it. Considerable quantities of impurities, both natural and foreign, are found incorporated with it in the bale.

American cotton is graded as follows—Ordinary, Good Ordinary, Low Middling, Middling, Good Middling, Middling Fair. Owing to the enormous quantities of these cottons that are grown and the great differences between them in quality it is necessary to split up each of these grades into smaller sections or grades, so that each of the above grades are subdivided into grades indicated by the terms Strict, Fully, Barely. We therefore have *Ordinary*, Strict Ordinary, Fully Ordinary, Barely Ordinary, and so on with each principal grade.

Official quotations are expressed as follows :—

Ord.	G.O.	L.M.	Mid.	F.M.	G.M.	F.G.M.	M.F.
5·89	6·23	6·63	6·81	6·93	7·01	7·09	7·35

Middling American is the standard by which all the other grades are regulated and is the one used or implied in all spot quotations

Grades of American Cotton.—The following is the list of grades of American cotton issued in November 1913 by the New York Cotton Exchange. It also gives the standard difference in price from the basis price of *Middling*. As the list is varied sometimes, it is simply given here as a specimen of how prices are fixed above and below a basis price.

Grade.	Difference in Cents.
Fair	1·75 on the basis price.
Strict middling price	1·50 ,, ,,
Middling fair	1·30 ,, ,,
Strict good middling	0·90 ,, ,,
Fully good middling	0·78 ,, ,,
Good middling	0·65 ,, ,,
Barely good middling	0·48 ,, ,,
Strict middling	0·32 ,, ,,
Fully middling	0·16 ,, ,,
Strict good middling tinged	0·45 ,, ,,

Grade.	Difference in Cents.
Middling	*Basis.*
Good middling tinged	Value of middling.
Barely middling	0·25 off the basis price.
Strict low middling	0·50 ,, ,,
Fully low middling	0·85 ,, ,,
Low middling	1·25 ,, ,,
Strict good ordinary	2·00 ,, ,,
Good ordinary	3·00 ,, ,,
Strict good low middling tinged	0·45 ,, ,,
Strict middling tinged	0·20 ,, ,,
Middling tinged	0·40 ,, ,,
Strict low middling tinged	1·25 ,, ,,
Low middling tinged	3·00 ,, ,,
Middling stained	1·25 ,, ,,

A further specimen of a Grade Revision issued in New York for deliveries on March 18, 1915, is given. This shows the grades divided into their respective colours The points are in cents.

GRADES REVISION.

NEW YORK, Friday.

Grade revision for delivery on March 18 :—

White middling fair	109 points on.
Strict good middling	79 ,,
Good middling	56 ,,
Strict middling	28 ,,
Strict low middling	42 points off.
Low middling	100 ,,
Strict good ordinary	155 ,,
Good ordinary	231 ,,

YELLOW TINGES.

Strict good middling	39 points on.
Good middling	15 ,,
Strict middling	13 points off.
Middling	50 ,,
Strict low middling	100 ,,
Low middling	164 ,,

BLUE TINGES.

Middling	74 points off.
Strict low middling	114 ,,
Low middling	171 ,,
Stained middling	109 ,,

Official Quotations, Liverpool.—The following is a specimen of the Quotations on Tuesday, 6th April 1915, at Liverpool.

QUOTATIONS.

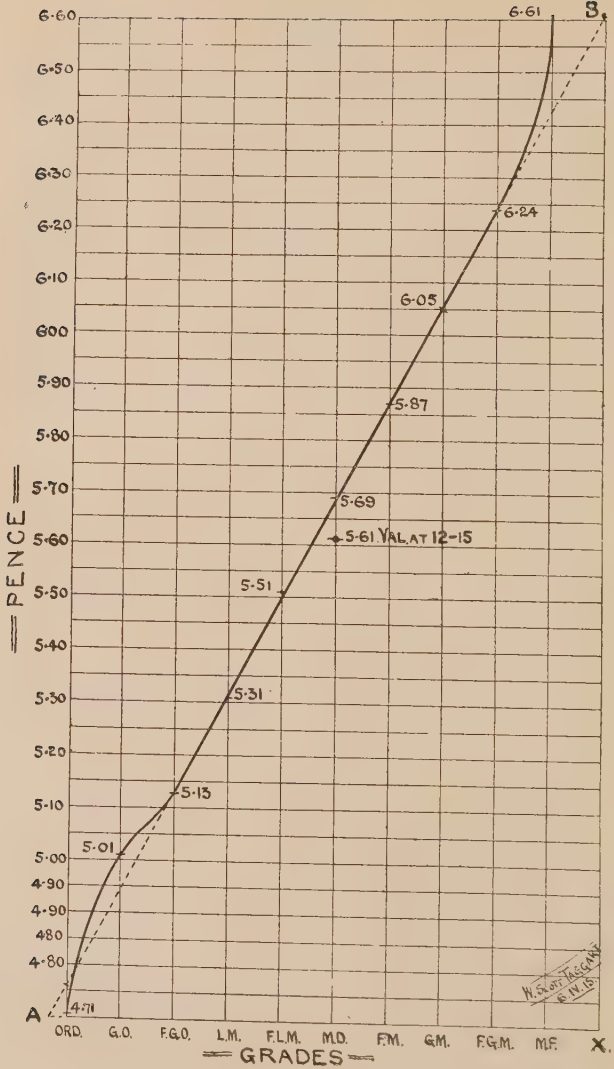
Ord.	GO.	FGO.	LM.	FLM.	Md.	FM.	GM.	FGM.	MF.
Am. N4·71	N5·01	5·13	5·31	5·51	5·69	5·87	6·05	6·24	6·61
i.e. 90 off	*60 off*	*48 off*	*30 off*	*10 off*	*8 on*	*26 on*	*44 on*	*63 on*	*100 on*

	M.F.	Fair.	G.F.
Pernam	5·21	6·21	6·63
Parahyba	5·21	6·21	6·63
Maceio	5·16	6·16	6·58
Ceara	5·16	6·16	6·58

	Fr.	G.F.	F.G.F.	Gd.	Fine.	Ex. Fine.
Egypt, Brown	7·45	8·00	8·25	8·75	9·70	N10·00
,, Upper	7·10	7·55	7·75	7·90	8·00	N8·15
,, Nubari	...	8·30	8·65	9·30	10·10	N10·45
,, Joanovich	...	9·45	9·95	10·45	11·10	N11·60
,, Sakellaridis	8·35	9·25	9·95	10·55	11·10	N11·60
,, Abbassi	...	...	9·70	10·25	11·10	N11·60

	G.F.	F.G.F.	Gd.	F.G.	Fine.	S'fine.
M.G. Surtee	...	...	...	5·40	5·55	...
M.G. Broach	...	4·80	4·95	5·10	5·25	...
M.G. No. 1 Oomra	N4·18	N4·30	N4·42	N4·54	N4·66	...
Scinde, American seed	...	...	N4·75	N4·95	N5·15	N5·35
M.G. Bengal	...	...	4·08	4·20	4·32	4·46
Tinnivelly	5·14	5·26	5·38	...	...	..
Tinnivelly, Amer. seed	...	N5·30	N5·45	...	...	...

The small table just given of the Liverpool official Quotations will also serve to explain the meaning of *points on* or *off*. It will be noticed that immediately under the Quotations a series of figures are given in italics which run as follows: *i.e. 90 off, 60 off, 48 off*, etc. This simply


6·60
6·50
6·40
6·30
6·20
6·10
600
5·90
5·80
5·70
5·60
5·50
5·40
5·30
5·20
5·10
5·00
4·90
4·90
480
4·80
A
4·71
5·01
5·13
5·31
5·51
5·61 VAL. AT 12-15
5·69
5·87
6·05
6·24
6·61
B
PENCE
ORD.
G.O.
F.G.O.
L.M.
F.L.M.
M.D.
F.M.
G.M.
F.G.M.
M.F.
X
GRADES
W. Scott Taggart
E.N.16

means that at 12.15 P.M. on the day in question the price of middling American was averaged at a value of 5·61 pence, and that prices, after this time, altered, so the closing prices were as stated, viz. that middling American rose to 5·69 pence, or in other words it rose 8 points, and this is expressed as being *8 points on*, a point being equal to the one hundredth part of a penny, or ·01 pence.

A graph of the Quotations is given on page 16, and it is interesting as showing that the official grades quoted, from fully good ordinary to fully good middling, are in a regular series with equal differences between each grade. It is evident from this graph that the lower and higher values do not follow an equal difference curve, but the great bulk of the grades are clearly indicated by a straight line, and all intermediate grades or variations from grade can quite easily be found by interpolation.

Indian Cottons

The cotton plant is cultivated in India under a very wide range of climate and variable soil conditions. Whilst seeds may be put into the ground in October in the Southern part of the country, the crop will be harvested in the North at the same time. The picking of cotton takes place in India somewhere all the year round.

The quality of Indian cotton is poor and short in staple, but recent developments lead to an anticipation of greatly improved results, as may be judged from the fact that 1912 saw 200,000 bales of cotton produced equal to Mid American.

A variety of cottons are grown, of which the principal are :—

Cambodia or Tinnevelly American.—This cotton is grown

in the Madras Presidency and is spreading over Southern India. It was an accidental growth discovered five years ago by Steele. Its fibres are one inch long, uniform in length, fine and strong and rather creamy in colour; it has a close resemblance to American Uplands cotton. "Tinnevelly American" is the Liverpool name for it. In 1907-8 only 20,000 lb. were grown, in 1912 the amount reached 40,000,000 lb. Seed is sown in October, and picking begins about the middle of February. Unusual care is taken in picking the crop. The first picking is the best. Roller gins are used. It can be used up to 40s.

Tinnevelly Cotton.—This is one of the most prized of Indian cottons and can be mixed with American. In colour it is very white. The fibres are clean and strong and very free from leaf. It sometimes comes into the market adulterated with sand, seed cotton, and other foreign matters. Eight different grades of this cotton are grown. It may be used up to 25s.

Westerns.—A Madras cotton, longer than Tinnevelly, colour fairly white, but dull, rough, and often dirty with leaf and seed; it is less valuable than Tinnevelly on this account, due to being ginned by the foot roller.

Northerns.—A Madras cotton, silkier than Westerns and more valuable. Often mixed with Westerns. Colour a slight red tinge.

Cocanadas.—Staple of moderate length. In value about midway between Tinnevelly and Westerns. Its fibre is strong and silky and has a red tinge. Used for coloured yarns and also for lace.

Malvensis, $\frac{7}{8}$ inch staple; *Vera*, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch staple; *Rosea*, $\frac{5}{8}$ inch staple; *Buri*, 1 inch staple; *Bani*, 1 inch staple; *Jari*, $\frac{5}{8}$ inch staple. All these are grown in the Central

Province. *Bani* is a fine silky cotton, the finest grown in India. It was formerly exported in large quantities under the name of *Hinganghats.*

Surtee-Broach or *Broach*, also known under the general term of *Surat.* The staple is from $\frac{7}{8}$ to 1 inch long, glossy white in colour, which gives it a high value.

Dhollera.—A common name given to the following four chief types of cotton grown in the North Gujarat District—"Wagad," "Lalia," "Goghari," and "Rozi." Most of this cotton is used locally.

Dharwar.—$\frac{5}{8}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch staple, of good colour, but not very strong. The bolls are not very open, so cannot be picked clean.

Kumpta.—$\frac{3}{4}$ to $\frac{7}{8}$ inch staple, dull fibre, but somewhat finer than Broach, of which it is a variety.

Bengal.—Staple about $\frac{5}{8}$ inch.

Experimental farms under Government control are constantly trying to improve quality and production, supplying seed and cultural instruction and testing seed from other cotton-growing countries.

Indian cotton is graded as follows—Good Fair, Fully Good Fair, Good, Fully Good, Fine, Superfine, and spot quotations are quoted on *Good*, for example :—

Good Broach, $6\frac{3}{8}$; Good Oomra, $6\frac{3}{16}$; Good Bengal, $5\frac{5}{8}$; Tinnevelly, $6\frac{5}{8}$				December 1912
Broach cotton is from the districts of Broach and Surat				
Oomra	„	„	„	Berar, Central India, Central Provinces, Hinganghat, etc.
Bengal	„	„	„	Bengal, Central India, and Rajputana.
Tinnevelly	„	„	„	Madras.

China Cotton.—This cotton is a rather short species and

is used chiefly in the country itself, though Japan imports a fair proportion of it.

Russian Cotton. — This cotton is grown in Turkestan (Central Asia) and in Transcaucasia, from American seed originally, and is not in any degree inferior in length, strength, or lustre to the best American kinds. Russian spinners prefer it at equal price to American for counts up to 34^s. Great developments may be expected in this region, in cotton growing, as vast areas of country are fitted for it.

British Cotton-Growing Association.—This Association is carrying out pioneer work in the encouragement of cotton growing in British colonies and dependencies. A number of large tracks of country, in Africa chiefly, are being developed and a good quality of cotton grown. Other countries are carrying out similar work, so that if these efforts are successful a more stable condition will be set up by the existence of large cotton-growing areas wide apart and not so likely to be disturbed by the artificial conditions set up by speculation, as so frequently happens in the American markets.

Lengths and Diameters of Cotton Fibres.—In the table on p. 22 an attempt is made to present the dimensions of the various classes of cotton as ascertained by several authorities. In examining this table it would be a somewhat difficult matter to say under which name the most reliance could be placed, as each one has investigated the matter conscientiously, but to a critical observer there is much internal evidence, both in the measurements themselves and their comments on them, to lead to the supposition that thoroughly scientific methods have not been employed in the work. It is natural to suppose that different seasons' crops will contain variations in the fibres according to the

conditions under which the plant is cultivated, but only in very extreme cases is the difference in the two factors tabulated of any consequence. Other characteristics of the cotton are modified, and affect its value, but these two are fairly constant. In examining the tabulated results of the authorities quoted, we find that a maximum length has been found in the different classes, and also a minimum one, —after each has probably measured a number of fibres of each class. Much has been made of these results by some writers as giving a comparison for the extreme variation in lengths and diameters, but it is scarcely necessary to point out that such conclusions are of little if any practical use. The chief interest in the matter centres itself in the mean or average length of the staple, and on this we are presented with a strange feature in looking over the tables mentioned. We reproduce on page 24 tabulated results of two authorities in order to show clearly what is meant.

[TABLE

Table of Lengths and Diameters of the Cotton Fibre

Name.	Lengths in Inches and Decimals.						Diameters in Decimals of an Inch.				
	Evan Leigh.	Monie.	Alcan.	O'Neill.	Deschamps.	Bowman.	Evan Leigh.	Alcan.	Roney.	Monie.	Deschamps.
Sea Islands	1·62	1·8	..	..	..	..	·00064	·00025 to ·00056	·000437	·000135	·000256
Edisto	2·2	..	1·37 to 1·57	1·35 to 1·88	2·28	2·2	..	..	..	..	..
Wodamalam	1·63	..	..	1·44	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
John's Isle	1·6	..	..	1·5	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Florida	..	1·65	..	..	..	1·95	..	..	..	·000637	..
Fiji	..	1·87	..	..	2·01	1·88	..	..	..	·000637	·000677
Tahiti	..	1·5	..	..	..	1·88	..	..	..	·000641	..
Peruvian	..	1·56	..	..	..	1·5	..	·00052 to ·00078	·000437	·000675	..
Egyptian	1·41	..	1·1 to 1·51	1·13 to 1·18	1·25	..	·000655	·00065 to ·00078	·000437	..	·000763
Gallini	..	1·43	..	..	..	1·5	..	..	..	·000675	..
Brown	..	1·31	..	..	..	1·4	..	..	..	·000738	..
White	..	1·25	..	..	..	1·25	..	..	..	·000769	
Smyrna	..	1·0	..	..	..	1·24	..	..	..	·000769	·00103
Brazilian	..	..	..	..	..	..	·00079	·00065 to ·00078	..	..	..
Maranham	1·15	1·06	..	1·12 to 1·2	..	1·15	..	..	..	·000787	..
Pernambuco	..	1·25	..	1·18	..	1·35	..	..	..	·000787	·000819
Surinam	1·17	..	1·06 to 1·18	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Parina	1·2	..	1·11	..	..	1·2	..	..	..	..	..
Cera	1·15	1·03	1·11	..	..	1·15	..	..	..	·000787	..
Maceo	..	..	1·11	..	..	1·2	..	..	..	..	..

Peruvian Rough	1·3	1·28	0·86 to 1·18	..	1·13	1·3	..	..	..	..	·000846
Smooth	1·3	1·28	0·86 to 1·18	..	1·13	1·35	..	..	..	..	·000846
Algiers	1·45	..	1·41 to 1·57	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
West Indian	1·3	1·22	..	..	..	1·3	..	..	..	·000769	..
American	..	..	..	..	..	..	·000775	·000874	..	..	·000826
Orleans	..	1·03	..	..	..	1·1	..	..	..	·000757	..
Uplands	..	·93	..	..	..	1·0	..	..	..	·000763	..
Texas	0·92	1·0	..	..	..	0·95	..	..	·000547	·000763	..
Mobile	1·05	0·87	..	1·03	0·92	1·05	..	..	..	·000763	..
Georgia	1·05	..	..	1·03	0·92	..	..	·00025 to ·00056	..	..	..
Mississippi	1·1	..	0·7 to ·98	..	1·03	..	..	..	·000547	..	..
Louisiana	1·1	..	0·82 to 1·05	·97 to ·99	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Tennessee	0·98	..	..	1·0	..	..	..	..	·000586 to ·0006	..	..
African	1·15	1·03	..	1·1	..	0·91 to 1·25	..	..	..	·000819	..
Indian	..	..	..	..	..	..	·000844 to ·00073	..	·000736	..	..
Hinghunghat	..	1·03	..	..	..	1·2	..	..	..	·000833	·000787
Dhollerah	1·1	0·93	1·06 to 1·96	·092 to ·94	0·9	1·1	..	..	..	·000847	..
Broach	0·82	0·84	·78 to ·82	..	0·78	0·9	..	..	..	·000833	·000885
Tinevelly	·75 to 1·05	0·87	..	..	..	0·95	..	..	..	·000826	..
Dharwar	0·98	0·81	..	..	..	1·0	..	..	..	·000826	..
,,	1·0 to 1·65	..	1·18 to 1·37	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Oomrawuttee	..	0·9	..	..	..	1·0	..	..	..	·000847	·000846
Comptah	..	0·87	..	0·9	..	1·05	..	..	..	·000847	..
Madras, West	·85	0·87	·71 to ·9	..	0·82	1·0	..	..	..	·000833	·000885
Scinde	..	0·65	..	..	..	1·0	..	..	..	·00084	..
Bengal	1·15	0 87	..	..	..	1·1	..	..	..	·000869	·000996
China	..	..	·83	..	0·86	..	..	..	..	..	·000949

LENGTHS OF FIBRES

Description.	Evan Leigh.			Monie.		
	Max.	Min.	Mean.	Max.	Min.	Mean
New Orleans .	1·16	·88	1·02	1·125	·937	1·03
Sea Islands .	1·8	1·41	1·61	2·0	1·75	1·875
Pernams . .	1·5	1·2	1·35	1·375	1·125	1·25
Egyptian . .	1·52	1·3	1·41	1·375	1·125	1·25

The mean length, it will be seen, is exactly the mean between the maximum and minimum; such a result is most unlikely to happen, and to any one accustomed to making investigations for averages, grave doubts are thrown on conclusions represented in this manner. The mean diameters are found in a similar manner; and to show that such a method is likely, and does lead to error, I give twenty-four measurements made by Mr. Midgley, F.R.Met.S., Bolton, from samples of Egyptian taken in four different years—

·0008	·00025	·00065	·00020	·0030	Max. ·00080
·0002	·00035	·00035	·00030	·00270	Min. ·00020
·0004	·00055	·00050	·00035	·00245	2) ·00100
·0005	·00065	·00025	·00070	·00260	Mean ·00050
·0006	·00050	·00030	·00060	24) ·01075	
·0005	·00040	·00040	·00045	Mean ·000448	
·0030	·00270	·00245	·00260		

The average mean of all the measurements, which is the only correct way to obtain the mean, is seen to be ·000448, whilst the mean of the maximum and minimum gives an advance of over 10 per cent on this result.

A far more useful table of lengths and diameters would be one obtained from specimens of cotton after passing

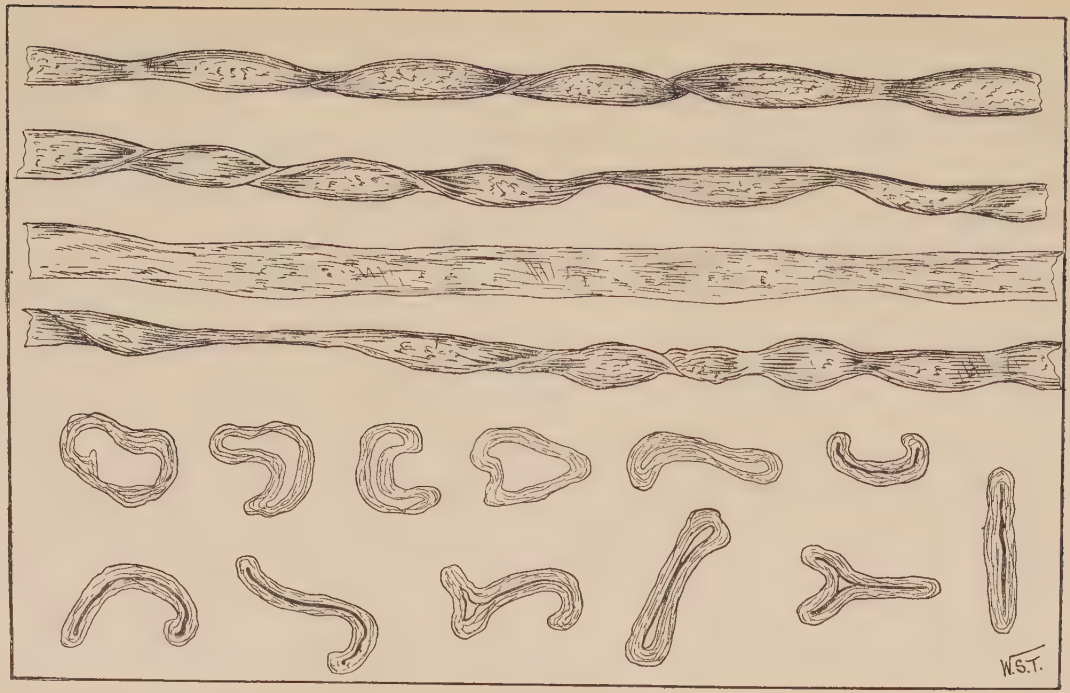


Fig. 2.

through the finishing scutcher or card; such a list would be of immense practical use in the setting of the card, draw-frames, fly-frames, and spinning machines, but its compilation would have to be undertaken by a very experienced and trained observer.

The cotton fibre, apart from its fineness and length, when examined under the microscope, is found to possess a characteristic which gives to it its principal value in the use to which it is put in the formation of yarns. This important feature consists of a long series of spiral twists extending the full length of the filament, and giving to it the necessary roughness to cause a resistance to being pulled asunder when, in combination with other fibres, it is twisted together in a thread. A rough idea of this appearance is given in the sketch, Fig. 2.

It is strange that most writers, in speaking of this peculiarity, convey the idea that the twists are comparatively few in number. One writer (Monie) even goes so far as to speak of a "collapsed cylindric tube twisted several times throughout its length." This is decidedly misleading, as an Egyptian fibre has about 250 twists in its length; or an average for several years of about 180 twists to the inch, and it is most probably owing to the variation in the number of these twists brought about by varying conditions of climate, cultivation, and carefulness in picking at the right time that the quality of the cotton depends; this leads us up to the point, when it will be an advantage and distinctly interesting to give what is probably the first explanation ever given of the cause of the twist in the cotton fibre and similar cell structures in the vegetable kingdom. The fibres, when forming, and being built up as an elongated cell from the seeds outwards, are hollow and cylindrical in section having very thin walls: a circulation

of the fluid necessary for life and growth is continually going on; and as addition is made to the length, we find that the thickness of the tube is gradually increased. The increments, of course, vary according to the conditions of growth, and leave the cylinder walls very unequal in thickness, longitudinally as well as circumferentially, but they are still, generally speaking, round. When maturity is reached, the circulation ceases, and the fluid interior is withdrawn by the seed, or disappears in some other way, so that the tube gradually collapses through the pressure of the atmosphere, into a ribbon-like thread with thick rounded edges, and in doing so, yields in the weakest and most probably the thinnest parts, first at the outer end, and from here travels down to the seed along the line of least resistance. It almost follows from this statement that a more or less spiral twist would be the result, and we find it so, but we should also expect that a variety of distortions would be introduced, long twists, and short twists, and an absence of twists (these are all apparent under the microscope), but a stranger feature still is seen in a series of twists indiscriminately arranged, turning first one way, and then the other. Mr. Midgley, though ignorant of the cause of it, in speaking of this latter and hitherto unobserved peculiarity, before a Mill Managers' Association of Bolton, gave the result of an examination of an Egyptian fibre, to show both the irregularity of twist and also its variation in direction. The following sketch, Fig. 3, will illustrate the matter: the figures and the curves within which they are placed represent the number and direction of the twists, whilst the straight lines between are portions of the fibre devoid of twist—there was no kind of equality in the spirals, some being coarse pitched, and others fine.

There is an undoubted advantage in all this, the interlocking of the fibres being made more certain, and it may be added that the discovery gives us another reason why the cotton fibre is so valuable to us. At the same time it is strange, as Mr. Midgley remarks, that such an important feature should have been unnoticed, or at least unmentioned by specialists who have written books on the subjects.

Before leaving this particular part of our subject, it is imperative that some notice should be taken of a characteristic of the fibre which is perhaps more important to us than the feature of the natural twists just described.

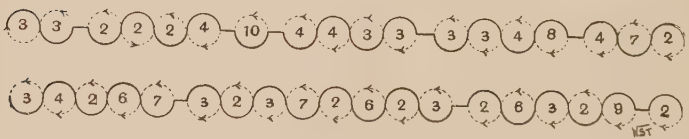


FIG. 3.

Two reasons prompt this explanation. In the first place, because any information which leads us to realise more fully why the cotton fibre is so valuable, will have a strong tendency to make people try to utilise its value more fully; and secondly, it is a characteristic which has been practically unnoticed by technical writers; in fact the matter has been treated in such a manner that to a thoughtful mind the strength of the fibre has been almost destroyed in effect through their description rather than strengthened.

It has been previously stated that the cotton fibre is an elongated cell. Now, the formation of this cell is one of simple growth outwards from the seed, and as a consequence we have a fibre which is relatively strong

and offers considerable resistance to breakage, and when it does yield, it is a rupture pure and simple; but writers, copying a well-known author, who, however, professed his ignorance of the matter, have described the building-up of this cell quite differently; it is said to be formed by the continual addition of small cells, one on the top of the other, until the whole length of the fibre is built up; when this happens, some action takes place that corrodes, or causes the separating walls of the various cells to disappear, and so an elongated cell is the result. If this explanation was true the cotton fibre would be worthless; every fibre would break up into its component cells at the gin, and yield a substance similar in appearance to flour instead of ginned cotton. There are many fibres in Nature found as above described, but their cells are so easily separated, no matter how well connected to each other, that they scarcely do more than hold themselves together. It is therefore important to emphasise the fact that it is the one long cell without break or division that gives the cotton fibre its strength, and renders it capable of standing operations the severity of which would be very destructive to weaker fibres. It can be bent, doubled up, and tied in knots without breaking: fibres built up of cells would be incapable of such treatment, and although attempts have been made to use them, their unusual weakness on this account has resulted in failure.

A deduction easily made from the explanation just given is that the twists are not the result of the fibre twisting or turning on its own axis, as erroneously stated by some writers; indeed, considering that all the fibres in the boll, both before bursting and just after, are intermingled in every imaginable manner, it is absolutely

impossible for them to turn even once on their own axis. From this consideration alone, but with an explanation of the phenomenon to help him, the reader will have no difficulty in understanding what has been said. An experiment that can be made by any one who wishes to test the matter may be performed by obtaining a thin tube of lead or other soft material. Scrape the walls thinner either spirally or in some irregular manner. If one end is plugged, and the air exhausted by a pump, the tube will collapse, and the thin portions will yield first. When, by scraping, a reduction in the thickness of the wall has been made in a spiral form, the tube will simply yield along the spiral, and no turning of any kind will take place on the axis of the tube, although the result would seem to suggest it, if no explanation was given as to the cause. India-rubber tubing will do as well for trying the experiment, but there is considerable difficulty in obtaining it sufficiently irregular in thickness to give good results.

The fibre is practically uniform in diameter throughout its whole length, and is not, as sometimes supposed, of a tapering character, about $\frac{1}{100}$ part of an inch at the top is quite round, brittle, and solid, and brings the fibre to an abrupt point, but very few of these points are found on the cotton after it has passed through the preparing machines.

The composition of the fibre is important, perhaps all-important from a dyer's point of view, but to the spinner the knowledge is essential, as it very materially affects the conditions under which it is made into yarn.

An analysis of cotton fibre from twelve different varieties made by Messrs. Davis, Dreyfus, and Holland, gave the following results :—

	Per cent.		
Carbonate of potassium	32·22	soluble in	water.
Chloride „	10·21	„	„
Sulphate „	13·02	„	„
Carbonate of sodium	3·35	„	„
Phosphate of magnesium	8·73	insoluble	„
Carbonate „	7·81	„	„
„ calcium	20·26	„	„
Peroxide of iron	3·40	„	„

The samples experimented upon were taken direct from the bale, but in an analysis made by Dr. Ure the sample had been carded, and so he obtained a slightly different result from the above, since adhering mineral matter, etc., would have been cleansed from it by the opening, scutching, and carding processes.

The fibre, as we have already remarked, is an elongated cell, whose walls are almost entirely pure cellulose, 85 per cent of it being this substance. Surrounding the wall is an oily substance of a waxy nature, for the preservation of which so much is done in the mill by carefully maintaining the temperature and humidity and in the setting of the machines. This wax amounts to as much as 5 per cent of the fibre, but varies in different cottons. It is of a very delicate character, and consequently easily damaged; in fact it can be rubbed off in a warm room where it becomes softened—this softening makes the fibre pliable and elastic. The interior of the walls is lined with remarkably fine fibrous strings, whilst the tube itself contains a substance resembling that seen in the quill of a feather.

When the cotton is picked, all the fibres are not perfect, numbers are immature and faulty from many causes—these latter are readily distinguished by the absence of twists, being simply flat ribbons and almost transparent.

Experiments made upon the individual fibre give results

that are tabulated below, and are interesting as showing the relative strength of different varieties :—

MEAN BREAKING WEIGHT OF A FIBRE OF COTTON IN GRAINS

Name.	O'Neill.	Monie.
Sea Island Edisto . .	83·9	—
Sea Island	—	100
Queensland	147·6	—
Egyptian	127·2	—
Gallini	—	125
Egyptian Brown . . .	—	150
Egyptian White . . .	—	146
Maranham	107·1	—
Pernambuco	140·2	160
Benguela	100·6	—
Orleans	147·7	140
Uplands	104·5	—
Texas	—	145
Mobile	—	110
Hingunghat	—	150
Dhollerah	141·9	—
Comptah	163·7	—

As it stands, however, it is very deceptive, and has led to many erroneous conclusions. The strength of yarns is almost in inverse order to the strength of the individual fibres. We frequently hear about a loss of a certain percentage of strength in the various processes which must always be accepted with considerable reserve ; two people testing the strength of the same cotton could scarcely get within 10 per cent of each other in their results, and very large numbers of tests would be necessary even for this, so delicate and variable are the fibres.

In using the table for the calculated strength of spun

yarns, and comparing this result with the actual strength given on the testing machine, is a reprehensible practice, and can only lead to the fixing of false ideas on the subject in the minds of the readers; loss in strength through the presence of immature and over-ripe fibres, distortion of the fibres when in the aggregate as yarn, and the absolute impossibility of obtaining equality of tension in each fibre, are factors inherent in all yarns, and cannot be obliterated; they alone represent a large loss in strength in any test, and consequently it is scarcely correct to speak of the theoretical strength of yarn.

The cultivation of the cotton is a phase of the subject to which we will now devote a little attention. Other writers have devoted considerable space to descriptions of it, and reference should be made to their books. For our purpose a few brief remarks will suffice. In its native condition the cotton plant grows under the ordinary conditions of the surrounding vegetation of its home; suitable soil and climate are absolutely essential in order that it may exist. But it is a remarkable fact how plants or any living organism will continue to exist by adapting itself to its surroundings, provided any change that takes place is a gradual one, and the possibility of improving any plant from some special point of view, such as better flowers, better fruit, improved foliage, or increased wood, is almost unlimited. The indigenous cotton plants were practically uncultivated, and the rather poor character of many of the fibres, together with demand for an improvement in this respect, was taken advantage of in the direction suggested by analysis and analogy. By cultivation, and the application of fertilisers of a character likely to build up the plant, we have obtained a greatly improved fibre. Of course the methods of cultivation will vary considerably in different parts of the world,

according to the extent of Nature's own share in work. In a dry atmosphere and little rain, water must be introduced by some system of irrigation. If the soil lacks some portion of a substance necessary for good fibres it must be supplied. Time and seasons must also be chosen with regard to the climate and its variation, and a number of other points have to receive very careful attention.

The following table is compiled in order to give a general idea of the times of sowing and picking of most of the commercial cottons :—

Name.	Sowing.	Picking.
Sea Islands	1st April to 1st May	25th Aug. to 10th Dec.
Egyptian	March and April	September to December
Brazilian	15th Dec. to 1st June	July to February
Georgia	10th April to 1st May	15th Aug. to 1st Dec.
Florida	1st April to 1st May	10th Aug. to 1st Dec.
Mississippi	5th April to 10th May	10th Aug. to 15th Dec.
Louisiana	1st April to 10th May	1st August to 15th Dec.
Alabama	5th April to 10th May	10th Aug. to 15th Dec.
Texas	15th March to 10th May	1st Aug. to 20th Dec.
Arkansas	15th April to 15th May	15th Aug. to 15th Jan.
Tennessee	15th April to 15th May	1st Sept. to 15th Jan.
Bengal	June	October to January
Oomrawutte	June	November to January
Broach	June	January to April
Dhollerah	June	February to April
Coompta	August	March to May
Dharwar	August	March to May
Tinnevelly	October to November	February to April
Madras (West)	August to September	March to June
Hingunghat	June	November to March

In the preparation of the ground for planting, fertilisers are first plentifully ploughed in, after which ridges are formed with spaces of 5 or 6 feet between them, and upon the top of these the seeds are sown in holes, a few in each hole, or in a dribble or groove when the seeds are sown

along the full length of the ridge. When the plants appear above the ground they are thinned out, the strongest ones being left a little longer; another thinning takes place shortly after, leaving only the strongest plants growing at suitable intervals along the ridge. The wide space between the ridges permits a plough to pass between to bank up the ridges around the plants as they develop, and in addition constant attention is required in hoeing to keep the soil free from weeds. During growth the plants are subject to be attacked by insects of various kinds. These, by laying their eggs on the leaves, branches, and in the flower and boll, introduce a deadly enemy to the plants, for subsequently, as caterpillars, they do immense damage to the crops. Immediately following the disappearance of the flower, which lasts only a day or so, the fibres are built up from their seeds. Directly the seed-case bursts, the boll of cotton is plucked away, and after a sufficient quantity has been gathered, it is carted to the ginning factory, and there treated for the separation of the fibres from the seeds.

CHAPTER II

COTTON GINS

In ginning we have a process, directly connected with the cotton industry, which has received but scant notice at the hands of writers who have made textile machinery a speciality. This is partly accounted for by the fact that the operation is not performed within the four walls of our own cotton-mills; therefore only an indirect interest is

presumed to exist. But when, in the subsequent processes, difficulties arise and defects are discovered that have their origin in bad ginning, it is absolutely necessary that an intelligent knowledge of the process should be obtained, in order (if for no other reason) that when evils do appear suggestive of bad ginning, the cause may be sought for in the right direction. Also, since ginning is purely a mechanical operation, involving a large amount of ingenuity and design, it is only natural that an interest should exist, which demands to know something of the details of its action and the principles underlying its operations. It is to supply the above requirements that a little more than a superficial attention is given to the subject, reliance being placed on the illustrations to give completeness to the written descriptions.

The primary object of ginning consists in separating the fibres from the seed, and a perfect operation would be performed if the separation was effected without the slightest injury to either. It is hopeless, however, to expect that this desirable condition will ever be attained. So many varying factors enter into the process through inequalities that exist in the fibres surrounding the seeds, and in the seeds themselves, that the degree of success of the operation can only be judged upon the basis of its average result. We shall always find some fibres will break in two or more pieces before they will separate at their connection with the seed; other fibres will bring away, in the separation, portions of the thin husk of the seed; while a certain proportion will always be completely ruined by being torn, broken, or scraped. With the utmost care, broken seeds seem to be a necessary evil, and neps can be so easily formed in the process that these and many other defects inherent in the material or machine prevent us hoping for any great

improvement upon our present methods of dealing with the problem.

Previous to the introduction of modern machinery ginning was performed by hand, or by machines of a very primitive character—such as the "Foot Roller," and its improvement the "Churka." As the cotton industry developed, greater production than these were capable of was necessary, and machines driven by power were introduced. It is through these machines that the greater part of our supply of the raw cotton has to pass before it reaches our hands.

Numerous forms of gins have been tried, but at the present time only three are used to any large extent—viz. the "Knife Roller" Gin, the "Macarthy" Gin, and the "Saw" Gin. A description of each will be given in their order.

We select for our first example

The "Knife Roller" Gin

This is shown in section and plan in Fig. 4. The seed cotton is placed in bulk on the table X, and pushed forward down the hopper-shaped receptacle, where it comes into contact with a knife roller B, formed of a number of knife discs, the knife portion being arranged in such a manner that anything coming into contact with it is given a reciprocal or to-and-fro motion, as well as being subject to a striking action due to its revolution. The seed cotton is carried forward in the direction of B's motion until it is brought into touch with a leather roller A. This roller, which has a very roughened surface, due to spirally-formed saw cuts, has pressing against it by means of springs F a steel doctor knife D. The cotton fibres brought into con-

tact with the leather adhere to it, and are carried round past the knife. It is impossible for the seeds to follow, so if the fibres by this action are not wrenched from them the seeds will remain at the point of contact of the doctor knife and leather roller, with the fibres still connected with it. The essential feature of this gin now comes into play. The knife roller B is so set as to act upon these adhering seeds, and it gives to them a gentle to-and-fro motion, repeated very quickly, and at the same time a slight striking action or pressure, also repeated quickly. The combined actions soon cause the seeds to separate from the fibres and to fall down through the grid H to the floor. The freed fibre passing forward is stripped from the roller by some arrangement of stripping board similar to that shown at Y. A better idea of the action just described may be obtained on reference to Figs. 5 and 6, where the angular knife edge is shown in two positions, and its action on the seeds in moving from one position to the other is easily traced. The next knife on the circumference of the roller would then act upon the seeds and move them back to their original position, this being repeated until the desired result is obtained. The cotton is stripped, as a rule, in a fairly continuous fleece (though this depends largely on the feeding), and in a very flossy condition—a condition that, if transferred to our cotton-mills, would dispense with much elaborate and expensive opening machinery at present used, and reduce the cost of production in that department considerably.

The sketch, Fig. 4, shows the double-action form of this gin. It is so arranged, without interfering with the part already described, that the seed cotton not taken up by one leather roller A is brought round into contact with the other roller A (on the right of the drawing), where the

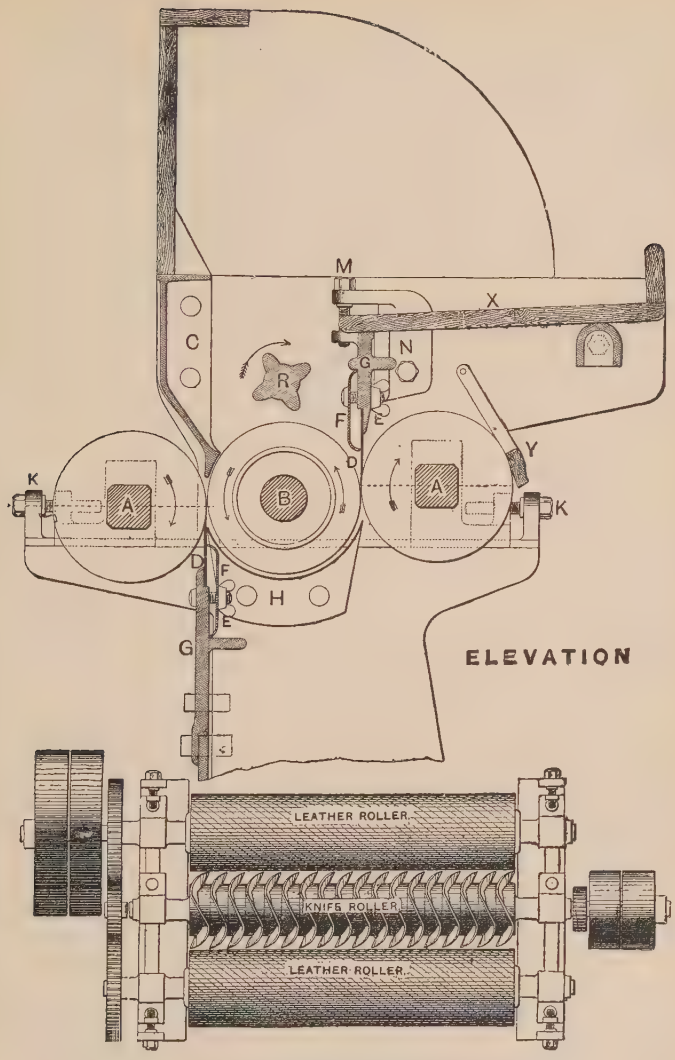


Fig. 4.—Knife Roller Gin. Plan and Section.

same process as described above is gone through, and to which the same letters equally apply. This results in a greatly increased production, as well as in economy in the power required for driving and the space occupied. A

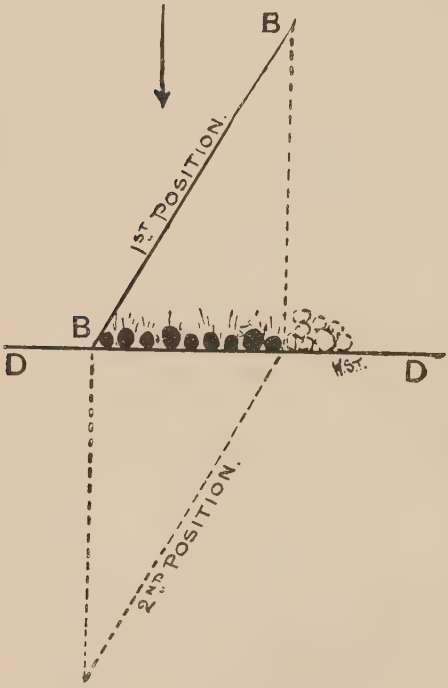


FIG. 5.

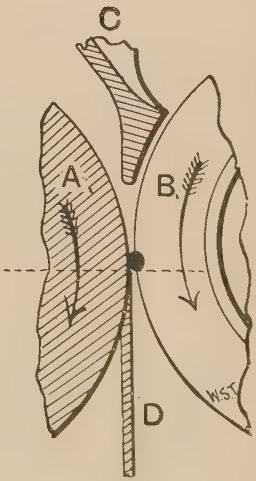


FIG. 6.

close examination of the drawing will enable one to understand the care and judgment that is necessary in setting the gin for any one class of cotton. The relation of the dish rail C to the knife roller must be such that seeds cannot get between them. Carelessness here produces

large quantities of crushed seeds, and yet if too near the fibres are severely damaged by rubbing. The doctor knife must occupy such a position that its sharp edge does not cut the fibres as they are carried past it. This is prevented by always setting the edge of the knife on the centre line of the leather roller, or very slightly on one side of this line, in the direction the roller is revolving. In this position it holds the fibres firmly at the end where they are connected with the seed, thus enabling the doctor knife to effect a separation at this point. The degree of pressure of the doctor knife upon the leather roller can be varied at will by means of the springs F and thumb-screws E, the pressure depending principally upon the tenacity with which the fibres adhere to the seeds.

The position of the leather roller in relation to the knife roller is another very important matter; for, in addition to the necessity of being perfectly parallel with each other, they must be set apart such a distance as to equal about one-third the diameter of the largest seed. If set too near, the seeds would be broken, while if too far away large numbers would not be acted upon by the knives, and the machine would block itself by an accumulation of unstripped seeds. The setting arrangements for the above conditions are shown in the sketch, their manipulation being of such a simple character that good results are easily obtained.

An auxiliary roller R, as shown, has recently been added to the machine, and has been found very effective in breaking up the large clusters of seed cotton which are fed to it, and also in maintaining in a favourable condition a constant supply of cotton to the knife roller.

The production of this machine varies from 100 to 120 lbs. of clean cotton per hour, and it may be as well to

state here that the proportion the clean cotton bears to the seed cotton is, on an average, about 1 to 3. For every pound of lint or clean cotton there will be 2 lbs. of seeds. Of course this proportion varies, many Indian cottons being as 1 to $4\frac{1}{2}$.

The speeds for good working are :—

Knife roller	.	250 to 300 revs. per min.
Leather roller	. .	120 to 150 „ „

The power required to drive is a little over 2 i. h. p.

The "Macarthy" Gin

The Macarthy Gin is a form of machine that differs in several important features from the knife roller gin. A section is shown in Fig. 7, which we will proceed at once to describe. The cotton is fed on to the table J and, falling into the hopper, is brought into contact with the revolving leather-covered roller A by means of the reciprocating action of a feeder bar O, this bar O being operated by the crank W. The leather roller has pressing against it, by means of springs C, a doctor knife B, which fulfils a purpose similar to that mentioned in the description on the "Knife Roller Gin." The remarks there made as to its position in relation to the centre line of leather roller are equally applicable to this machine. As the roller A revolves in the direction shown by the arrow, its rough leather surface carries the fibres past the doctor knife. The quickness of this action, through the seeds following and being suddenly checked by the knife, may cause a few fibres to separate, but the greater portion of the seeds remain at the knife edge, with the fibres still adhering to them. They are removed by an operation which differs greatly from the

means used in the knife roller gin. A steel beater blade F is connected, by means of a connecting-rod N, with a crank R on the driving shaft; it is also fixed to a rod or bar G, which is centred at H, the seeds being acted upon by the rapid reciprocating motion given to the beater blade by

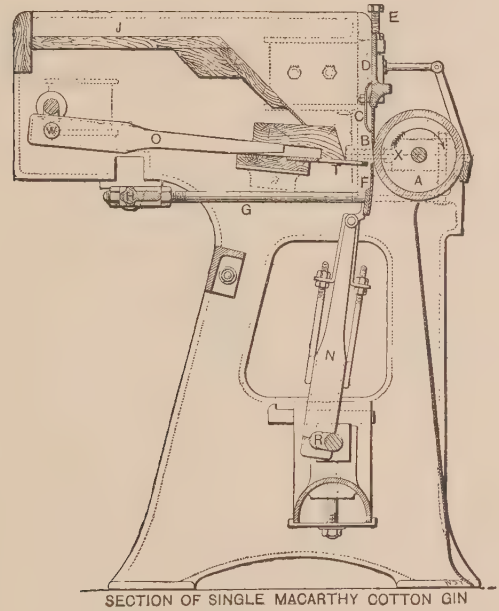


FIG. 7.

the crank. The repeated blows they receive soon detach them from the fibres, which are carried forward, the seeds meanwhile falling on the grid T, through which they pass into a suitable receptacle. It will be observed that F is guided in its path—which is a portion of a circle, having H as centre—through its connection with the bar G. This

bar is also used to adjust the distance of the blade from the leather roller, according to the size of the seeds. For this purpose the ends are screwed, and fitted with adjusting nuts, which also lock it in position when once it is set correctly.

The ginned cotton is stripped from the roller by the stripping board shown in sketch. It falls to the ground in a fairly continuous fleece, and is kept from mixing with the seeds by means of a sheet-iron division plate.

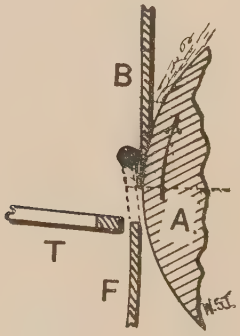


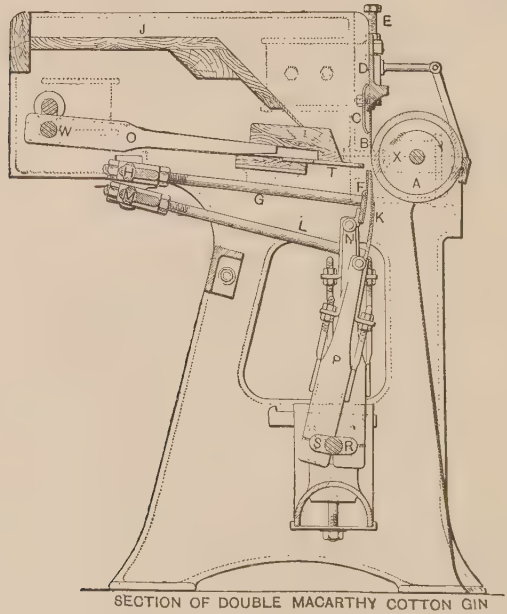
FIG. 8.

An enlarged view of the principal features of the gin is given in Fig. 8, and the remarks that follow may be better understood by a reference to it. It is complained of this machine that a large number of neps are formed, and the reason is not far to seek. It must be remembered that the fibres do not pass the doctor knife singly, but generally a number at a time, the fibres belonging to one, two, or more seeds going through in one place. The blade F, in rising up to about $\frac{3}{8}$ of an inch above the edge of the doctor knife, either knocks the seeds away or takes them with it. As the seeds receive repeated blows

before the separation is effected, it follows that this latter action is generally the one performed by the beater blade, so that the seeds not detached are compelled to follow the blade, and naturally drag back the fibres attached to them, which have passed under the doctor knife. This movement of the fibres, it will be noticed, is in opposition to the revolution of the leather roller, whose rough surface is going at the rate of about 200 ft. per minute. This going forward and drawing back process is bound to result in the fibres mixing themselves up and getting into those small entanglements that cause so much trouble and inconvenience in subsequent processes. The dragging back of the fibres over the sharp edge of the knife is also a source of mischief which is undoubtedly a cause to which may be traced many defects that ultimately appear in the form of mutilated fibres. A double form of this gin is given in Fig. 9. There are two beater blades F and K, actuated from cranks R and S. They rise and fall alternately. A larger production is by this means obtained with a lower speed of driving shaft, another advantage being the reduction of the vibration, which, in a single machine, is a serious evil, the two cranks in the double form tending to balance each other. A close study of the action of the two beater blades F and K will show that the evil mentioned in connection with the single gin is aggravated in this form; for it is possible for small seeds to be on the edge of the knife without being acted upon by the blade F, so that the larger seeds that F takes up will withdraw their fibres, not only in opposition to the surface of the roller, but also in opposition to the fibres adhering to the smaller seeds, this, of course, intensifying the probability of entanglement occurring.

The leather rollers are generally made of solid leather

washers, with a hole through the centre of each to slide upon a strong square iron shaft, upon which they are firmly fastened, the diameter of the washers, when first made, being about 7 in. The roller wears very unevenly, so it is necessary to keep it constantly trued, or the doctor knife



SECTION OF DOUBLE MACARTHY COTTON GIN

FIG. 9.

will not press equally the whole length. The edge of this knife also occasionally requires grinding, to keep its edge sharp and true.

	Production. Lb. per hr.	Power. i.h.p.	Speeds. Crank-shaft.	Speeds. Leather roller.	Driving pulley.
Single Macarthy...	30	1	800	150	6½ in. by 3 in.
Double „ ...	45	1¼	550	150	6½ „ by 3 „

Double Roller Macarthy Gin.—In Fig. 10 is shown a hand sketch of an adaptation of the Macarthy Gin. Two leather or hide-covered rollers AA are used, and a doctor knife B is pressed against each roller. The beater knives F act from above, and are given a reciprocating motion from a crank LM centred at L. The crank pin M and its bearing slide in a slot of the arm N carried by a shaft E, and on arms projecting from the shaft, are fixed the beater blades F. The vibrating shaft E also has fixed on it the girds C, whilst fixed rows of fingers are supported by the framing. The action of the machine is as follows: seed cotton is fed into the hopper space G formed by the beater knives and the girds C. The crank movement lowers this cotton into contact with the leather roller on one side and raises it away from the roller on the other side. When the cotton comes into contact with the roller, the fibres are seized and dragged past the fixed doctor knife B and are torn away from the seeds, the ginned fibres falling away at F and the seeds remaining on the gird C. As the gird lowers, the spaces in it permit the fixed fingers of D to pass between them, and so shake the seed sufficiently to cause them to fall out readily. The beater knife F at the same time passes the griping point of the doctor knife and knocks the seeds away by a rapid series of taps. This gin is very effective for the Upland woolly cotton. The production is about 80 lbs. per hour of such cotton, but much greater for easily ginned cotton.

Leather Roller of Gins.—The leather rollers used in the foregoing gins are constructed in two ways: 1st, as a solid leather roller built up by a series of leather discs threaded on a square iron shaft; 2nd, by strips of very thick leather such as walrus hide firmly fastened on to a wooden core or roller. In course of time the leather

wears away in an irregular manner so that it is necessary to true the roller by turning it up in a lathe. Carelessness in neglecting this duty is responsible for bad ginning and broken fibres.

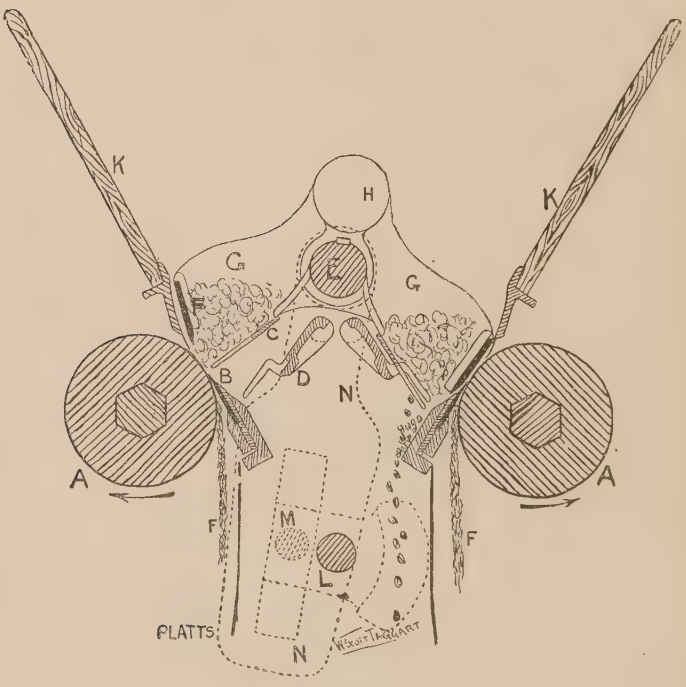


FIG. 10.

The doctor knives also require careful attention. The edges wear away and become blunt, and this occurs also in an irregular manner so that very imperfect ginning is a natural result.

The "Saw" Gin

A section through a saw gin is given in Fig. 11. The seed cotton is fed upon the lattice P and carried forward

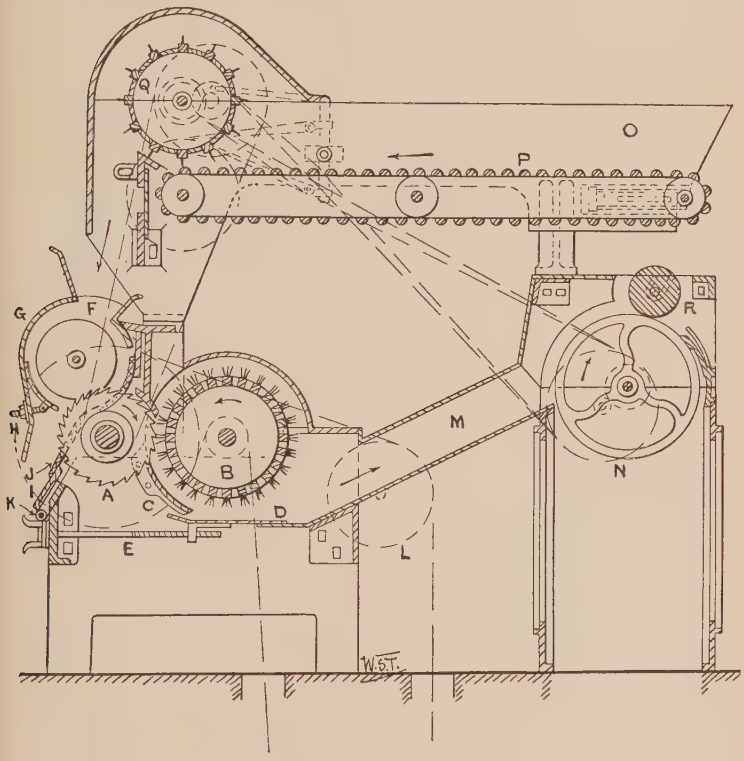


Fig. 11.

to the spiked roller Q, which loosens it somewhat and throws it over, so that it falls into the hopper or breast F, where it comes into contact with rapidly revolving saws A. These saws, varying in number according to the width of

the machine, but say 70, are threaded on a shaft and a space of about $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch left between each saw. This space is filled by an equal series of bars I. An enlarged view of this feature is shown in Fig. 12.

As the saws revolve, the teeth carry the fibres forward, but it is impossible for the seeds to follow, so the fibres are simply wrenched from the seeds and taken round until the brush B strips them from the teeth. An air current from the cage N draws the fibres along the passage M, and on reaching the revolving cage N are brought under the pressure roller R and delivered as a sheet, from which point it is taken to the baling press either by manual labour, lattice feeders, or pneumatic tubes.

FIG. 12.

The seeds when stripped of the fibres fall through the lower opening in the hopper or breast. The hulls or husks that are frequently snatched or broken from the seeds as well as broken-up seeds are taken forward by the saws, but the greater portions are too heavy to follow the cotton along the passage to the condenser NR, so pass through grids at C and D, both of which can be adjusted to the diameter of B. The bars I are also readily adjusted at K. The plate, adjustable at H, can be regulated to prevent the seeds falling away until thoroughly cleaned.

The driving of the machines usually takes place from below, and saw gins are generally set up in batteries, *i.e.* there are a number placed side by side, and the feeding of the gins is done from one end by travelling lattices.

Fig. 13 shows an arrangement in which a double row of saws are used.

We also have in Fig. 14 an illustration of further refinements. The cotton fed at N through hopper or

lattice, as in Fig. 10, passes over K and falls into the outer breast P. A spiked roller B stirs up the cotton, frees it from sand, leaves, stalks, etc., and presses it against the

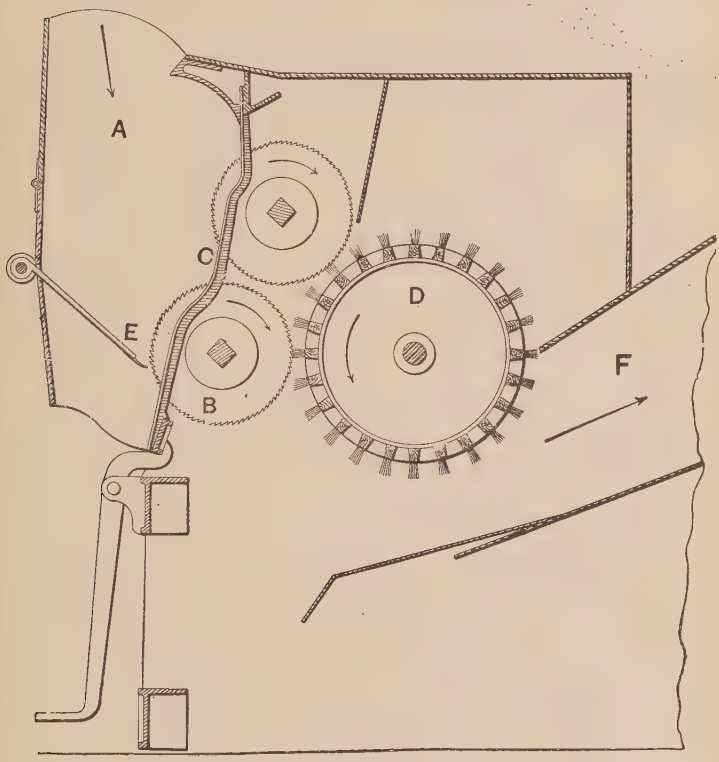


Fig. 13.

lower portions of the saws F. The projection N of the bars E permits some ginning to take place, and also serves to knock out leaf and stalks. The cotton now passes into the inner breast, where it can finally be operated on. A

certain amount of cotton accumulates in the inner breast, and the agitated condition it is in shakes out a quantity of its impurities, which, falling through the adjustable grids at D, fall into the outer breast, and eventually find an

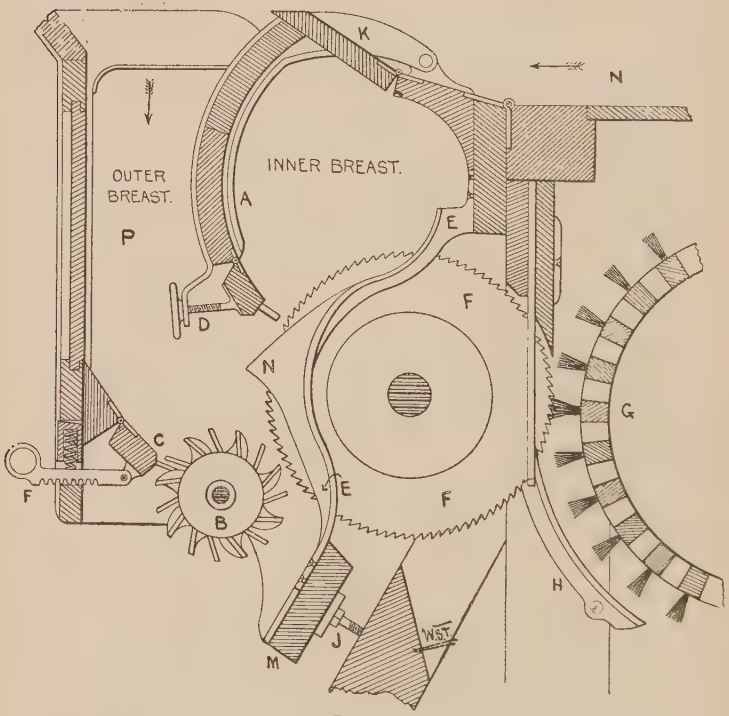


FIG. 14.

outlet through the adjustable grids at C. The bars E can be regulated by means of the screw I. The lid K is usually closed, though the gin can be easily worked if it is left open.

Production.—The saw gin has a large output compared

with the other gins mentioned. One with 70 saws running at 400 revs. per min. will produce up to 400 lb. of clean cotton per hour. On the other hand, the power required is much higher, 1 horse-power for 10 saws, so that a 70 saw gin would require 7 horse-power to drive it.

Gins used for Various Cottons :—

The "Churka" Gin is still used extensively in India.

The "Macarthy" Gin is used for long-stapled cotton, such as Sea Island and Egyptian, and for other kinds where the fibres are easily separated from the seeds.

The "Saw" Gin is used for American cotton and wherever American cotton is grown, such as West Africa, India, Ceylon, etc. These cottons are of a type in which the fibres are not too easily separated from the seeds.

The "Roller" Gin is used chiefly for Indian cottons.

Gins are built up, so far as their framing is concerned, of wood or iron. Most American gins are built of wood, English gins are usually of metal. Wooden gins can be packed complete, and are easily repaired, but are not so endurable; are liable to attack from ants and other pests; and fire destroys them. Iron gins pack in less compass, but are subject to breakages and require skilled labour for repairs. They are more endurable, and damage by fire is reduced to a minimum.

Baling of Cotton.—Cotton after ginning is made up into bales, covered by jute sacking or burlap and bound by strong wire or iron bands. Several methods are adopted to make the bales, and these include the *Screw Press*, *Hydraulic Press*, and *Steam Press*. The Screw Press is not usually employed for bales that are sent any great distance. The cotton is generally compressed by the screw and sent down to the railway or some centre near to the railway and there made up into more compact bales for shipment

or long-distance journeys; the sole object for this severe pressing being purely economic in order to save space and to pack as heavy a mass into as small a compass as possible with a minimum of probable damage to the fibres.

American bales usually weigh 500 lb. each; and, in any case, in all estimates or statements concerning the American crop issued by the U.S.A. Government a bale of 500 lb. weight is understood. A bale of this weight and measuring 52 inches by 24 inches by 20 inches will have a density of 30 lb. to the cubic foot. In this connection it must be clearly understood that America sends out bales of widely differing weights and sizes, and the same remarks apply to other cotton-exporting centres. A paragraph in the next chapter gives some of these dimensions and weights.

An Indian cotton bale is usually considered to weigh 400 lb. of cotton in all estimates.

Linters. — In all cottons where the fibres adhere tenaciously to the seeds there are large numbers of short fibres left on the seeds after ginning; these are subsequently removed by a machine called a Linter, and the cotton thus removed is termed Linters. In Egypt this short cotton is called *Scarto.*

Ginning Output.—The amount of clean cotton obtained at the gin from the seed cotton fed in is expressed in various forms, such as a ratio, a percentage, or a number related to some number different than 100.

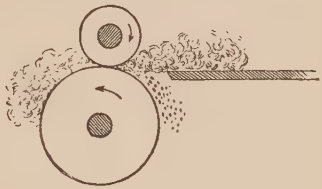
As a rule the percentage system is becoming general in all cotton-growing centres except in Egypt. In Egypt 100 lb. of cleaned cotton used to be obtained from 315 lb. of seed cotton; this 315 lb. was termed a *kantar* of seed cotton, and all ginning out-turns of Egyptian cotton are based on this weight of 315 lb. of seed cotton. As an example we note that Joanovitch has a ginning output of

99; this means that 99 lb. of clean cotton has been obtained from 315 lb. of seed cotton; this equals about 31·5 per cent cleaned cotton. The following list is an average for the present cottons in Egypt (1913):—

Mit Afifi	102	to 103	No linters, or, as its termed "Scarto," are included.
Abassi	102	„ 103	
Joanovitch	98·5	„ 99	
Sakellarides	98·5	„ 105	
Voltos	105	„ 107	
Assili	110		
Ashmouni	100		

The ginning out-turn is an important indicator as to whether the cotton is being grown under the best conditions, is deteriorating, or if suitable seed is being used.

Foot-Roller Gin.



Churka Gin.

For instance, if a certain cotton has been giving 44 per cent of cleaned cotton and then becomes reduced to 33 per cent, the reduction indicates bad cultivation, poor seed, a mixture of seed instead of a pure strain, or a distinct deterioration in quality of the original seed.

CHAPTER III

BALE BREAKERS

HAVING described the process of ginning, it will be as well at this point to give a slight description of an operation through which the cotton goes before being shipped to the country for which it is destined.

We have seen that the cotton as it comes from the gin is in a very loose, fleecy condition, and if it were transferred in this state to a mill near at hand no opening process would be necessary. But since the great bulk of cotton grown has to be carried considerable distances, it is absolutely necessary to adopt some convenient form of packing it into as small a compass as possible. This packing or baling process used to be, and in some places still is, performed by screw or steam presses. Hydraulic presses are, however, generally used at the present time, and by their means an enormous pressure can be exerted in compressing a large amount of cotton into a comparatively small and compact bale. The making of the bale is not by any means an instantaneous operation; it is, rather, a gradual one. For instance, a certain amount of loose cotton is placed in a receptacle, and the hydraulic ram compresses it into a thin layer; upon this is placed another lot of loose cotton, and the two lots are now compressed together, with the result that there will be two layers almost distinct from each other. This feeding of the loose cotton to the press goes on until the whole bale is built up to the required size in a series of layers. It is sometimes asked if the great pressure put upon the bale—

amounting sometimes to almost 3000 tons—has not a damaging effect upon the fibre. This may be answered almost decidedly in the negative. In the first place the microscope has not yet been able to discover any difference between the fibre from the pod and from the bale. Again, it is practically impossible for any fibre to get crushed or even compressed to an infinitesimal proportion of itself in the baling process; a few fibres in a layer, if submitted to a great pressure, would easily be crushed, but when in the press we have many thousands of fibres superimposed upon each other, the probability of any distortion in their cross section is reduced to a very small quantity.

It will be interesting to give some idea of the size and weight of the bales, but as they are constantly varying, we extract a portion of the United States Consular Report, which, it will be seen, contains in a concise form much information of a valuable nature.

American bales of cotton received at Liverpool weigh from 290 to 878 lb., and measure from 4 ft. 6 in. by 3 ft. 4 in. by 2 ft. 3 in. to 6 ft. 6 in. by 3 ft. by 2 ft. Egyptian bales weigh from 672 to 840 lb., and measure about 4 ft. 3 in. by 2 ft. 7 in. by 1 ft. 10 in., say 20 cubic feet. East Indian bales weigh as follows:—Surat, from 346 to 431 lb.; Madras, from 460 to 486 lb.; Tinnivelly, from 499 to 531 lb., and measure about 4 ft. 1 in. by 1 ft. 10 in. by 1 ft. 4 in. say about 9 cubic feet. Brazilian pressed bales weigh from 367 to 428 lb., and measure about 4 ft. 1 in. by 1 ft. 10 in. by 1 ft. 5 in.; unpressed weigh from 100 to 419 lb., and measure from 2 ft. 10 in. by 2 ft. 9 in. by 1 ft. 4 in. to 5 ft. 6 in. by 2 ft. 6 in. by 1 ft. 3 in. Peruvian bales weigh from 109 to 504 lb., and measure from 2 ft. 6 in. by 2 ft. 1 in. by 1 ft. 8 in. to 5 ft. 6 in. by 3 ft. 4 in. by 2 ft. 10 in.

American bales are generally covered with a coarse loosely woven bagging, easily torn, and quite incapable of bearing the handling they are subjected to in transit. Generally speaking, the bales are bound by seven iron hoop bands, each band being fastened by an iron tie or buckle; the bands with ties vary in weight from 10 bands = 12 lb. to 10 bands = 24 lb. Cotton from the other countries named is covered with closely woven, strong, but not heavy, canvas, and, with the exception of cotton from South America, is bound with iron bands. South American cotton is bound chiefly with twigs or ropes, but in some parts of Brazil and Peru the bales are bound together by iron wire or bands. Egyptian bales have about 11 bands, 10 bands = 16 to 18 lb. East Indian bales are bound by 3 bands, sometimes of equal length, each length passing three times round the bale, by one long and two short, and sometimes by one short and two long bands, the total turns round the bale being about the same in each case. The weight of the bands runs from 2 to 4 lb. per bale. On pressed Brazilian bales there are 10 bands = 33 lb., and there are two on each bale. On unpressed Brazilian bales the binding is very irregular, but the weights run as follows:—Bands, 10 = 16 lb.; twigs, 10 = 16 lb.; wires, 10 = 3 lb.; ropes, 10 = 4 lb. Peruvian bales are bound by three to four wires, or three bands, and some heavy bales have six wires. Light wire, 10 = 3 lb.; heavy wire, 10 = 12 lb.; bands, 10 = 3 lb. Covers weigh from 5 to 14 lb., according to size of bale. (Accompanying this report were specimens of some of the various materials used to cover the cotton from the several countries named, some of that from the United States had an appearance more resembling a net than canvas.)

Owing to the nature of the bagging described above, most American bales are landed in a very ragged condition, with the cotton much exposed, and either because of the poor material of the iron bands, and especially the ties, or because of the extremely rough treatment on the railways or steamships, great numbers of bales are landed with several bands missing. In consequence of the pressure of the bands being removed, the bales have expanded and burst the covering, the cotton in the loose part of the bale merely holding together by its own tenacity. Sometimes bales are completely broken up, and are landed in bulk. Unless the bales have been lying in wet or mud before having been shipped on the railways or steamships, and have become what is known to the trade as "country damaged," the quality of the article does not deteriorate. Cotton from the other countries mentioned is landed in excellent condition, with, perhaps, the exception of unpressed cotton from Brazil, which is not in good condition.

American cotton, owing to the serious defects in packing mentioned, suffers seriously as compared with cotton from other countries because of the great loss which is caused by many bales being landed in a torn, loose, unbound condition; not a loss caused by deterioration of the quality of the contents, but a loss in weight, a loss in cost of making the bales merchantable; a loss owing to the difficulty of identifying the bales, many of them having marks torn away, and the cost of apportioning them among the claimants amounts to a considerable sum; a loss when cotton is landed in bad weather by its gathering dirt and absorbing moisture; and, of late, a loss owing to the imposition by the fire-insurance offices of a very heavy discriminating tariff against cotton as compared with other

goods, solely on account of the heavy losses by fire of American cotton, it being alleged that the meshy nature of the canvas used and the ragged condition of the bales when landed and warehoused in Liverpool render American cotton peculiarly liable to take fire.

Much of the bad condition in which American cotton is landed is due to the practice of packing it in bales of irregular sizes, many of which stevedores at the American ports reduce in length by cutting off the ends to facilitate stowing. These stevedores also cause much damage by screwing the bales in the ship's hold, by which process the covering is torn, and such a degree of tightness is attained that many bales have to be torn out on this side by steam power, causing further serious damage to the covering. This practice of screwing seems to be confined to vessels loading in the United States ports.

There is a growing practice in America, it is stated, of putting bagging on bales, not for protective purposes, but simply to make weight; on many bales there are numerous folds of bagging at the ends, where they serve no useful purpose.

When the bale is opened in our cotton mills these layers, which exist as comparatively hard matted cakes, prove the necessity of something being done that will lessen the tendency of a very rough and damaging operation in the opening process. Up to within the last few years manual labour was employed for this purpose, and in some of the older mills hands are still used for breaking the cotton. It may, however, be taken for granted that the operation has now developed into purely a mechanical one for all kinds of cotton, the machines used for the purpose being known as "Bale Breakers." Several kinds of these machines are made, and in order to thoroughly

understand their action, sections are given, which show their principal features perhaps better, even, than a written description.

In Fig. **15** we have the well-known type of bale breaker with four lines of rollers. The cotton is fed upon a lattice, which carries it forward in the direction of the arrow. It passes through the machine by means of four pairs of suitably formed rollers, and emerges in a condition for the

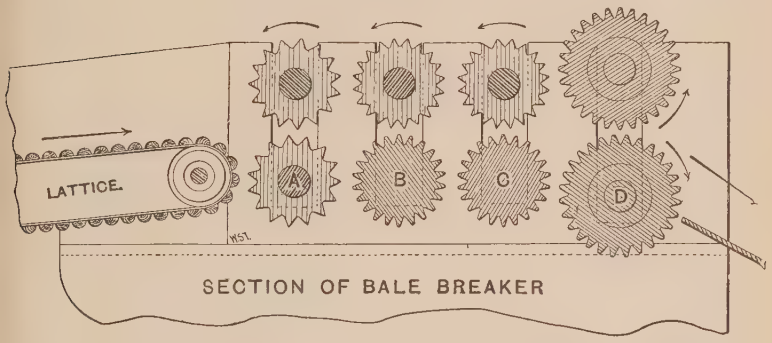


Fig. 15.

next process superior to that in which it came from the bale. In view of the importance that is attached to bale-breakers, it will be of advantage to follow the cotton through the machine, and note carefully the treatment it receives. It will be noticed that the first pair of rollers A, which take the cotton from the lattice, are coarse spiked ones, and about 6 inches diameter, made in sections, so that if breakages occur they can readily be repaired without sacrificing the whole roller.

It must be understood that the bale breaker is by no means a delicate machine. The hard, thick slabs of cotton necessitate a machine that is capable of withstanding the

severe strains and sudden shocks which such conditions set up. In consequence of this we find machines of this type strongly built, and yet arranged so that if a breakage does occur it can be easily mended. The effect of passing the cotton between these spiked rollers is to get it thoroughly penetrated from both sides by a series of holes. This is very important to notice, for though the thick layers may look the same after the penetration, yet they are in such a condition that very little effort would be required to break them up.

This penetrating process is continued by the next two pairs of rollers B and C, a slight difference, however, being introduced into their construction. The top rollers are spiked and of a fine pitch, while the bottom rollers are fluted their full length. The reason for this is easy to understand. In order to pull the slabs of cotton in pieces, the speeds of B, C, D are accelerated, so that a draft exists between each pair. This means that B not only takes the cotton from A, but that it takes it forward quicker than A can deliver it, which naturally reduces the slab in bulk. This drawing process is performed by each of the last three pairs of rollers. The fluted rollers are consequently introduced in order to give the rollers a better holding power, and in the middle two top rollers the fine pitched spikes continue the penetrating process.

The whole machine, as a rule, has a draft of about 32. This special draft is subject to variation, and in some machines is very much lower; a large draft is, however, preferable. When the draft is the one mentioned it is distributed through the machine as follows:—Between the first and second is about $2\frac{1}{4}$; between the second and third it is about $2\frac{3}{4}$; so that the greatest draft exists

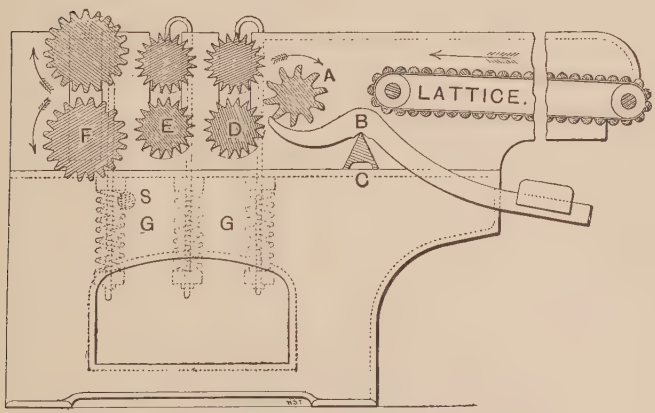
between the third and fourth, which equals about $5\frac{1}{4}$. This big draft accounts for the fact of the last pair of rollers (8 in. diameter) being fluted.

It will be observed that only lumps of cotton over 6 in. wide can be actually pulled into smaller pieces; but this does not interfere with the efficacy of the machine in bringing the whole mass of cotton into a condition extremely well adapted for the further opening process.

All classes of cotton can be successfully worked by this machine, from fair American upwards, and it is capable of an output up to 80,000 lbs. a week.

Pedal Bale Breaker

Fig. 16 shows a section through this machine. Its

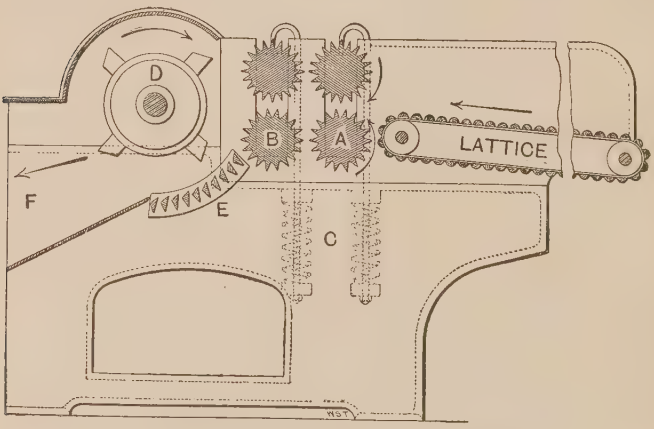


SECTION OF PEDAL BALE BREAKER.

Fig. 16.

variation from the previous one consists of substituting

for the first pair of rollers, one roller A working over a series of pedals or weighted levers B, having their fulcrum at C. It is an important alteration, for by this means the grip of the cotton is brought much closer to the roller D; consequently smaller pieces of hard cotton can be drawn or pulled partially or completely asunder. Another advantage it possesses lies in the fact that both thick and thin pieces receive their share of the pulling action of the roller D, the



SECTION OF PORCUPINE BALE BREAKER.

FIG. 17.

pedals, of course, yielding so as to permit of this. The three lines of rollers are all speeded to produce a draft. For instance, the draft between the pedal roller A and the first pairs of rollers D is about $2\frac{1}{4}$; between the first and second it is about $2\frac{1}{2}$; while between the second and third it reaches about $4\frac{1}{2}$. Their action upon the cotton is similar to that described when dealing with Fig. 15. All the classes of cotton from fair American to Sea Island can with advantage be passed through this form of machine.

"Porcupine" Bale Breaker

A machine for dealing with the poorer classes of cotton, like low American and Indian, is shown in section in Fig 17. The cotton passes from a lattice through two pairs of spiked rollers A and B. As it emerges from B it is struck by a quickly-revolving small porcupine cylinder, which breaks the hard lumps of cotton very effectively, at the same time knocking certain impurities from it, which fall through the dust bars shown. The action of this cylinder is in no way a severe one, when it is remembered that the rollers are large in diameter (5 to 6 in.), and so nothing prevents the cotton from yielding instantly to the teeth of the cylinder as it revolves.

Hopper Bale Breakers.—A large number of mills are still supplied with the bale breakers described in the previous pages, but for new mills and replacements the Hopper Bale Breaker is now almost exclusively used. Fig. 18 will convey a general idea of this machine. The apparatus is usually placed in the bale-room or mixing-room, and the bales, either of one mark or several marks, stand near the feeding end of the machine. The slabs or pieces of cotton from the bales are thrown into the hopper part, and the horizontal lattice carries it to the inclined vertical lattice. The strong spikes of this lattice either comb out tufts of cotton and convey them upwards or they take hold of blocks of the hard cotton; in either case, if too much cotton is carried upwards an evener roller, revolving in the direction shown, beats off the superfluous cotton back into the hopper and allows an even layer of cotton to go forward. This layer of cotton is, in its turn, beaten off the spikes of the lattice by another roller with leather flaps. This roller dashes the now loose cotton against a series of grate bars,

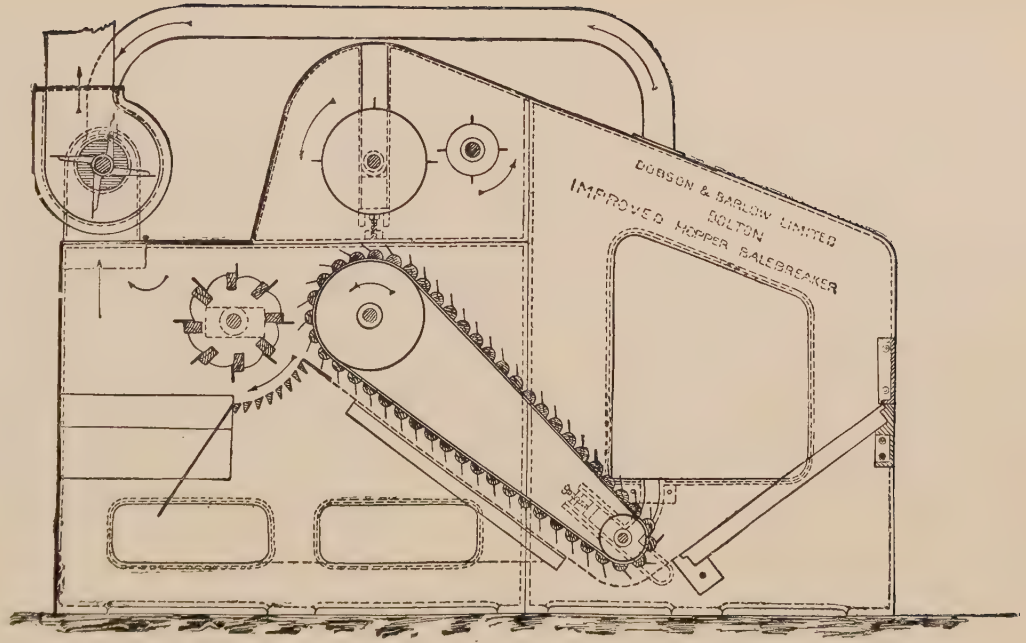

DOBSON & BARLOW LIMITED
BOLTON
IMPROVED HOPPER BALEBREAKER

FIG. 18.

through which dust and heavy dirt passes, and the clean cotton falls along an inclined plane on to the floor, or on to lattices by means of which it may be fed direct to an opener or conducted by vertical lattices to a series of horizontal lattices over the mixing bins. The agitated condition of the cotton in the machine gives rise to considerable dust, so that a fan arrangement is fitted which removes this and sends it off to the dust chamber.

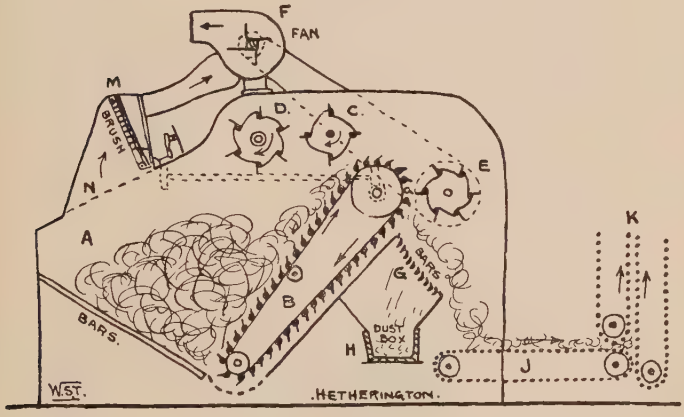


FIG. 19.

A further roller is also fitted to clear any adhering cotton from the evener roller; this clearer roller is fitted with leather flaps or wipers. Frequently the evener roller is so designed that its steel teeth can be withdrawn within the casing of the roller through the holes from which they project; this strips any cotton from the teeth, so that there is always a clean set of teeth acting on the cotton brought up by the spiked lattice. The spiked lattice has a perforated casing underneath and along its lower side, which

permits dirt and dust to fall through either on to the floor or into suitable receptacles.

All textile machine makers supply a machine similar to the one described. A few of these are shown in the rough sketches given in Figs. 19, 20, 21, and 22. It will be noticed that in Fig. 19 the dust from the hopper passes to

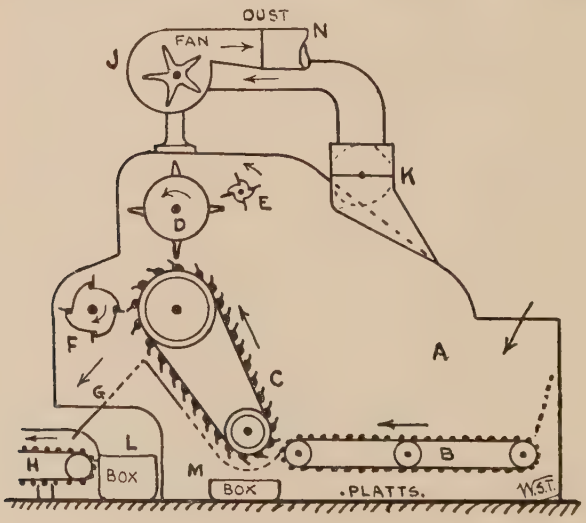


FIG. 20.

the fan through a grid at M. This grid is cleaned of adhering dust by the to and fro movement of a brush actuated through worm and worm wheel from the spiked lattice shaft.

In Fig. 20 a perforated door is provided at K, and this can be automatically or by hand turned over and the dust readily cleared off. All these hopper bale breakers are adaptable to any kind of cotton distribution. The cotton

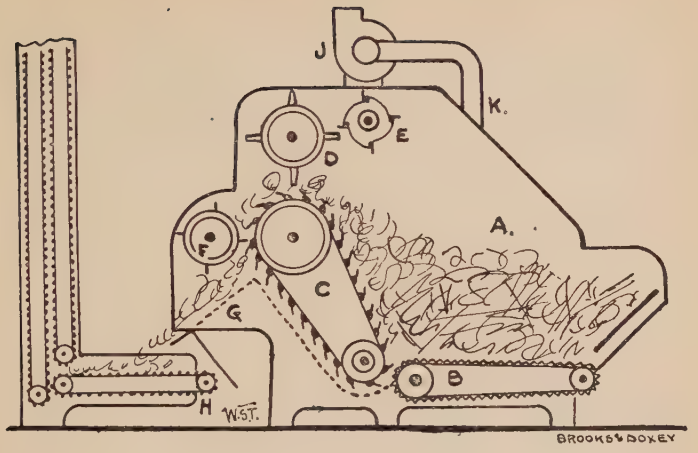


FIG. 21.

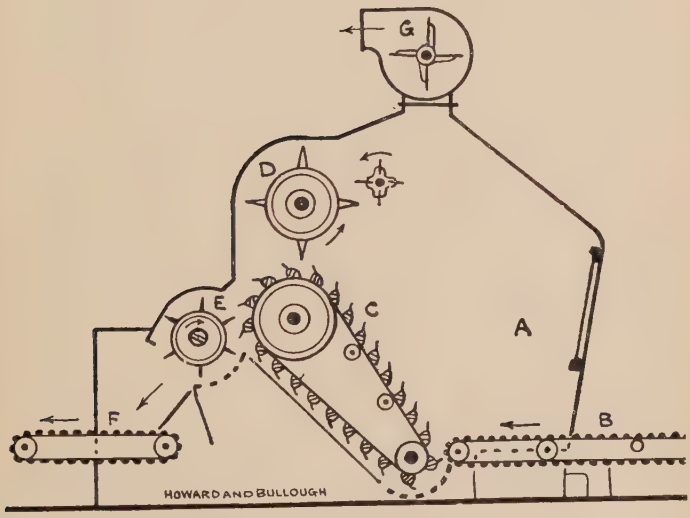


FIG. 22.

can fall direct into the tube feeding a vertical opener or horizontal exhaust opener; into a hopper feeder direct or on to lattices; on to the lattice of an opener or to vertical lattices for distribution in the mixing-room.

The advantages of hopper bale breakers may be summarised as follow :—

More even laps are produced.
More cleaning power.
Less injury to the cotton fibres.
An elimination of dust in the room.
Great saving of labour.
Great saving in cost.
A greatly improved mixing of various marks of cotton.
No handling of cotton from the bale to the opener lap.
Less wear and tear on subsequent machines.

Its production is very high. An American bale can be opened in from six to ten minutes, and 100,000 lb. and upwards may be passed through the machine in an ordinary working week.

Power required about 2 horse-power.

The utility of this machine has led to all kinds of uses and combinations with the subsequent opening machinery. This has necessitated the designing of most ingeniously arranged devices for stopping and starting any given combination of machines and the use of regulating motions so coupled up that all the machines act in unison.

Other specimens of Hopper Bale Breakers are shown in Figs. 23, 24, and 25.

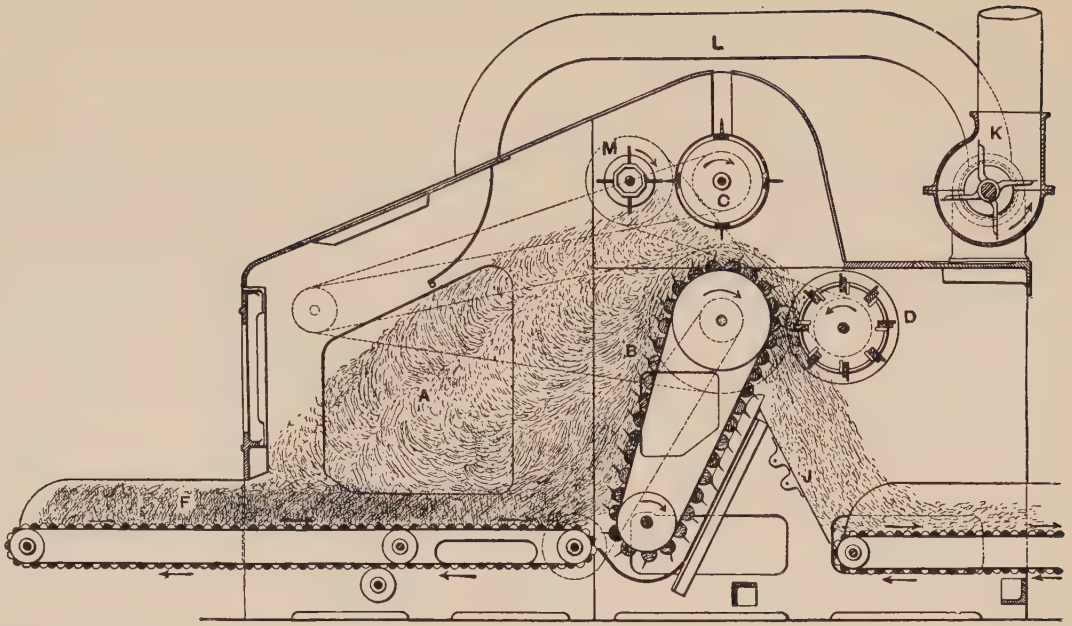


Fig. 23.

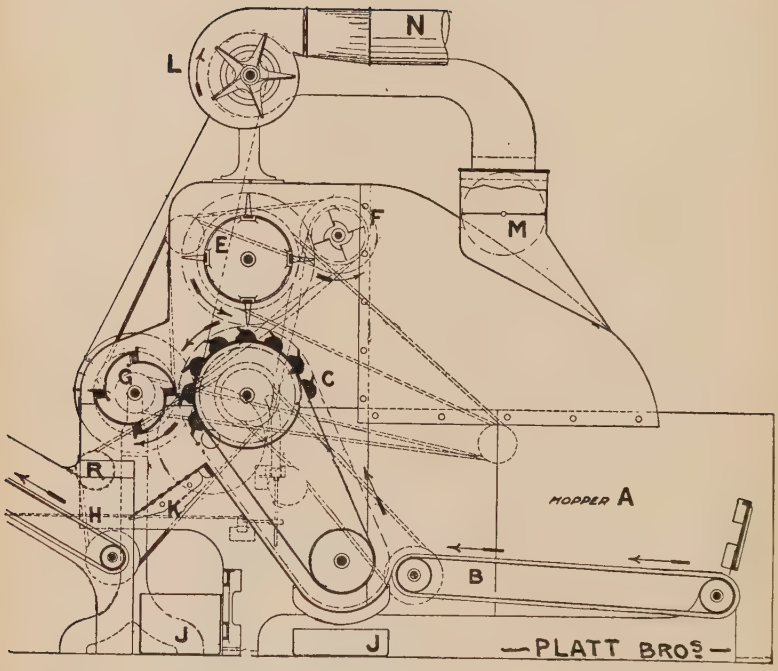


Fig. 24.

PLATT BROTHERS

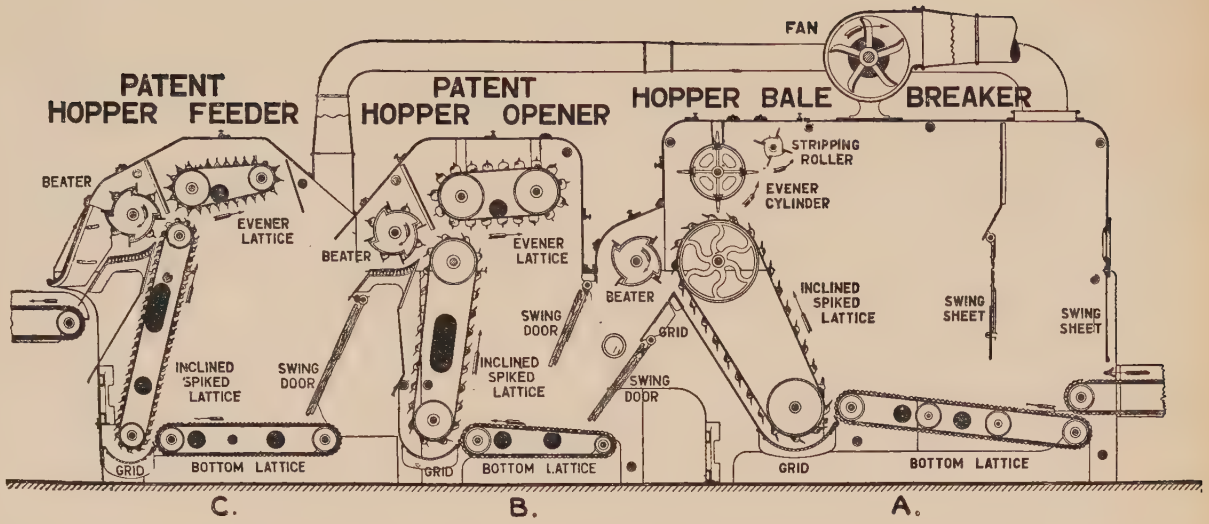


FIG. 25.

CHAPTER IV

COTTON MIXING

THE cotton from the bale having been satisfactorily broken up, it is now ready for the mixing process. This operation is one that can scarcely be over-estimated in its importance on the ultimate result of the quality of the yarn spun. The reason for this is apparent when the following causes tend to interfere with and prevent uniformity of the yarn that is spun from even only one class of cotton. Cotton from the same district, or from fields adjoining each other, varies in quality through a difference in the character of the soil in which the plants grow. It also varies in quality according to the length of time the open boll has been exposed to the sun. The length of the staple is likewise a variable quantity, as is also the colour of the cotton; though the colouring has a very slight range from a colourist's point of view, it has a rather wide one from a cotton-spinner's standpoint.

Again, the classification of cotton is a very irregular and unreliable one, so that a buyer has no guarantee that every bale is to sample. It will thus be seen that the object of mixing is to obtain as near as possible uniformity in length of staple, uniformity in quality of staple, and uniformity in colour. To attain even partial success in arriving at these results, it is absolutely necessary to have a wide experience and good judgment. Nothing, therefore, will be said here about the quantities or qualities of the mixed cotton, our object being to give a description of the mechanical means employed to carry out

the mixing in as efficient and economical a manner as possible.

In order to give a clear idea of the operation, a diagram (Fig. 26) is shown. Cotton from one, two, or more

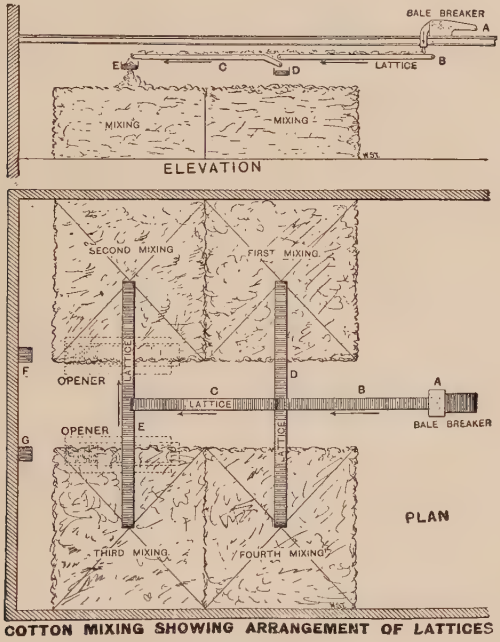


FIG. 26.

different bales (a portion from each alternately, according to the mixture required) is passed through the bale breaker A. As it comes from the machine it falls down a short trunk upon a travelling lattice B, near to the ceiling in the room below. This lattice is one of a series B, C, D, E, which are so arranged that the cotton can be taken as required to any one of the four mixing stacks or bins

shown in the plan. In the sketch the cotton is being taken along in the direction of the arrows by the lattices B and C. From C it falls on the cross lattice E, which, travelling in the direction of the arrow, carries it to the second mixing stack. Here it is spread about over a certain area—the larger the better. If any other mixing is required—for instance, the third—the lattice E is simply reversed in direction. When the first or fourth mixing is being made, the lattice C is reversed in its movement, so that the cotton passing down between the juncture of B and C falls upon the lattice D. This lattice takes the cotton to whichever of the two mixings is required.

When the cotton comes to be removed from the stacks and passed on to the opener, a commencement is made at the top, and by working downwards to the floor for about a yard in width a greater chance of regularity of the mixing is obtained, for it enables a little of every layer in the stack to be passed through the opener in a short time. The openers in our illustration are shown dotted, being in the room below. So in this case the cotton is put down the trunks F and G, which, passing through the floor, carry it direct to the hopper feeder, or place it within easy reach of the person feeding the openers.

From what has been said it can be seen that lattice arrangements may be made suitable for almost any conditions of mixings and relative positions of the rooms in which the operations take place. For instance, any of the hopper bale breakers illustrated, instead of being in the room above, might be placed in the same room, or in a room on the same level. A plan and elevation of such an arrangement is shown in the small sketch, Fig. 27, the passage of the cotton from the bale to the scutchers being easily followed by the consecutive lettering. The double

lattice C is quite a common arrangement for elevating the cotton, and a reference to some of the hopper bale

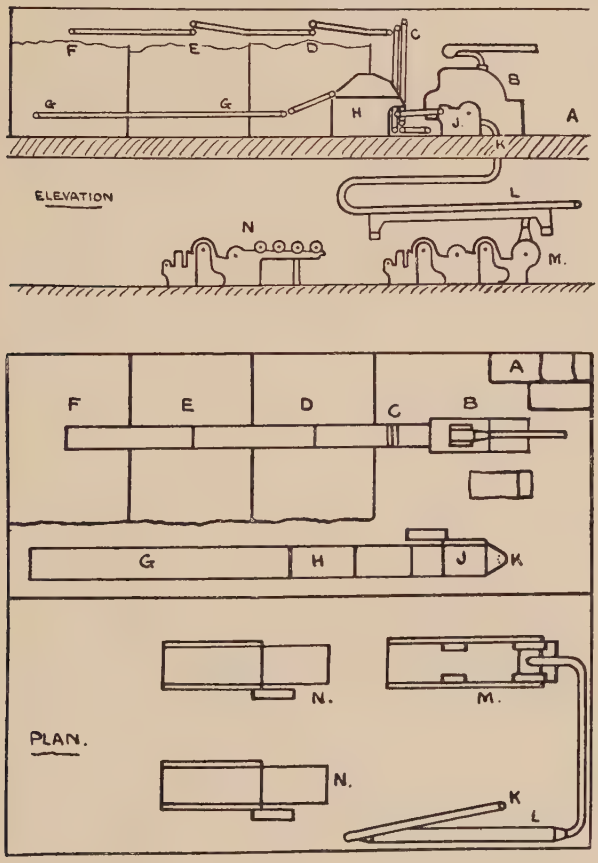


FIG. 27.

breakers will show clearly the connection. It is advisable when making a mixing of cotton, either of one or

more grades or classes that require thorough mixing in this manner according to the opinion or experience of the manager, to have it as large as possible, one that will last several weeks being preferable to one that is worked up within a short time; for if a large order for a certain quality of yarn is being executed, a decided risk is run, for the reason already given, in mixing only a small quantity at a time. In the opinion of many the cotton is all the better for standing in the stack a short time, as by this means the air can circulate through it and render it far softer and more supple than it would otherwise be.

There is a strong tendency to modify our ideas of the utility of mixing as represented by huge blocks of cotton lying in a mixing-room. This has led to the logical conclusion that "mixings," in many circumstances, have no advantages to warrant their formation, and

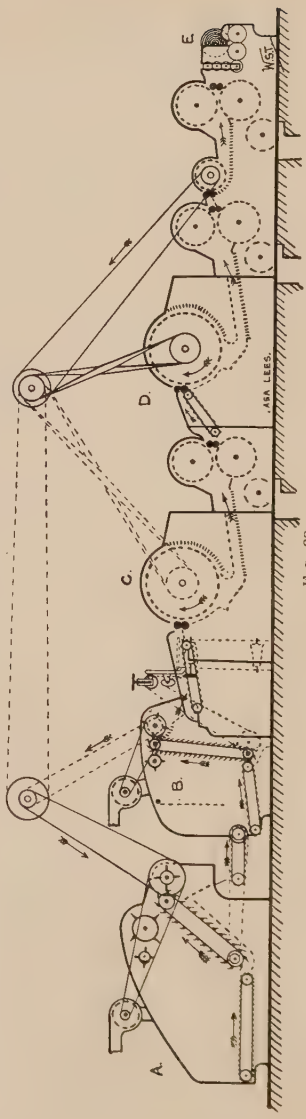


FIG. 28.

that the cotton from the bales can be far more effectively mixed whilst being opened and cleaned. Methods of dis-

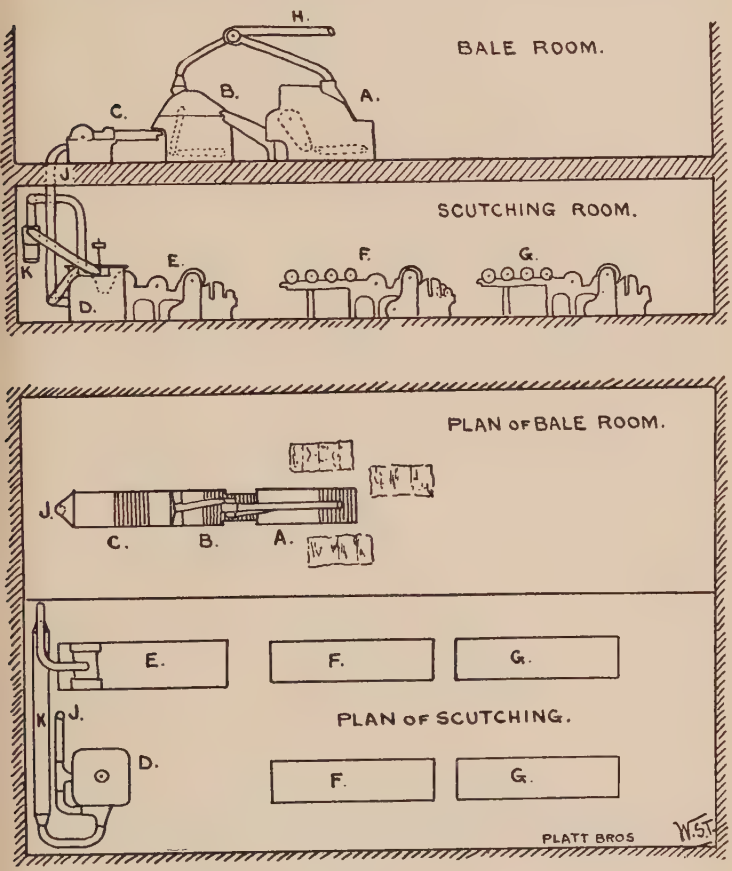


Fig. 29.

pensing with a mixing stack are shown in Figs. 28, 29, and 30. Fig. 28 illustrates an interesting type of this arrangement,

and it is quite clearly seen that a most effective combination of the various marks of cotton must occur in passing through from the hopper bale breaker A to the opener lap E. Fig. 29 still further illustrates the efficiency of this method of ignoring the mixing-bin system. Here the bales

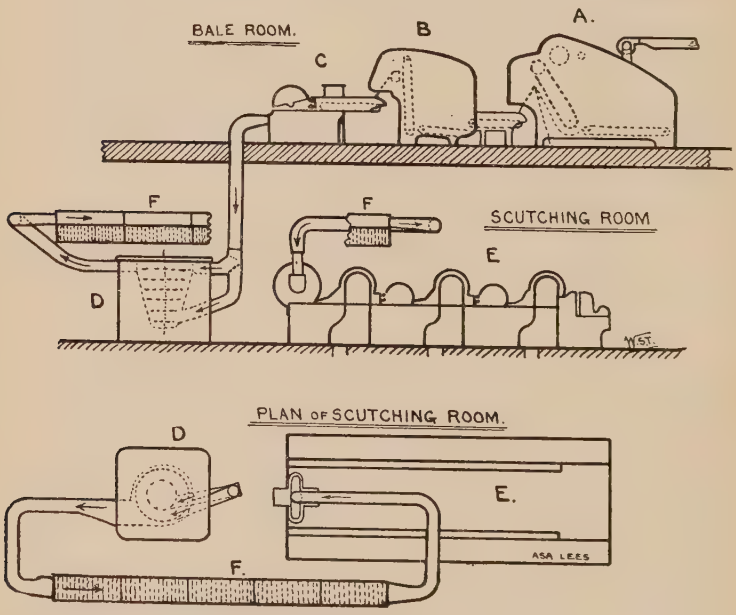


FIG. 30.

are fed into the hopper bale breaker, through a hopper feeder, further opened out in passing through a small porcupine opener, and then through tubes to a vertical opener in the floor below. From this vertical opener the cotton is drawn through tubes to an exhaust opener, and here it is formed into laps and passed to the scutcher. The mixing is thorough; the opening is all that could be desired, with

a minimum of harsh treatment; and the cleaning and extraction of dust, dirt, etc., is ideal. Fig. 30 represents a somewhat similar arrangement.

An enlarged drawing of the two hopper machines in Fig. 29 is given in Fig. 31, and a further example of where three hopper machines are used may be quoted (see Fig. 25). The underlying idea in using these repeated hopper processes is not simply cleaning, but it is considered that a gradual opening of the cotton is much better than the sudden shock of opening lumpy cotton which occurs when cotton is passed to an opener in an unprepared state. In its opened condition the beating organs of the opener have a much better opportunity of driving the impurities out.

It cannot be too strongly emphasised that the two processes of opening and cleaning of cotton are distinct processes. In some machines the processes are practically simultaneously in operation, but it must be borne clearly in mind that cotton cannot be cleaned or its impurities eliminated unless the cotton is first opened. The more perfectly the cotton is opened the more easily can the impurities be driven out with a minimum of beating. In the majority of cases it would be of great advantage if an opening process were devised without any consideration being given to cleaning. This cotton could then be passed through some type of beating machine that would simply shake out the impurities, and which therefore would not require the clumsy and severe action to which cotton is now usually subjected in our openers and scutchers.

Pneumatic Delivery of Cotton.—Currents of air for the carrying of cotton from one point to another either between two machines or from one part of a machine to another,

PLATT BROTHERS

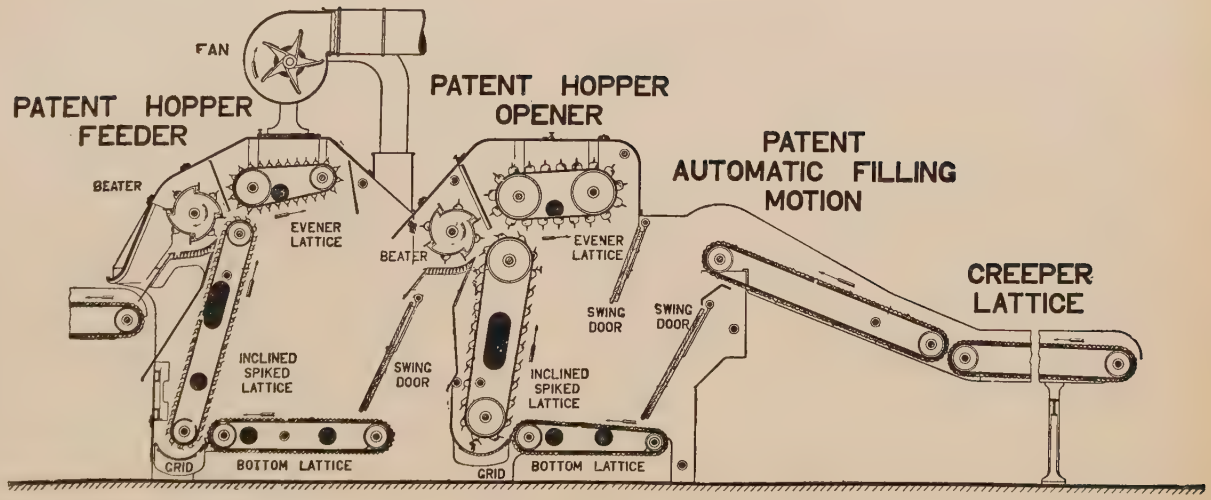


FIG. 31.

and also in carrying away dust, etc., are well-known methods. The system has been considerably enlarged in its scope during recent times, and an example of this pneumatic method is given in Figs. 32, 33, 34, and 35.

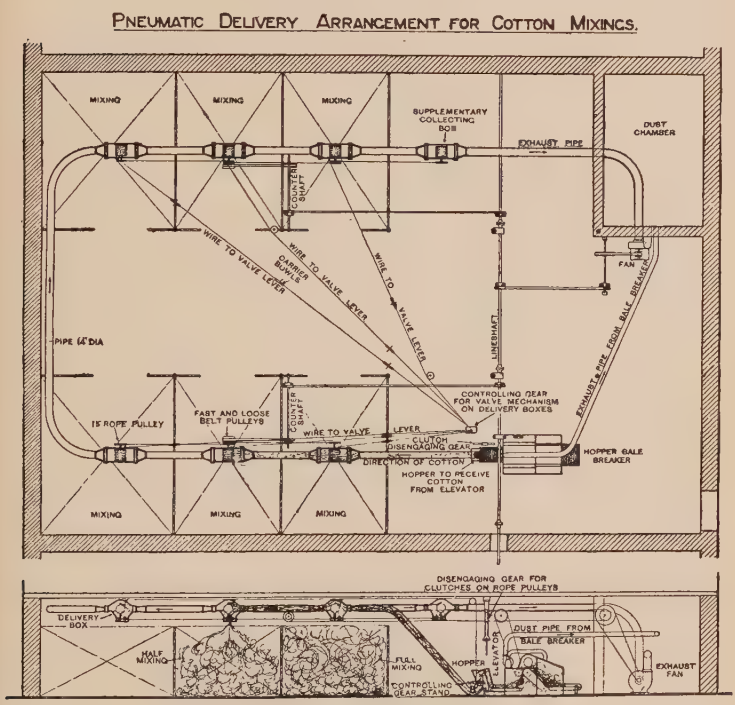


FIG. 32.

A view is given in Fig. 32 of a mixing room with several mixing bins and a Hopper Bale Breaker. Instead of the usual distributing lattices the cotton is conveyed along pipes, which pass over the centre of each bin, and

through which a current of air is drawn by an exhaust fan. The drawing indicates these points very clearly. In order to deposit the cotton in any particular bin an ingenious arrangement is adopted by a species of valve box, an enlarged section of which is given in Fig. 33. We will suppose for a moment that the first bin is to be filled from the Hopper Bale Breaker. The cotton is drawn along the

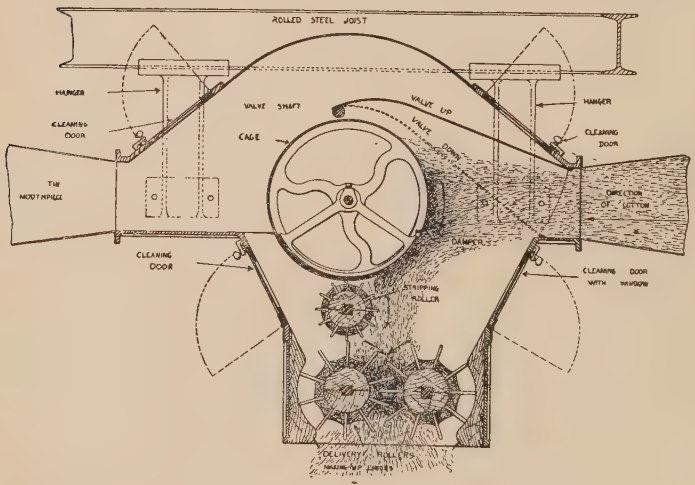


FIG. 33.

trunk as shown and enters the valve box, where it impinges on to the surface of a revolving perforated cage. The dust is free to pass through the cage and subsequent length of piping, but the cotton itself is conveyed round and stripped from the cage by a stripping roller, from which point it falls within the action of two spiked delivery rollers, which deposit it on to the mixing stack in the bin.

If the cotton were required for the second mixing bin, then it must be able to pass without entering the first bin.

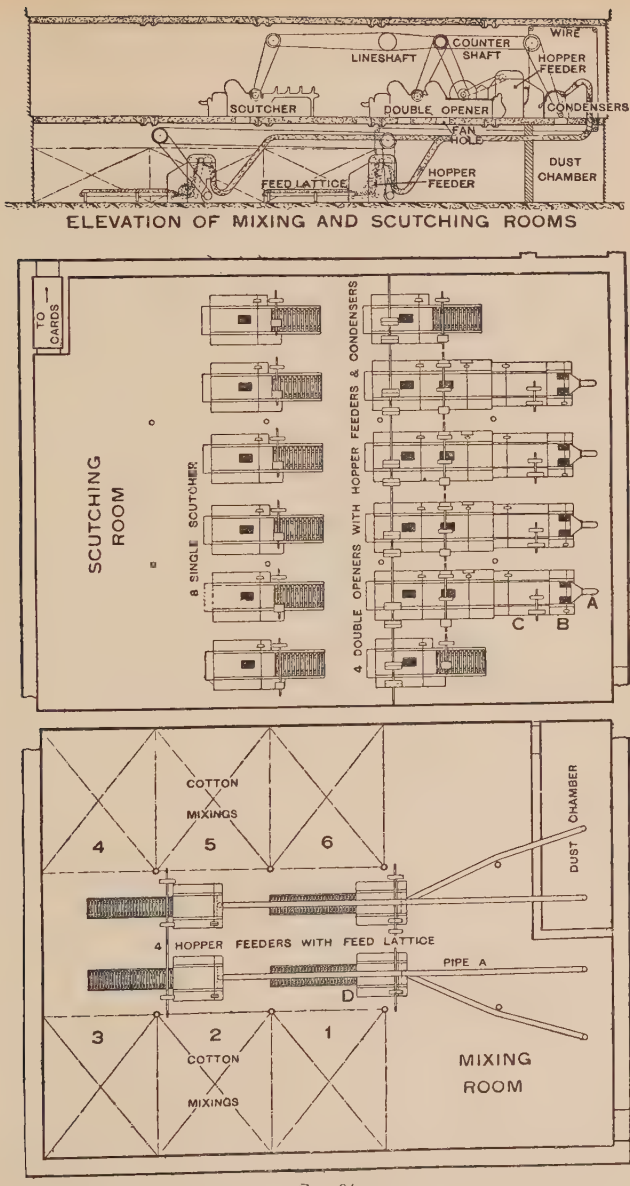

WIRE
LINESHAFT
COUNTER SHAFT
HOPPER FEEDER
SCUTCHER
DOUBLE OPENER
CONDENSERS
FAN HOLE
DUST CHAMBER
FEED LATTICE
HOPPER FEEDER
ELEVATION OF MIXING AND SCUTCHING ROOMS
TO CARDS
SCUTCHING ROOM
8 SINGLE SCUTCHER
4 DOUBLE OPENERS WITH HOPPER FEEDERS & CONDENSERS
A
B
C
COTTON MIXINGS
4
5
6
DUST CHAMBER
4 HOPPER FEEDERS WITH FEED LATTICE
PIPE A
D
3
2
1
COTTON MIXINGS
MIXING ROOM

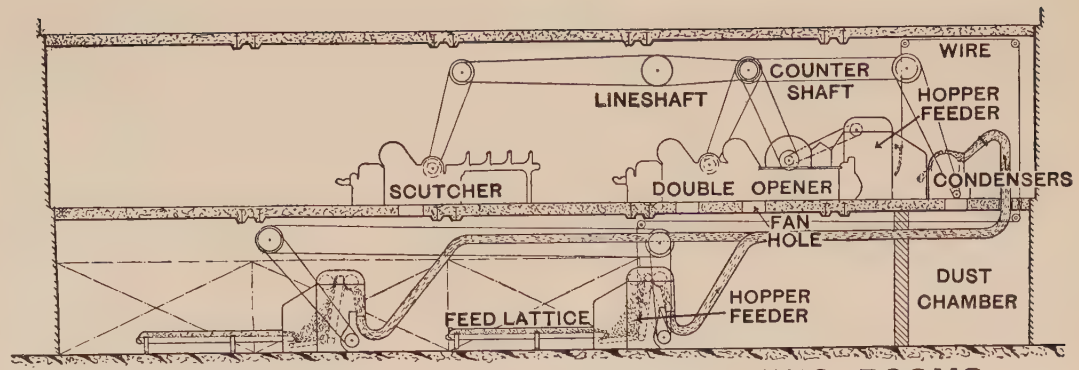
FIG. 34.

This is effected by closing a valve, which prevents cotton reaching the cage, so the air-current carries it over the top of the cage and on to a continuation of the pipe to the left of Fig. 33. By the use of this valve the cotton can be directed into any given bin, and in doing so miss the intermediate bins. The drawings show how each valve box can be perfectly controlled by wire from a central point near the Hopper Bale Breaker.

Fig. 34 illustrates the method carried a step further. In the mixing room, which is here shown under the blowing room, are four Hopper Feeders, and these are fed from the mixing stacks as required. From each Hopper Feeder is a pipe through which the cotton is drawn by a cage and fan arrangement, called a condenser, in the blowing room above. There is a cage or condenser for each opener, so that all the Hopper Feeders and openers can be worked at the same time. This cage or condenser delivers the cotton into a Hopper Feeder attached to the opener, from which point the material passes forward in the usual way to the lap end and the scutchers.

An enlarged view of the elevation of the mixing and scutching rooms shown in the upper portion of Fig. 34, is given in Fig. 35, which explains very clearly the path of the cotton from mixing to opener. This system illustrated in Fig. 34 is quite equally applicable to cases where no mixing is performed, for the bales could be fed direct on to the Hopper Bale Breakers in the mixing room.

The drawings indicate sufficiently the great economic value of the system, and suggest the practical elimination of dust, etc., in the mixing and blowing room, and the advantages that must accrue from a health point of view.



ELEVATION OF MIXING AND SCUTCHING ROOMS

FIG. 35.

A modification of Fig. 33, page 84, is given in Fig. 36. On comparing the two drawings it will be noted that the newer arrangement has been simplified and only one stripping brush is now used.

It may be pointed out that the use of a perforated cage for drawing cotton along passages or for the collection of waste is becoming more common, and the patent records

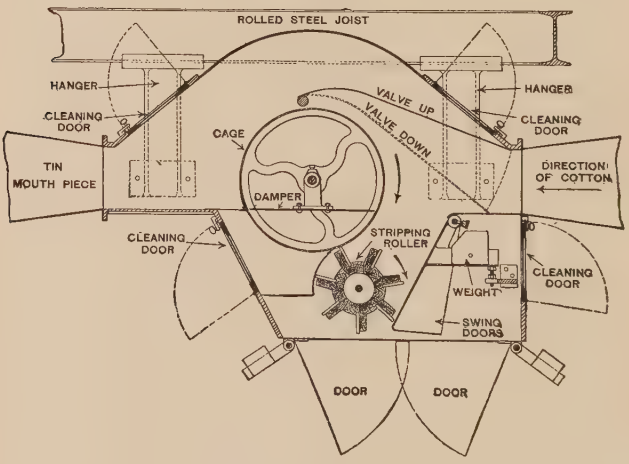


FIG. 36.

contain very many cases where this is done. Its modern application to the comber as a waste collector and its use in drawing cotton from the vertical conical or other opener, along dust trunks, are notable examples. This latter method has the additional advantage of eliminating that imperfect and clumsy machine usually known as the exhaust opener.

As its usefulness becomes more fully recognised there is no doubt that the method will develop into an important

element in cotton mills for the carrying of cotton and collecting of the waste.

Hopper Feeders

The cotton being now in a condition ready for the opening and cleaning process, we are in a position to inquire into the principles that underlie this operation. To do this we must go back to the cotton fields, and there we shall find that fine sand is blown about in all directions over the cotton-growing districts. It enters the open bolls of cotton, and forms an impurity which it is necessary to remove. Again, in gathering the cotton the boll is plucked quickly (by young children as a rule) from the plant, and comparatively speaking large quantities of portions of the dead leaves, stalks, and husks are taken away with it. In the ginning process, also, we have seen that a quantity of broken seeds, and their husks, are almost inevitable as a result of that operation. All these substances are foreign to the cotton, and render it practically useless to the manufacturer until they are removed. The trouble caused by their presence is moreover greatly intensified, as we have seen, by the unusual degree of compression the cotton undergoes for the purpose of transport.

This general idea of the condition of the cotton will serve to show us the necessity of opening and cleaning; and it will also enable us to understand more clearly the reason for the various mechanical methods used to get rid of the impurities, the motive underlying whatever means are adopted being that of isolating or separating as nearly as possible every individual fibre, so that the foreign matter will fall away, either freely or under the influence of centri-

fugal force. Taking into consideration the delicate nature of the individual fibre, we see the necessity of attaining the above results gradually. The bale breaker plays an important part in breaking up and softening the hard cakes from the bale, but it leaves the cotton in very irregular masses, and when fed to an opening machine its distribution on the lattice, to any degree of regularity, would depend upon the care and judgment of an attendant. It is not surprising to find that this factor, as well as its accompanying expense, was the primary cause of the introduction of the hopper feeder—a machine which to a very large extent dispensed with both. It is not only on this account that the utility of the hopper feeder has been recognised, for improvements which have been made since its introduction have enabled it to act not only as a feeder and as a direct regulator, to a degree of fineness that would be absolutely impossible with the best hand-feeding, but also to a certain extent as an opener, thus continuing the work of the bale breaker, and presenting the cotton to the opener in such a condition that the possibilities of damage to the fibre in passing through that machine are reduced to a minimum.

A typical section of the hopper feeder is shown in Fig. 37. At A we have the trunk connected with the mixing-room, and down which the cotton is thrown. Passing through the trunk in the direction of the arrow, it enters the chamber B, where a travelling horizontal lattice C carries it forward until it comes into contact with an almost vertically spiked travelling lattice D. The inclined spikes of this lattice enter the cotton, and carry it upwards past the evener roller E. The object of this roller is to prevent any superfluous cotton passing forward. This is effected by revolving the roller at a quick rate, so that a

continuous series of blows are given by strips of iron fixed

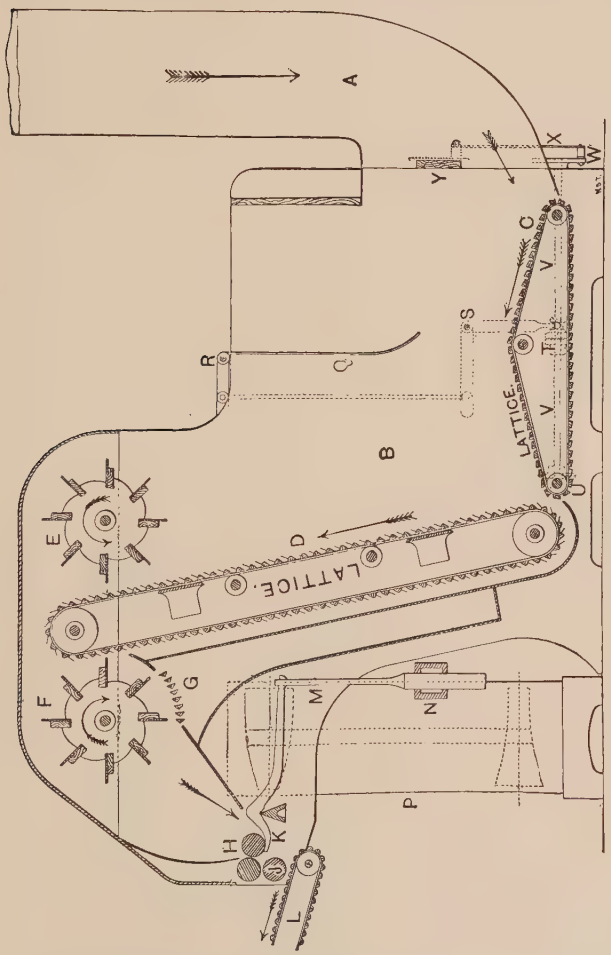


FIG. 37.

on its circumference. The striking edges of the strips are made with V-formed serrations, rounded top and bottom.

The surplus cotton is by this means thrown back into the chamber B. The cotton, which is left evenly distributed on the spikes passing over the top, is next acted upon by a stripper roller F, which clears the cotton from the spikes of the lattice, and in doing so throws it against a series of grate-bars G, through which any loose dirt will fall. The cotton is now directed to the pedal roller H, and passes forward between it and a number of pedals K, which serve the purpose of regulating the amount of cotton delivered. For instance, if too much is going through, the pedals are depressed, and by their connection with a cone-drum driving arrangement cause the roller H to revolve at a slower rate. If too little is going through, the roller is automatically speeded. We can now appreciate the advantages the hopper feeder possesses, especially when we realise that the cotton as it is delivered by the rollers J has been doubly regulated—first, through the spiked lattice being charged with cotton as it passes through the partially-filled chamber B, the surplus cotton being removed by the roller E; and, secondly, by the purely regulating arrangement at H and K.

So far as our description has gone we have presumed that the chamber B is kept from about half to three-quarters full of cotton. As this depends upon an attendant, who is liable to allow it to contain either too little or too much, a device has been arranged to keep the cotton in the chamber at a constant level (within narrow limits). To effect this, three or four feeler bars Q hang inside the chamber from a rod R. A lever on the rod is connected by other levers to a catch box T on the shaft V. As the chamber fills, the pressure of cotton forces the bars Q backwards, and these, acting through the levers, put the catch box T out of gear just at the moment when a crank

W on the end of the shaft V has lowered a vibrating trunk door Y so as to stop the entrance for the cotton. This door Y remains closed until the bars Q are permitted to fall by gravity into their normal position. This, of course,

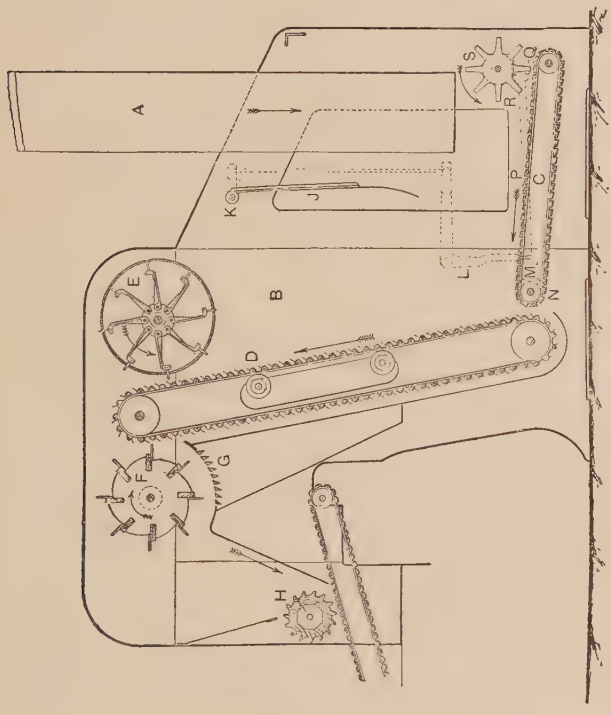


FIG. 38.

puts the clutch box into gear again, and the door Y opens, thus allowing more cotton to enter.

Fig. 38 shows an adaptation of this form of automatic feed to the same type of machine. Instead of the opening and closing of a door, a spiked roller is used. The feeding trunk enters the hopper, and at its lower end is placed a

spiked feed roller which effectually prevents cotton entering so long as it is stationary; when, however, the cotton in the space B falls below a certain quantity, the pressure is taken from the swing bars or door J, and so permits a weighted lever to move them a little on one side. This movement acts upon the lever L, which puts into gear the catch box M and so starts the regulating roller which begins to feed the cotton. The roller continues to feed cotton to the lattice P until sufficient has entered the space B to press the swing bars J backwards; this action puts the catch box M out of gear and the feed roller stops.

Another form of spiked feed roller is shown in Fig. 39. Here we see that the cotton falls down the feed trunk and is stopped by a spiked roller A, which blocks up the trunk, whilst it is not revolving, so that no cotton can enter the hopper. A large wheel B, fixed on the end of the roller A, is driven through a smaller wheel C and a chain wheel E from the equalising lattice M. In connection with the wheel C is a disc plate D containing slots into which corresponding projections on the chain wheel E can be inserted; when this occurs, all the parts C, D, and E revolve together and so give motion to the spiked roller A. In order to regulate the supply, the volume of cotton rests upon a plate J centred on the small shaft as shown. A counter-balance H is so arranged that when the amount of cotton pressing on J falls below a certain amount, it acts through a connection at G upon the lever F, whose upper end contains a fork working in a recess on the boss of the chain wheel E. This has the immediate effect of moving F forward and so putting its projections into gear with the recesses on the disc D; motion is thus given to the spiked roller and fresh cotton is supplied to make

up the deficiency in the hopper. As the cotton fills the space in the hopper, its weight depresses the plate J until it reaches a point when the balance lever acts upon the fork F and separates E from D and so stops the feed. Cotton cannot now enter until the hopper again becomes almost empty.

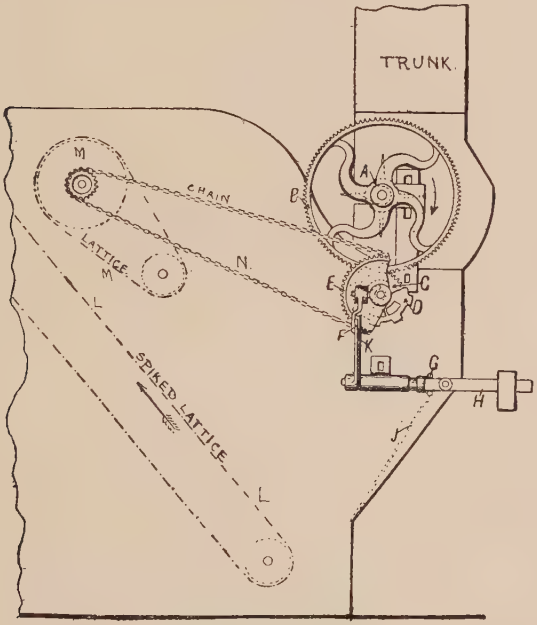


FIG. 39.

Arrangements are made whereby the weight of cotton pressing on the roller A is prevented from causing any rotation, a stop catch K acted upon also by the weighted lever H being supplied for that purpose. Lattice feeders to the hoppers are also automatically stopped in a similar manner.

Sections of well-known hoppers are shown in Figs. 40

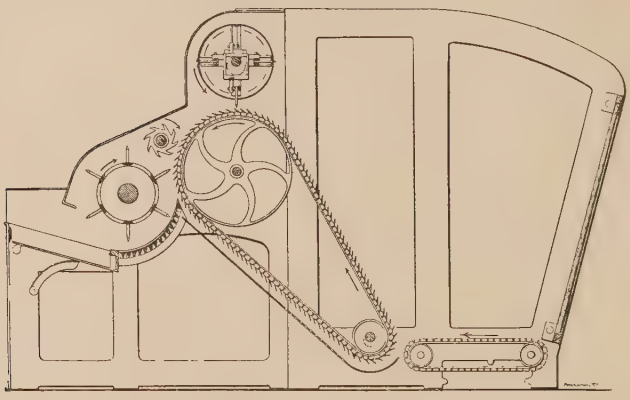


FIG. 40.

and 41.[1] One of these (Fig. 40) is arranged to deliver the

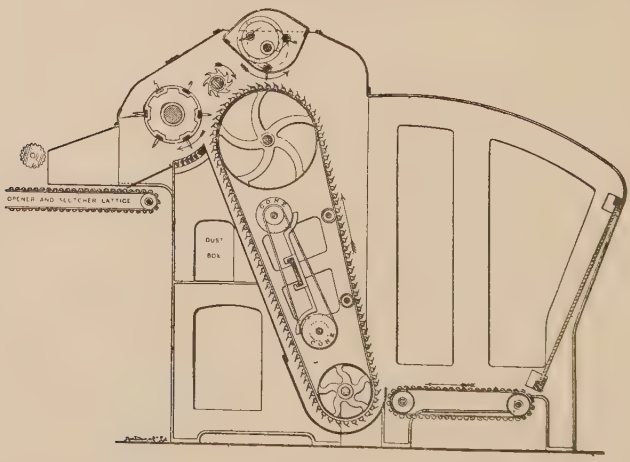


FIG. 41.

cotton to a trunk, whilst Fig. 41 passes it on to a lattice

[1] Howard and Bullough have discarded the stripping roller shown in Fig. 41 and use only the arrangement shown in Fig. 40.

which may be an opener lattice or the lattice of a small porcupine opener. It will be noticed that the evener roller in each figure is self-clearing and each is different; both are interesting examples and sufficiently clear not to require description. A great variety of details in hopper feeders are to be found in the various makes. For instance, Fig. 39 shows the use of a small lattice acting as an evener roller. Fig. 44 illustrates this feature also. Fig. 43 also illustrates the application of the small porcupine opener to the hopper feeder. The delivery side of the hopper can in all cases, when necessary, have a regulating motion applied and the delivery rollers controlled by cone drums, some of the illustrations show this feature. The position, number, and sizes of clearer rollers vary considerably; the sketches will give some idea of these factors. Fans are sometimes used to draw off the dust, etc., as in the hopper bale breaker.

Several drawings have already been given showing the connection of the hopper feeder to the subsequent machinery. See Figs. 28, 29, 30, etc. In Fig. 42 the elevation and plan of a straightforward arrangement is shown. There is a tendency to use the hopper feeder in positions where its usefulness is very doubtful. A glance at some of the illustrations will draw attention to this fact. In general terms, we may say that the hopper cleans the cotton and opens it, but its most valuable feature is the equalising effect in feeding the cotton to the opener and enabling more level and equal laps to be produced. Now, no doubt the hopper will have a strong tendency to deliver equal quantities of cotton, and it will do this as a level sheet on to the lattice of an opener or as equal masses through a trunk to a vertical opener or exhaust opener. In the case of delivery on a lattice there will be an equality both in

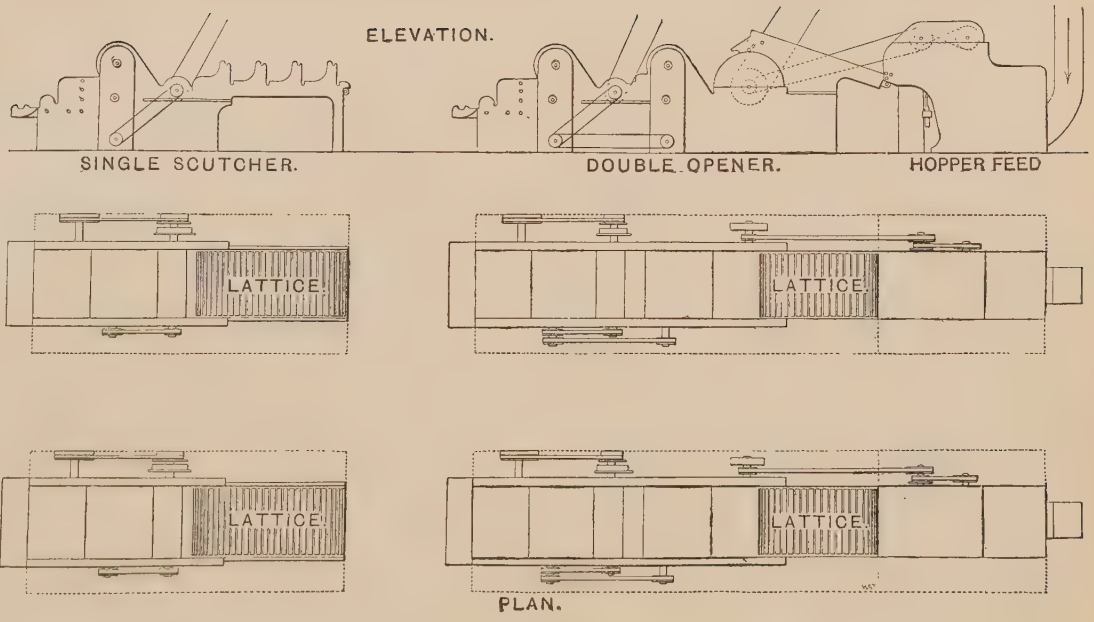

ELEVATION.
SINGLE SCUTCHER.
DOUBLE OPENER.
HOPPER FEED
LATTICE.
LATTICE.
LATTICE.
LATTICE.
PLAN.

FIG. 42.

width as well as in length; and the equality in width is vitally important for carding, for the more equal the lap is across the card, the better and more equal the carding and the resulting sliver. But if this equality of width is destroyed by sending the cotton through a trunk, and still

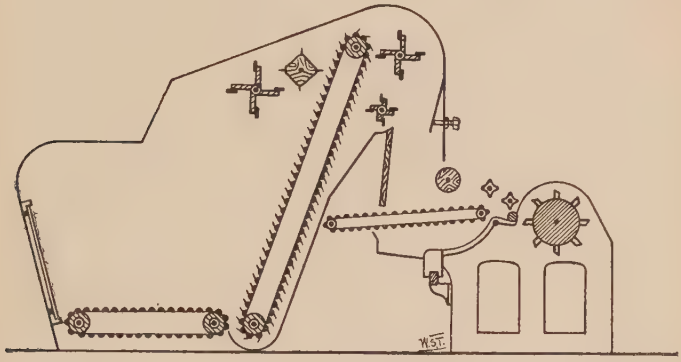


FIG. 43.

further destroyed by passing the cotton through a vertical opener or exhaust opener, we may obtain equal laps length for length, but there will be great irregularity across the width, and therefore one of the hopper feeder's most valuable features is neutralised. In many cases the hopper feeder is undoubtedly placed in the wrong position.

The Hopper Feeder illustrated in Figs. 25 and 31 is given in more detail in Fig. 44, where it is used by itself as a feeder. The driving of the feeding lattice is shown, and the method of stopping and starting the feed as the amount of cotton in the hopper requires it. Other types will be noted in the drawings illustrating the Openers, to which they are shown attached as feeders.

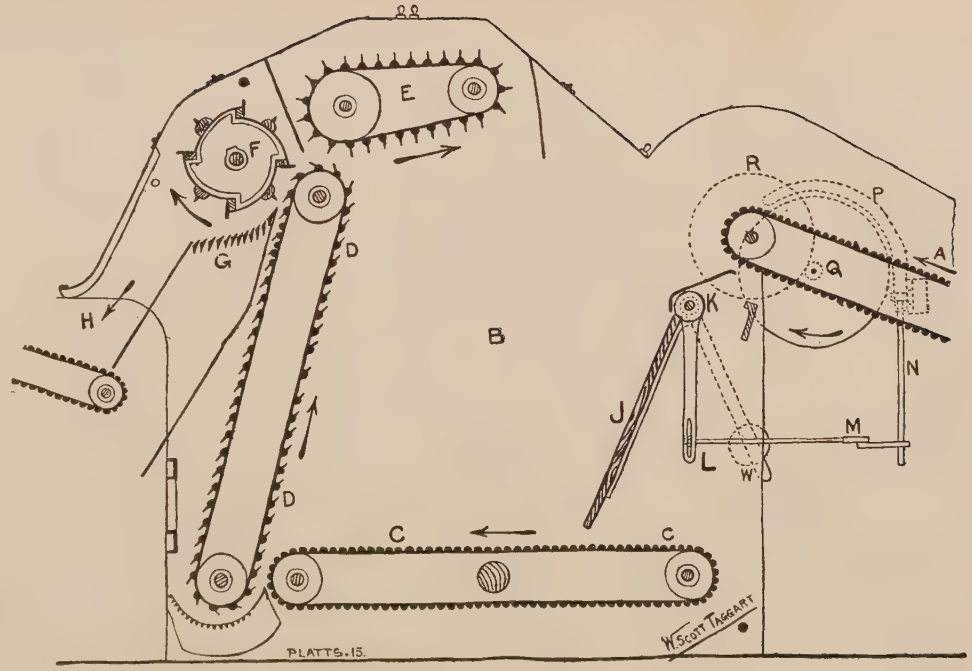


FIG. 44.

CHAPTER V.

OPENERS AND SCUTCHERS

We now come to a class of machines known under the general name of Openers. The machines previously described, although they open the cotton, do so in a preparatory sense only, and act chiefly as assistants to the machines about to be described.

Openers receive their name principally from the fact that they open the cotton sufficiently to extract from it the great bulk of the impurities it contains. The more delicate operation of continuing the opening process to an almost complete separation of the individual fibres is left to a future process, which will be noticed subsequently. It has already been mentioned that various mechanical methods have been adopted to attain this result; so, in order to enable a thorough grasp of the subject to be obtained, several of the chief types of modern opening machines will be illustrated and described.

Small Porcupine Opener or Lattice Feeding Machine.— This machine is extensively used as a preliminary opening and feeding machine to other openers. Cotton from the mixing bins is frequently passed through it, and it is often attached either directly or by lattice to the hopper bale breaker or the hopper feeder. It is a small machine compared to other openers. A section of a machine is given in Fig. 45. Cotton is fed on to the lattice and passes between the two lines of rollers A and B. From here it is struck by the beater C. The

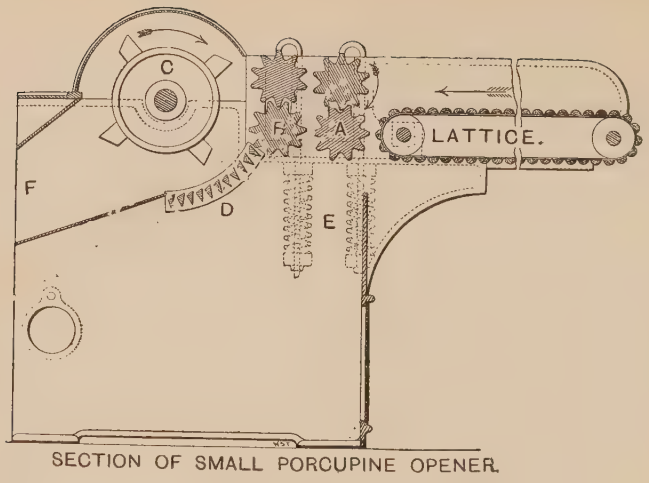

C
B
A
LATTICE.
F
D
E
SECTION OF SMALL PORCUPINE OPENER.

FIG. 45.

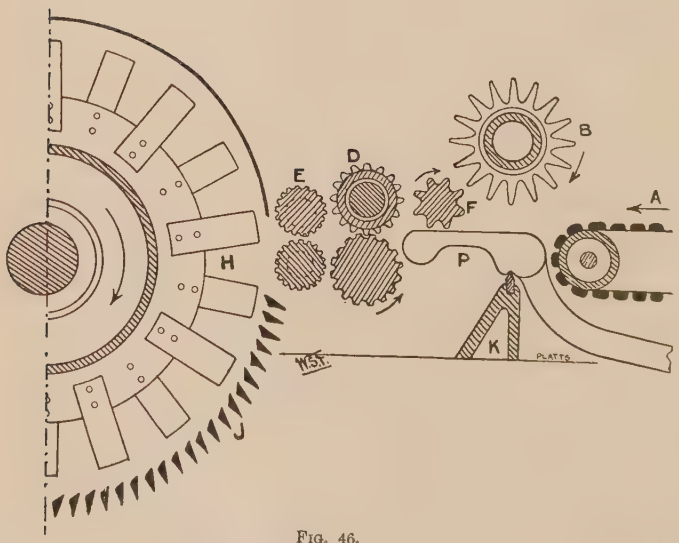

B
E
D
F
A
H
P
K
PLATTS

FIG. 46.

opened cotton passes over the grids D to the passage or outlet F to the opener. Currents of air generated by a fan in the opener carry the cotton forward. The bars at D permit the dirt and impurities to be driven through them. Owing to the excellent opening and cleaning effect of the porcupine type of beater, this machine has had some attention paid to it; and as shown in Fig. 46 the beater is composed of a large number of steel blades. A pedal motion is also applied as at P, and more care is now shown in the design and setting of the grid bars J.

So long as the crude methods of bale opening existed, the machine as shown in Fig. 45 was sufficient to deal with very lumpy cotton, but the improved opening effect of the hopper bale opening machines presented opportunities for greatly improving the action of the small porcupine, hence the kind of refinements indicated in Fig. 46.

Several subsequent illustrations will show its application to openers, and the one given in Fig. 47 is typical of the machine being fed by a hopper machine and acting as a feeder to the Crighton opener. In order to eliminate as much dust and dirt as possible, the grid bars are extended to a maximum extent around the beater as at H, and a specially curved trunk is used to convey the opened cotton to the Crighton opener.

The Vertical Beater Opener.—The essential feature of this machine is a vertical conical beater (Fig. 48), consisting of seven sheet-steel discs, round the circumference of which are riveted a number of knife blades. The discs vary in diameter, and are threaded on to a vertical shaft, the smallest one (14 in. diameter) being at the bottom. From

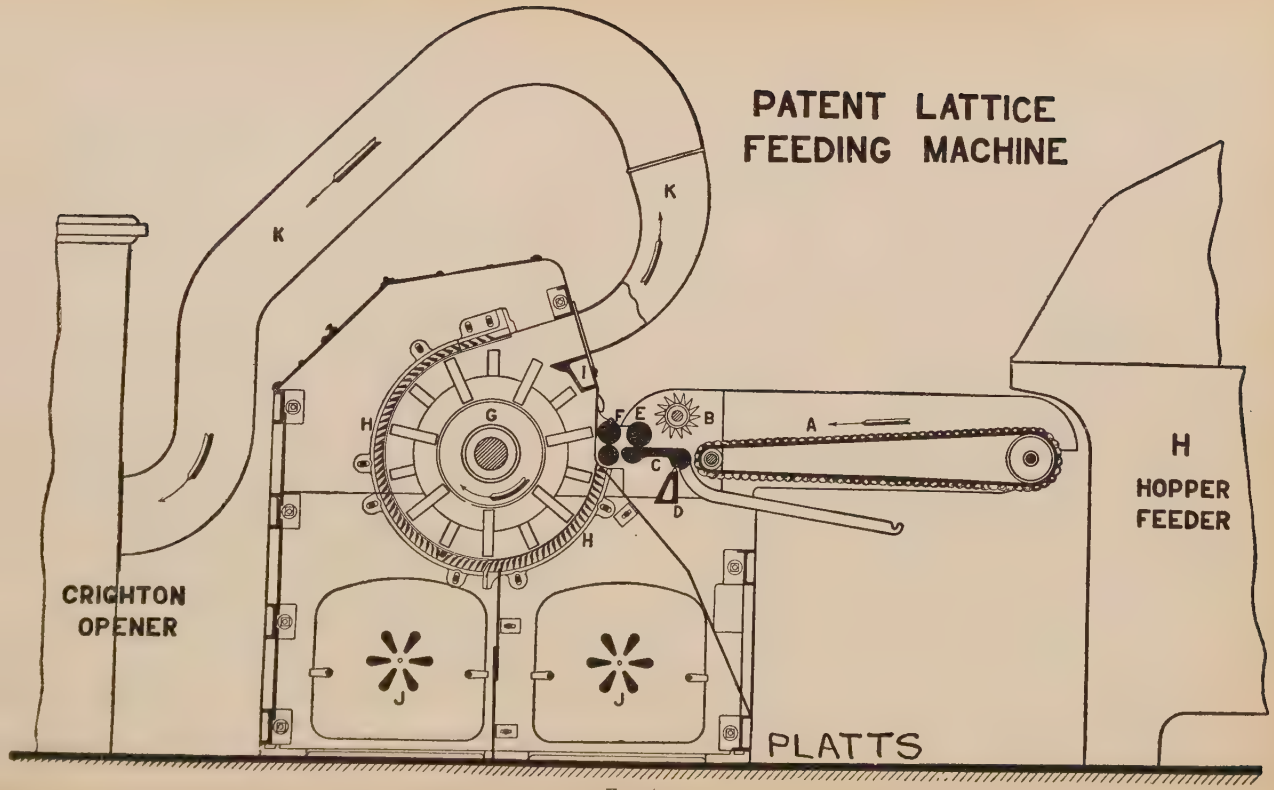

PATENT LATTICE
FEEDING MACHINE
K
K
I
H
G
F
E
B
A
C
D
H
H
HOPPER
FEEDER
CRIGHTON
OPENER
J
J
PLATTS

Fig. 47.

this they gradually increase in diameter to the top (28 in. diameter). The whole of the discs are firmly fastened in position by keys and by the nuts screwed on the shaft, and shown near the top disc on the drawing. It will be noticed that the knife blades do not all stand out from the disc in the same plane, they are bent out of the straight at different angles, the reason for which will be apparent as we trace the cotton in its passage through the machine.

There are several ways of feeding the cotton to the opener. For instance, it can be simply placed in a funnel-shaped entrance in any one of the three sides of the machine. A short trunk would then convey it to the lower part of the beater. Or a trunk from the room above can be connected with the funnel, and the cotton fed to the beater in this way. The best method, however, to feed, is to first pass the cotton through a small porcupine opener, which may be connected direct to the vertical opener, as shown in Fig. 48, or the connection of the small machine may be by means of a trunk or lattice. An enlarged sectional view of the small porcupine opener is given in Fig. 47. It differs in several details from a similar machine shown as a bale breaker in Fig. 17. The advantages resulting from the use of this machine are obvious. The cotton will be presented to the action of the beater in a fairly loose condition, and will therefore receive a less severe treatment and will be much better opened and cleaned.

The cotton is fed on to a lattice, and passing between the two pairs of rollers A and B (Fig. 48), where it is drawn, it is acted upon by a toothed beater C. The quickly revolving beater has the effect of breaking the cotton into small tufts, a certain amount of dirt being loosened and going through the bars D during the operation. Under the influence of a partial vacuum produced by the fan N

(Fig. 48) in the passages and cage J, the cotton is drawn

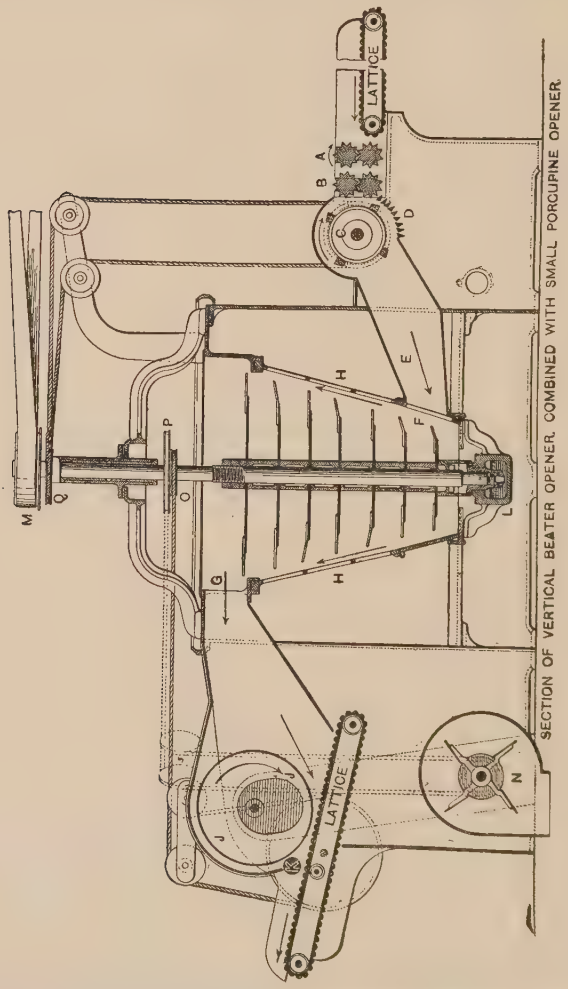


FIG. 48.

down the tube E, and at its very entrance into the perfor

ated casing which surrounds the beater it is brought in contact with the blades of the bottom disc. The high speed at which the disc is revolving (1000 revs. per min.) quickly loosens it sufficiently to allow it to rise and follow the current of air which is rushing through the machine. In doing so it comes naturally into contact with the blades of the next disc, when a further loosening is effected, after

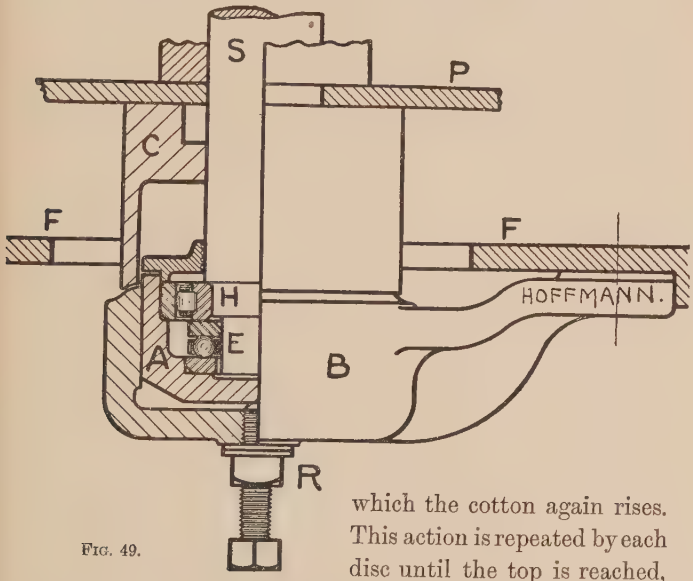


FIG. 49.

which the cotton again rises. This action is repeated by each disc until the top is reached, where the cotton escapes at G, in the direction of the arrows, to the revolving cage J. The perforations of this cage permit the fine dust and dirt to pass through, but it is impossible for the cotton to do so; it is consequently taken round until it is cleared from it by a delivery roller K and by the travelling lattice, the cotton being passed forward and allowed to fall over the end of the lattice on to the floor. Very often, however,

machines are made so that the cotton goes through a beater to a lap end, where it is made into a lap. This effects a saving in labour and time, and also greater regularity is obtained in the finished lap for the card. It will be easily understood that while the cotton is under the action of the beater it will be continually thrown against the surrounding casing H. This casing is therefore made with a graduated series of holes, through which the heavy impurities are driven, the holes being largest at the bottom and gradually contracting in size to the top.

Having given a description of what happens to the cotton in passing through the machine, it will be of some advantage to inquire into the reason of the action that takes place. In this case we have a fan N, whose connection with the space within which the beater works is shown by the shaded portion at N, along upright passages on the outside of the machine framing, called chimneys, to the shaded portion within the cage J ; from here there is a direct passage to the top of the beater. Now, the sole object of the fan, which revolves at a very high speed (1000 to 1200 revs. per min.), is to exhaust the air from all the passages just mentioned, and by this means produce a vacuum. Knowing the fact that gravity is a force which prevents anything rising, we see the necessity of some power coming into action and forcing the cotton to the top of the beater. The pressure of the air supplies us with the requisite power, for outside the machine it will probably be almost at 15 lb. per square inch, while inside the machine it may be considerably less than this, according to the degree of the vacuum produced by the fan. If an opening is made, the air will be forced in by the outside pressure, and in rushing along the passages will force the cotton with it. This explains the reason of the cotton rising. From it we can also

see that if the admission of air is not carefully regulated, or—what practically amounts to the same thing—if the speed of the fan is not regulated, it will be possible for the cotton to be rushed through the machine too quickly or too slowly, in one case resulting in insufficient opening, in the other case causing damage to the fibres and a considerable curliness in the appearance of the delivered cotton.

It ought to be noticed, in connection with this feature, that any current of air passing through the machine is well broken up by the disc blades of the beater, which are all running at different surface speeds, though having the same revolutions per minute. It is this fact which enables the vertical conical beater opener to exercise a discriminating action on the cotton. A direct current of air might carry along with it pieces of cotton which vary in size, but the broken-up current cannot do this. It is almost impossible for a piece of cotton to overcome gravity and to pass upwards until it is loosened sufficiently to come under the general influence of the upward current.

On account of the weight of the beater, and the high speed at which it is running, the machine must be strongly built to prevent vibration. The bottom of the shaft must also be well lubricated. In the sketch (Fig. 48) it is shown revolving on steel discs and pivots in a reservoir of oil, the friction being in this way reduced to a minimum.

In view of the fact that the vertical beater opener may be used, and probably extensively used, for much longer cotton than it is used for at present, the details of this machine will be interesting. For instance, the setting of such a large heavy cylinder to the surrounding grids has always been a difficulty, and usually, to avoid this, variations of speed have been adopted. The sketch (Fig. 50) illustrates the footstep bearing and a method of raising and

lowering the beater and so adjusting it to the grids to suit the staple. A lever J H centred at G bears under the support of the vertical shaft A; the other end of the lever at J is coupled by the regulating screw K to the framing. By adjustments at K the beater is lowered or raised at will.

Fig. 51 is another method that enables an adjustment to be made, but to a more limited extent, through the set screws K, K, on the bottom plate H. This sketch also gives a clear idea of the footstep bearing itself. The hardened

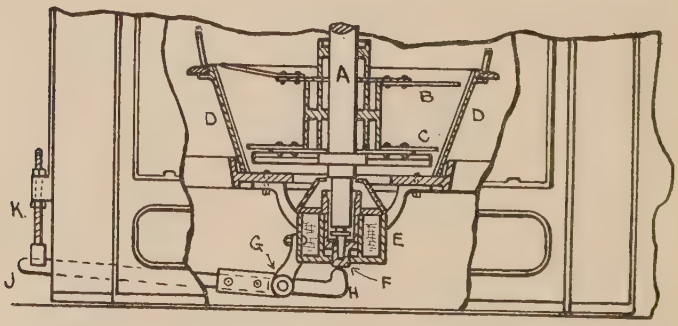


Fig. 50.

steel discs are shown; oil inlet M and outlet J supply the lubrication, the oil-pipe from M coming outside the framing and having a sight-glass, so that it indicates if oil is supplied and shows the level in the bearing. A water-cooling arrangement is also provided. The conical cover plate F protects the bearing from dirt and dust, and as it revolves in the water bath no dirt can enter the bearing if care is exercised in supervision.

The grids require careful designing, so that a maximum of dirt can be thrown out and there may be a minimum of possibility of its return. The blades are simply rough steel sheet which strike the fibres on edge. No doubt when a

little more care is devoted to this type of opener its use will undoubtedly become more general for all classes of

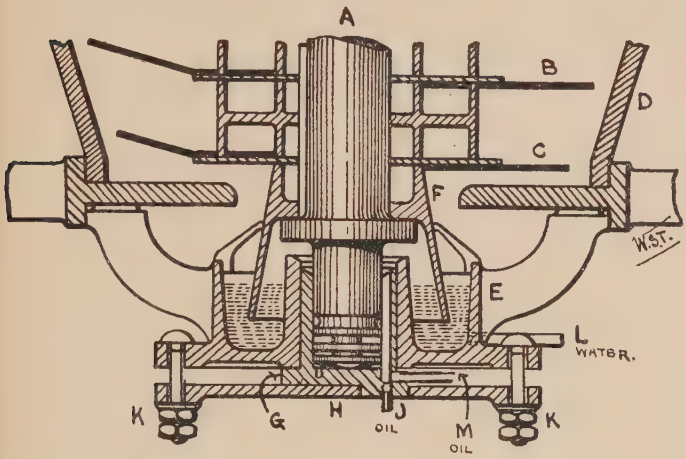


Fig. 51.

cotton, for it is clearly an ideal type of opener for such a delicate fibre as cotton.

This machine is sometimes made in a double form, as in Fig. 52. Where this is so, one end of a trunk would be attached to the opener at G, the other end leading the cotton to the bottom of the beater of the next machine. It is also made as a combined machine, *i.e.* a vertical opener with a horizontal beater and lap part attached, as in Fig. 53. The following table gives a few particulars of the vertical opener :—

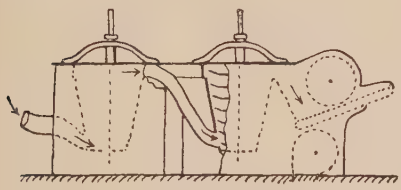


Fig. 52.

	Power.	Production.	Pulleys and Speeds.
Single opener	4 i. h. p.	30,000 to 40,000	Beater pulley 14 in. dia.,
Double opener	8 i. h. p.	lb. per week.	1000 revs. per min.

Horizontal Conical Beater Opener.—In this machine (Fig. 54) we have the same essential feature for opening the cotton as in the vertical beater opener—namely, a conical beater. The similarity, however, is only to a certain extent apparent. Its action is modified in several important points, which will be noticed as the description proceeds.

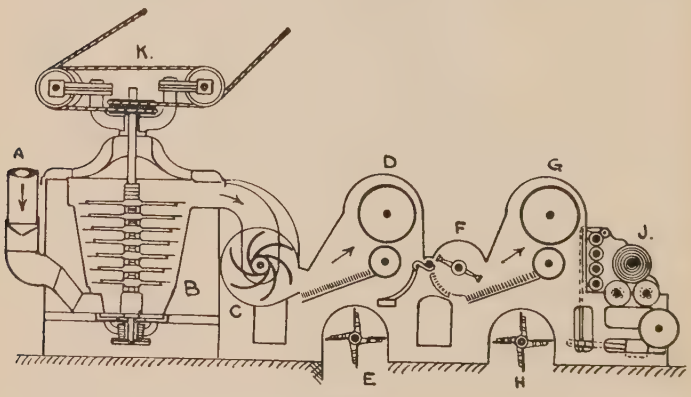


FIG. 53.

The cotton is first passed through a small porcupine opener or bale breaker in the room above. It passes from this machine along the trunk A, in the direction of the arrows, to the entrance B of the beater casing. This passage of the cotton along a tube for some distance has been performed under the influence of a powerful fan E on the beater shaft. This fan, by creating a partial vacuum of a sufficient degree of rarity, enables the current of air which rushes in to replace the air taken out to force loose cotton considerable distances along tubes, whether they be

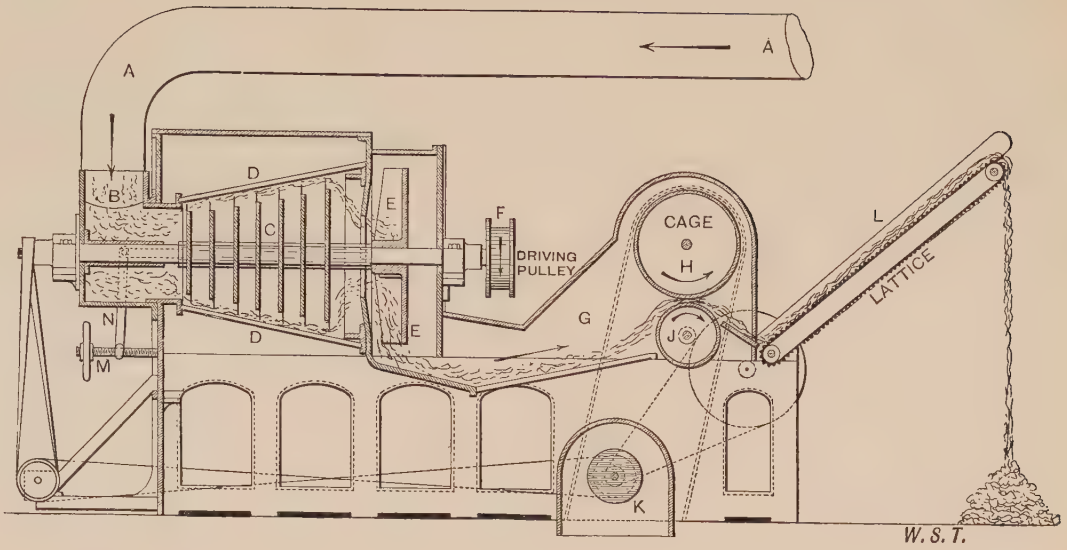


FIG. 54.

straight or curved. The machine, on this account, is often called an exhaust opener. The cotton, on entering the casing, is forced (not drawn) through the machine, and in its passage it naturally comes under the action of the blades of the beater. These open it out sufficiently to enable it to get rid of its larger impurities, which are driven through perforations in the casing D. When the cotton leaves the fan E, the current of air is maintained by a fan K acting through cages H and J. Consequently the loose material continues its journey, and, passing between the cages, which take from it its very light impurities, it is taken forward by a lattice L, over the end of which it falls to the floor; or it may be passed through a beater and made into a lap.

We will now point out a very noticeable difference between this form of beater and the vertical type. In the latter machine we saw that gravity played a very important part in enabling the machine to perform its work discriminately. In this machine, gravity, in the same sense, plays no part whatever; so, under the influence of the powerful fan E, the cotton goes through the machine quickly, and takes its chance of being opened out regularly. This may be a disadvantage for the strong, short-stapled, and hard, matted cottons, but it is a distinct advantage in the better classes. The fibres of these are more delicate and are consequently more easily damaged; and so, in passing through the beater quickly, they are opened sufficiently for their purpose, and yet are treated in a manner consistent with their structure.

In order to be able to alter the distance of the blades from the casing D, an arrangement is made so that, by turning the screw M, the lever N, which is connected to the casing D by links (one on each side), moves the casing in whichever direction it is necessary.

Suitable speeds for this opener are—

Beater and fan, 1100 to 1200 revolutions per minute for tubes 30 to 40 yds. long.

For shorter distances than these a slightly slower speed is preferable.

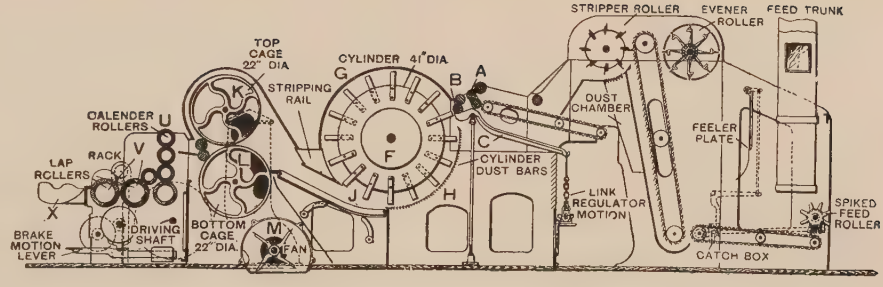
The fan is quite capable of causing the cotton to travel along the tube a distance of 100 to 200 yds.

The blade beater pulley is 10 in. diameter, and the speed should be about 1400 revolutions per minute.

The production varies according to the kind of cotton being worked, but with beater and lap part applied its average will be about 25,000 lb. per week of 56½ hours.

Large Porcupine Cylinder Opener.—Another form of opener, which is used extensively for American and Egyptian cotton, is shown in Fig. 55. The cotton is fed either directly by hand or by the hopper feeder. In the case of our illustrations the hopper feeder is attached. It must be remembered that in all types of openers the opening and cleaning properties are the chief factors. We have seen that in the two previous examples the cotton is under the influence of beating blades for some little time, and we may add that a very excellent cleansing and opening effect is obtained; but some kinds of cotton, and, in the opinion of some minds, long-stapled cotton, cannot be opened by the vertical or horizontal conical opener; it has a tendency to cause the fibres to curl; it treats them harshly, and no doubt many other bad effects are obtained, a number of which are entirely imaginary. This idea has developed the type of machine seen in Fig. 55. The cotton passes from the hopper feeder through feed rollers A and pedal roller B, from which point it is struck by the blades of the large porcupine cylinder F. These blades tear or draw out the loose fibres from between the roller B and pedal, and carry them round to about the

FIG. 55.


STRIPPER ROLLER
EVENER ROLLER
FEED TRUNK
TOP CAGE 22" DIA.
CYLINDER 41" DIA.
STRIPPING RAIL
CALENDER ROLLERS
DUST CHAMBER
FEELER PLATE
LAP ROLLERS
RACK
CYLINDER DUST BARS
LINK REGULATOR MOTION
SPIKED FEED ROLLER
DRIVING SHAFT
BOTTOM CAGE 22" DIA.
FAN
BRAKE MOTION LEVER
CATCH BOX

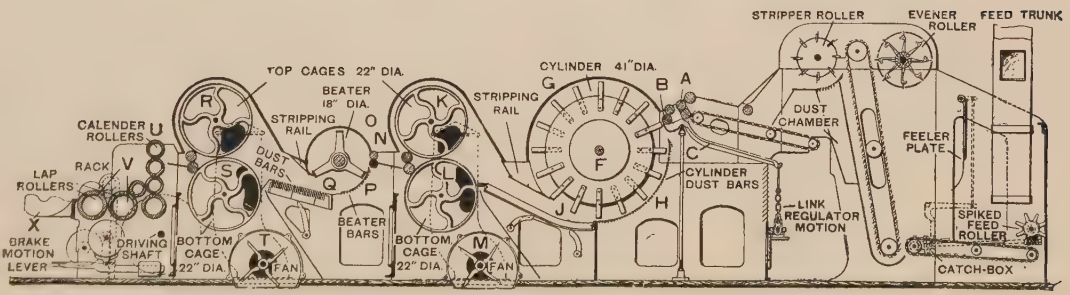

STRIPPER ROLLER
EVENER ROLLER
FEED TRUNK
TOP CAGES 22" DIA.
BEATER 18" DIA.
CYLINDER 41" DIA.
STRIPPING RAIL
CALENDER ROLLERS
DUST CHAMBER
FEELER PLATE
DUST BARS
LAP ROLLERS
RACK
CYLINDER DUST BARS
LINK REGULATOR MOTION
SPIKED FEED ROLLER
BEATER BARS
DRIVING SHAFT
BOTTOM CAGE 22" DIA.
FAN
BRAKE MOTION LEVER
CATCH-BOX

FIG. 56.

point J. Between J and B is a set of bars H with sharp edge, and spaced apart so that dirt and dust can pass between the bars. The fibres on the points of the beater blades have a tendency to fly away, but the speed of the blades is too great and, as a consequence, some of the fibres are beaten against the bars H and some dirt and dust knocked out. Moreover, the small tufts taken away from the pedal roller by the blades loosens the cotton, and dirt and dust fall downwards until some of it escapes through H. The opening effect of this machine is excellent for the right cotton, but the real opening takes place at the pedal nose B or feed rollers if pedals are not used. The blades are riveted on discs threaded on the shaft, and are so set that when all the discs are assembled the blades are all out of line, but regularly, so as to appear in the form of a spiral round the cylinder. The bars H are of very little service as cleaning or opening agents, but they are of vital importance both as to shape, space, and setting in regard to the dirt or fibre they allow to pass through. Fibre must not pass through, only the maximum of dirt and dust of the heavier kinds. If this is clearly understood, it will appear feasible that only the short distance from B to J is necessary, in a machine of this type, to obtain good results on suitable cottons.

From the lower point of the cylinder at J, the opened cotton is partly projected and partly drawn along the passage to the cages K and L. Any cotton adhering to the ends of the blades is stripped off by the sharp edge of the stripping rail as shown.

The two cages K and L are hollow, with a metallic covering of wirework or perforated sheet metal. They revolve K clockwise and L counterclockwise in our drawing. A fan at M is connected, through passages on the

outsides of the machine, with the interior of the cages (see the dark patches in Fig. 55), and the air being withdrawn enables the opened cotton to travel forward and upwards, and to spread itself on the exposed surfaces of the two cages, the upper cage, of course, receiving the bulk of the cotton. The revolution of the cages carries this cotton forward and between them, and generally a pair of rollers assist its movement after passing the cages until the very loose-looking sheet of cotton reaches the calender rollers U, and here as it goes over and under heavy and weighted rollers it is pressed into a closer sheet, and finally wound up into a round lap. To refer back, it will be noted that the cotton passes over bars at J in its journey to the cages, dust and dirt fall from the cotton through these bars, and this happens the more readily owing to the agitated condition of the cotton as it moves and swirls along under the influence of a carefully regulated air current. The cotton still contains dust and dirt, so as it is sucked on to the perforated cages the fan M acts most efficiently in drawing out still further the remnants of the dust; indeed this feature of the machine is relied upon to extract most of the dust and to conduct it away to the dust chamber or chimney. Instead of the cotton being made into a lap after passing the cages K and L in the single opener, it is more often passed through the beater feed rollers N and acted upon by a beater O, as seen in the double opener, Fig. 56. This continues the opening, and drives a further proportion of impurities through the bars P. The cotton then passes over the bars Q to the cages R and S, and from there to the lap end, where a lap is formed. The addition of this extra beater and lap end also dispenses with the breaker scutcher, thus saving its cost and the wages of the operative.

	Power.	Production.	Speeds.
Single opener . . .	5 i. h. p.	30,000 lb. per week	Cylinder, 500 revs.
Double opener . . .	10 i. h. p.		Beater, 1200 ,,
With hopper feeder add	1½ i. h. p.		

A section of a well-known type of opener is given in our next illustration, Fig. 57. The cotton is fed to the opener by the lattice and a pair of feed rollers A. A large porcupine cylinder covered by spikes or beater blades strikes the cotton from these in an upward direction, and carries the cotton round for three quarters of a revolution, until it arrives at E, where an opening is made leading along an irregular passage H to the cages J, K. A current of air induced by the fan L, rushing along the passage H, carries the cotton forward. From the cages the cotton passes to the lap end M and is formed into the lap P.

It will be noted how this type of machine differs from those already described. In the first place, the cotton is taken away in small tufts from the feed rollers or pedal roller; but such cotton is not subject at once to spaced bars, it is confined, it is uninfluenced by the direct current of air induced by the fan L, so it is much freer. The spikes or projections on the inside of the cover C help to detach the cotton from the blades of the cylinder; but such cotton must of necessity fall back into the path of the blades and so receive the shock of the blows it receives. It will thus be seen that this space from A to D is a small portion of conical opener where the cotton is beaten about by blades and dashed against projections on the cover. In other words, an extra opening effect is obtained in addition to the opening received at the feeding point. In this well-opened condition the cotton arrives at the bars D and passes over a long series of these to E. The bars are not

opening factors in the true sense; their careful arrange-

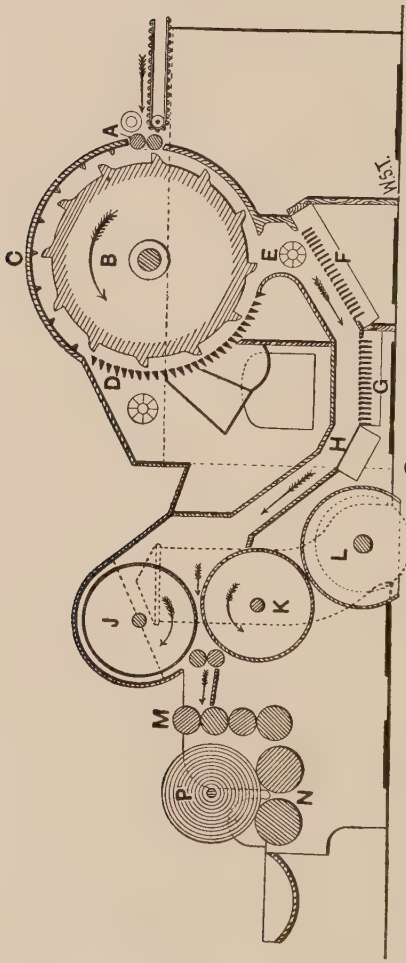


FIG. 57.

ments and setting enable a maximum of dust and dirt

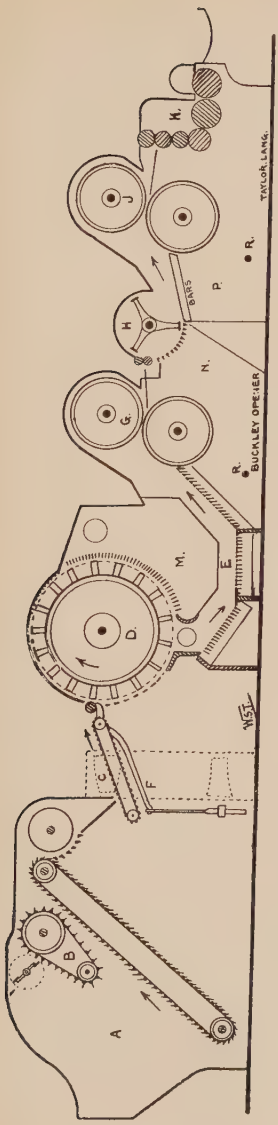


FIG. 58.

to be driven off by centrifugal force. Alterations of these bars may enable more or less dirt to be extracted and so produce a cleaner or more dirty cotton, but very little influence on the actual openness of the cotton can be obtained.

When the cotton reaches the point E it comes under the influence of air currents passing to the cages J, K. These air currents can be exactly regulated by means of ventilators or air valves, one of which is shown under E. The passage H has series of grids or bars at F, G, and H, and at these points the loosened cotton parts from a quantity of its dirt, due a good deal to the buffeting against the upper surfaces of the passage.

Fig. 58 gives a double form of this Buckley opener and shows the hopper feeder and pedal motion feed with its regulating motion. In this connection it is worth noting that the blades of the cylinder strike the cotton upwards against the rounded surface of the roller and not downwards

against the pedal nose. This type of machine, owing to the excellent results obtained from it for certain classes of cotton, is extensively made, and several firms make a speciality of it.

Exhaust Opener.—In Fig. 54 a drawing was given of an opener, the fan of which is capable of producing a current of air sufficiently strong to cause cotton to travel some distance along a tube to the beater. It will be seen that this is one of several methods of taking the cotton direct from the mixing room to the opening machine, in this way dispensing with carrying, and the accompanying expense of employing hands for that operation. We now give an illustration of another machine which serves a similar purpose, an examination of which in Fig. 59 will show very clearly its action. The cotton is fed to a small porcupine opener in the mixing room above, a very important feature of this small machine being a regulating pedal motion, which ensures a regular supply of cotton to the machine in the room below. After passing through the machine, a current of air generated by a fan G on the cylinder shaft in the exhaust opener causes the cotton to travel along the tube C. In doing so it is made to pass through dust trunks D, containing vertical bars over which the cotton moves, and naturally its impeded motion through them causes a certain proportion of dirt to fall down between the bars into boxes below. Continuing its course along the tube, it enters the opener by means of a divided trunk E, E, and these conduct it into contact with the revolving cylinder beaters F, F. The cotton is well opened at this point, the loosened dirt escaping through the grids under the cylinder. The fan G frees the opened fibres from the cylinder, and vanes of special form send it forward along the passage H. In this passage it comes under

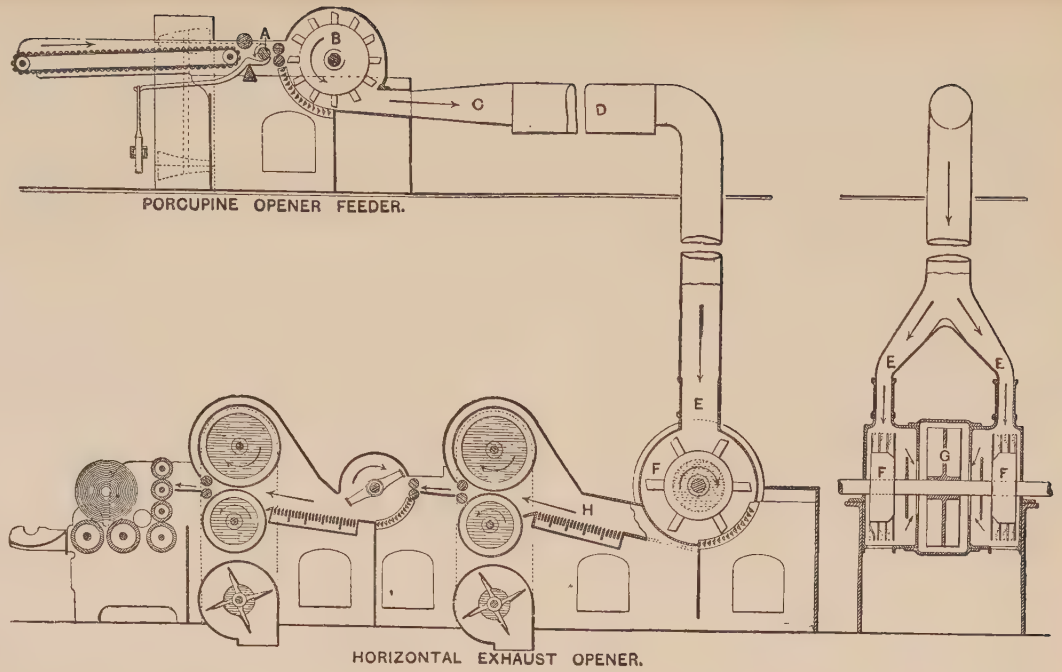

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
PORCUPINE OPENER FEEDER.
HORIZONTAL EXHAUST OPENER.

FIG. 59.

the influence of the fan acting through the cages, from whence the material goes through the remainder of the machine, which is the same as the corresponding part of the double opener shown in Fig. 56, so that it is unnecessary to repeat what was there said when describing that portion of the machine.

An advantage resulting from the division of the trunk at E, E, and the use of two beaters with the fan between, is that the cotton gets well distributed in the passage to the cages, a very equal lap with good selvedges being by this means obtained.

In machines of the description just given, it is quite obvious that there must be some positive connection between the small porcupine machine and the exhaust opener, in order that they may both act mutually towards each other. Whatever method is adopted it must fulfil the condition of automatically stopping either machine whenever the other ceases to work. For example, laps are continually being made, and at the completion of each lap the exhaust opener automatically stops; this stoppage is communicated to the small porcupine opener, which also stops at once—otherwise the tubes would be blocked with cotton, resulting in considerable waste of time and material.

From various drawings already given, it will be noted that trunks are a fairly common feature. These trunks are almost invariably fitted in some part of their length with a section called a dust trunk. This is an enlarged portion fitted on its lower surface with a series of grids through which dirt, etc., may fall into a recess below. This dirt is periodically cleaned out. In some arrangements the dirt is carried out into a receptacle by means of a moving lattice.

It is sometimes used as a complaint against an exhaust opener that the carrying of the cotton along tubes and dust

trunks causes it to form into roller and ball-shaped masses. This is so, but this can be avoided by using well-designed dust boxes with deep vertical plates and a good free space above the plates.

	Power.	Production.	Speeds.
Porcupine opener feeder . . .	2 i.h.p.	20,000 to 25,000 lb. per week, 56½ hrs.	Cyl., 900 revs. per min.
Exhaust opener .	12 i.h.p.	. . .	Cyl., 900 revs. per min. Beater, 1200 revs. per min.

Exhaust Opener.—Fig. 60 is given as supplementary to Fig. 59, page 123, in order to show clearly the fan and beater blades as well as their housings. It may be remarked that this type of machine is extensively used by American spinners, but it is by no means an ideal machine, as it is well-nigh impossible to obtain regular laps owing to the cotton all coming into the passage H from the centre of the machine, or from the two ends. A peculiar feature is the small flocky waste that is ejected at the beater bars.

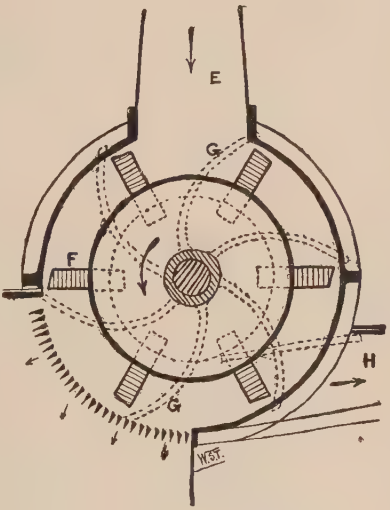


Fig. 60.

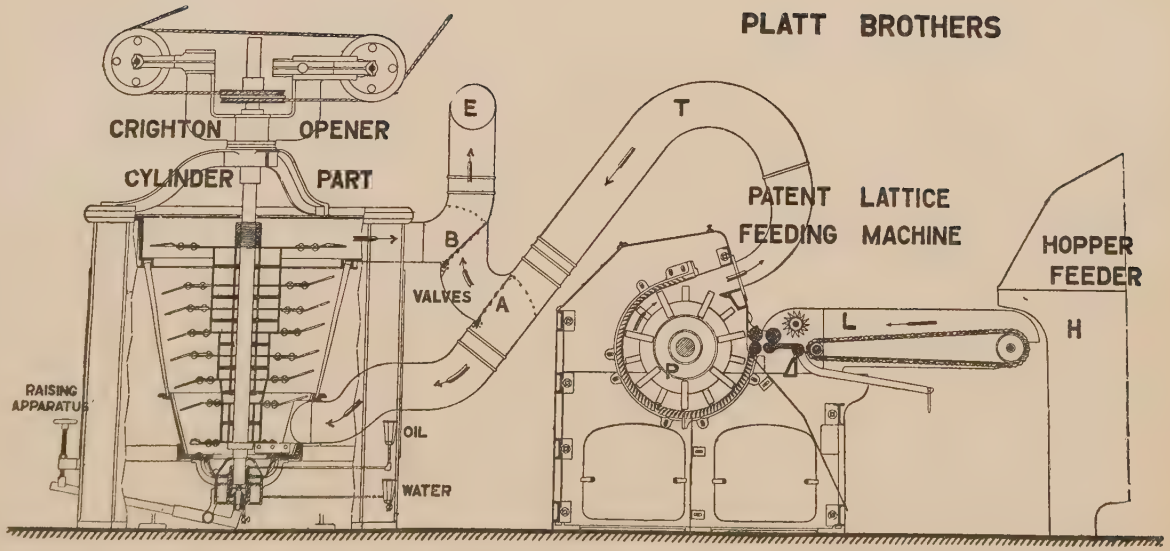

PLATT BROTHERS
CRIGHTON OPENER
CYLINDER PART
E
T
PATENT LATTICE
FEEDING MACHINE
HOPPER
FEEDER
B
VALVES
A
L
H
P
RAISING
APPARATUS
OIL
WATER

Fig. 61.

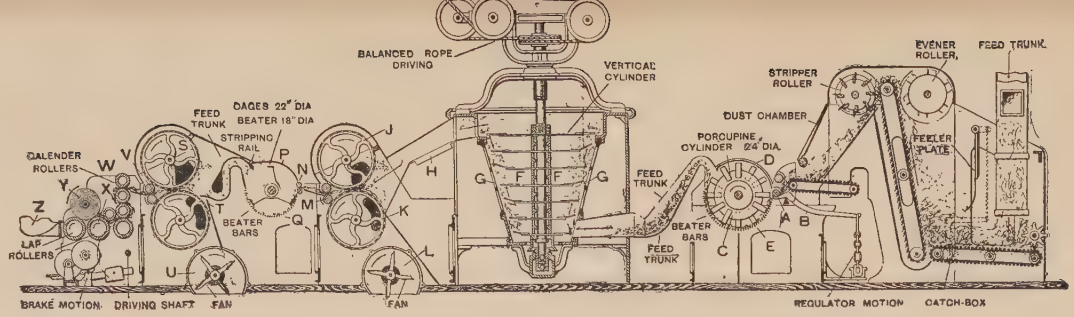


FIG. 62.—Combined Vertical Beater Opener.

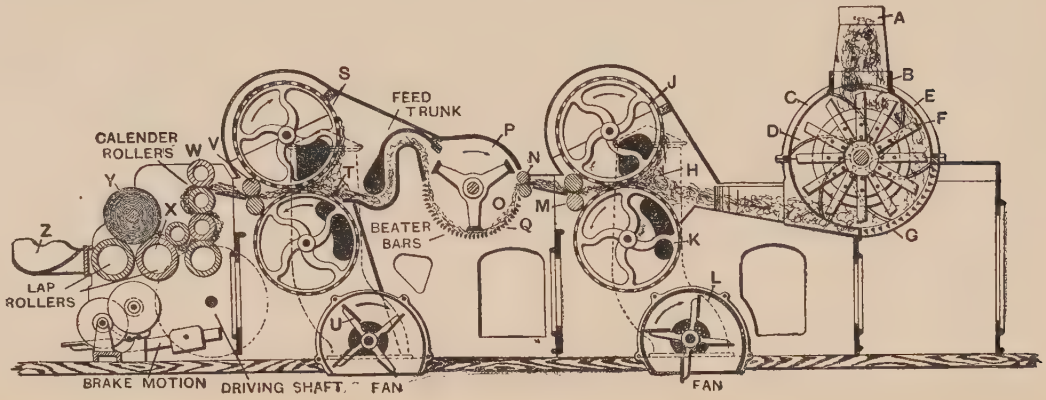


FIG. 63.—Horizontal Exhaust Opener.

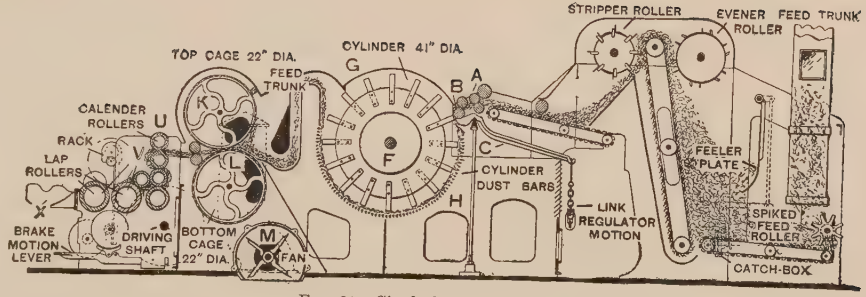


FIG. 64.—Single Horizontal Opener.

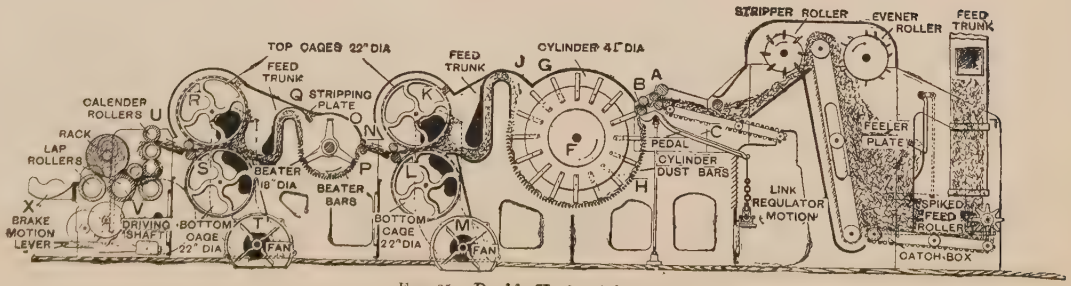


FIG. 65.—Double Horizontal Opener.

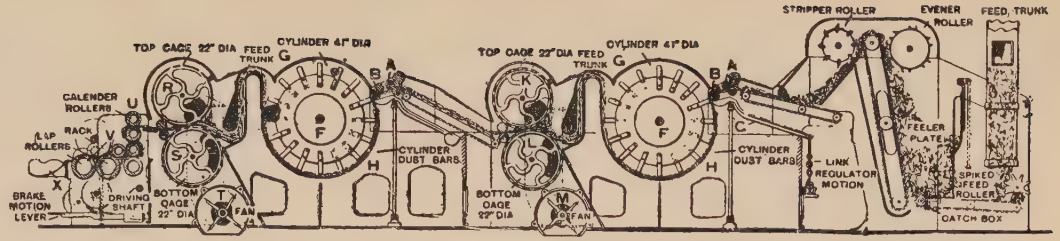


FIG. 66.—Double Cylinder Opener.

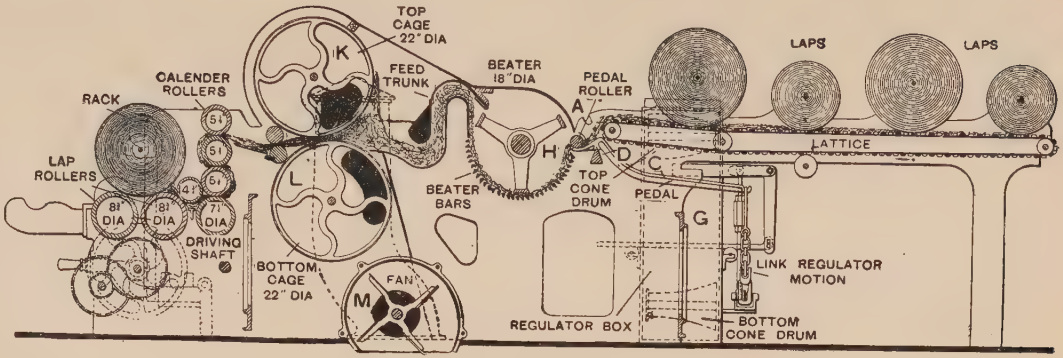


FIG. 67.—Single Scutcher.

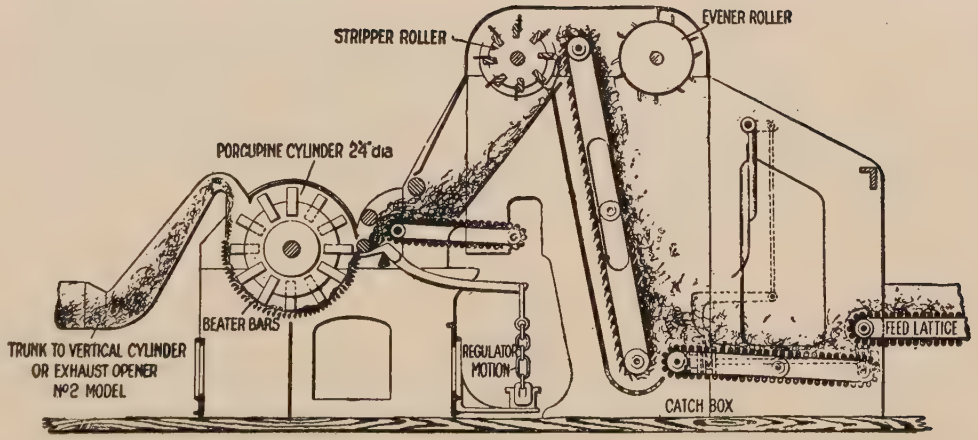

STRIPPER ROLLER
EVENER ROLLER
PORCUPINE CYLINDER 24" dia
BEATER BARS
TRUNK TO VERTICAL CYLINDER
OR EXHAUST OPENER
Nº2 MODEL
REGULATOR
MOTION
FEED LATTICE
CATCH BOX

Fig. 68.

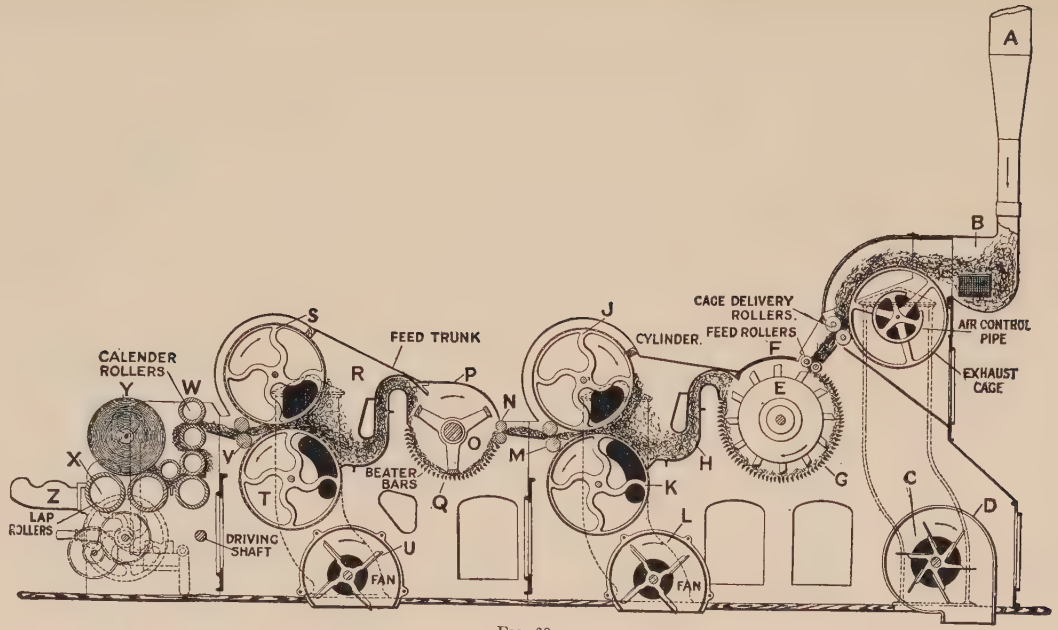

A
B
CAGE DELIVERY ROLLERS
FEED ROLLERS
AIR CONTROL PIPE
EXHAUST CAGE
F
E
G
H
J
CYLINDER.
FEED TRUNK
S
R
P
N
O
M
CALENDER ROLLERS
Y
W
X
V
Z
LAP ROLLERS
T
BEATER BARS
Q
DRIVING SHAFT
U
FAN
K
L
FAN
C
D

FIG. 69.

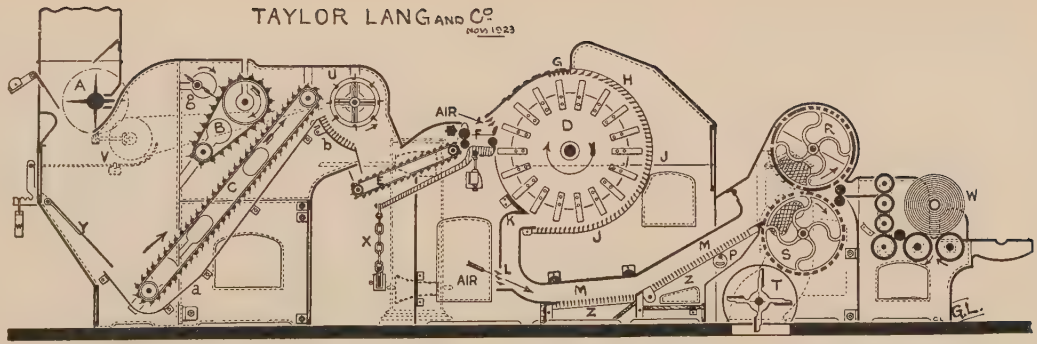

TAYLOR LANG AND Co
NOV 1923
A
B
C
U
V
Y
a
b
AIR
G
H
D
J
K
X
L
M
Z
F
AIR
R
S
T
P
W
TAYLOR LANG & Co Ld
STALYBRIDGE

FIG. 70.

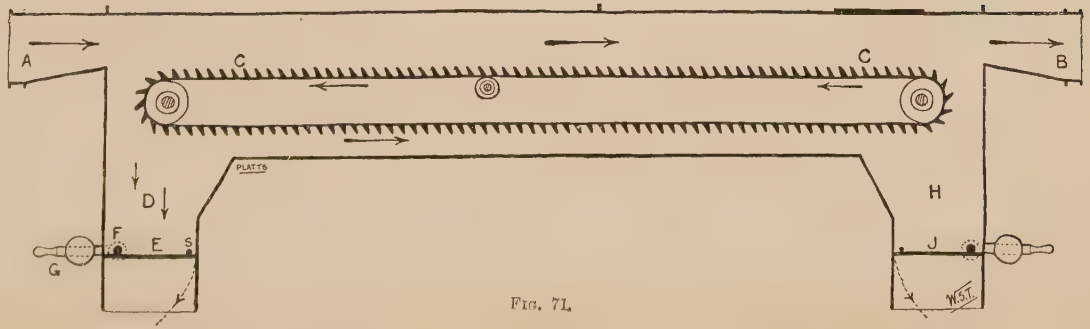

A
C
C
B
PLATTS
D
H
F
E
S
G
J

FIG. 71.

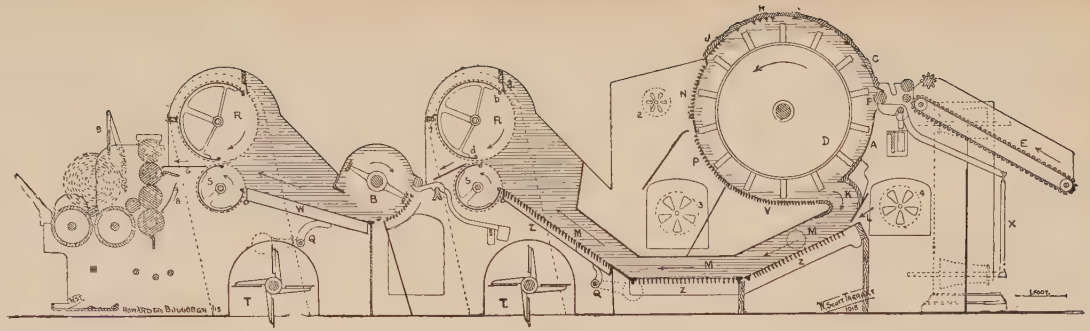


Fig. 72.

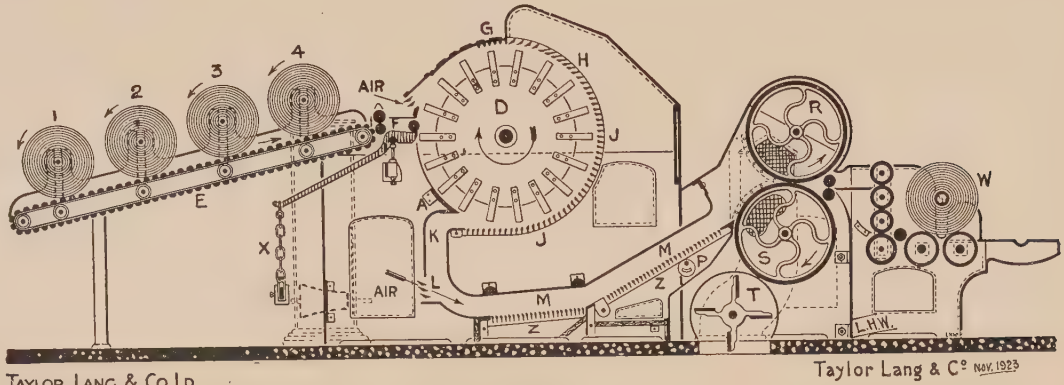

1
2
3
4
AIR
AIR
G
H
D
J
F
A
K
L
M
P
Z
T
R
S
W
E
X
L.H.W.
Taylor Lang & Co Ld
Stalybridge
Taylor Lang & Co Nov. 1923

Fig. 73.

The foregoing pages of illustrations are sufficiently clear not to need any detailed description, so they can be very briefly noted. Fig. 61, p. 126, shows the connection between the small porcupine opener and the Crighton opener. If it is not considered necessary to pass the cotton through the Crighton opener, valves are provided at A and B so that the cotton can pass to trunk E without going through the opener. The trunk E, of course, connects up to an exhaust opener or a horizontal opener with a condenser cage. Dust trunks are fitted in the range of trunks. Fig. 62, p. 127, shows a Crighton opener in a combined machine. The cotton from the small porcupine machine D or from the Crighton machine can be switched on to an exhaust opener such as in Fig. 63, p. 127, or connected to the machine at A in Fig. 63, p. 127. Figs. 64 and 65, p. 128, are similar to machines already illustrated, but they show extended passages from beaters to the cages by swan necks, thus affording greater opportunities for the elimination of dust, etc. Figs. 66 and 67, p. 129, are given to also show the lengthened passages applied to a double opener and a scutcher.

Fig. 68, p. 130, is a small porcupine opener coupled between a hopper machine and an exhaust opener or Crighton opener.

Fig. 69, p. 131, illustrates a type of horizontal opener that acts as an exhaust opener by virtue of the cage. It is an aspirator on a large scale and can be used to eliminate the usual exhaust opener. Figs. 70, p. 132, 72 and 73, p. 133, illustrate the newest type of the Buckley opener.

In connection with Fig. 73, p. 133, it may be mentioned that a travelling lattice in a trunk is now discarded. In all dust trunks the main object is to eliminate dust and fly, and when this falls out of the moving cotton it must fall into receptacles. These are now provided by having deep

plates separated by narrow spaces only. The dust falls between the spaces into a space below. At intervals are placed deeper plates which divide the trunk into sections and also prevent the return of dust, etc. Doors are provided for removing the dirt, and incidentally the amount of dirt extracted is an indication of the effectiveness of the opening process. Trunks with dust boxes at intervals can be carried round three and sometimes four sides of the blowing room, and although the dust, etc., extracted may only amount to a small fractional per cent, the effect on the quality of the yarn renders the installation of these dust boxes a profitable one.

Youlten Opener.—It may be of interest if a few words are devoted to what might be called a new method of opening and cleaning cotton that has every appearance of being of enormous advantage to the industry both economically and for the production of better results in the finished yarn.

Two sections of the opener are given in Figs. 74 and 75; from them a clear idea of the action of the machine may be obtained. The essential features of the arrangement consist of a rapidly revolving beater A, within a very slowly revolving cage or perforated cylinder C. The relative positions of the two features are shown in the drawing, and it will be seen that the beater A is set near to the lower interior surface of the cage, sufficient space being allowed for lumpy cotton to pass freely between them. The space B above the beater is where the opening takes place, whilst the perforations in cage C allow for the passage of impurities. A revolving brush F is set so that its bristles keep the perforations of the cage open and clean.

The beater A is a special feature of the machine, and, as at present constructed, consists of a series of stamped arms, as in Fig. 76, threaded on to a shell shaft whose surface has had cut in it double helical grooves, half the shaft right-

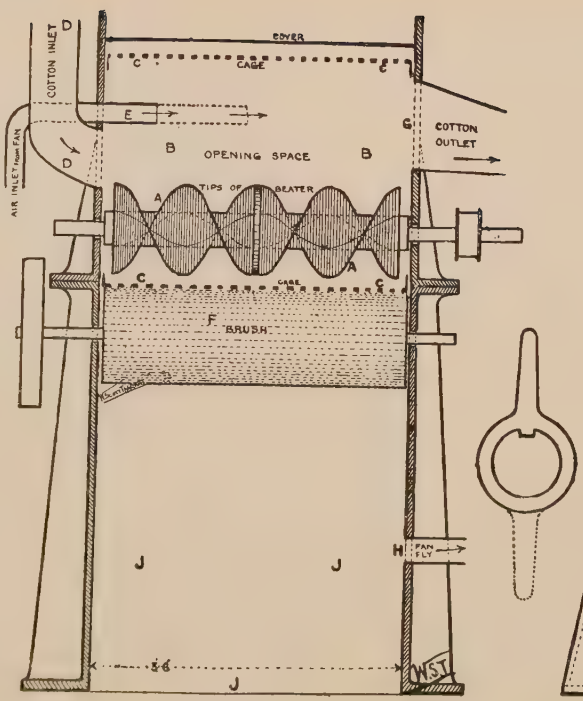


FIG. 74.

FIG. 76.

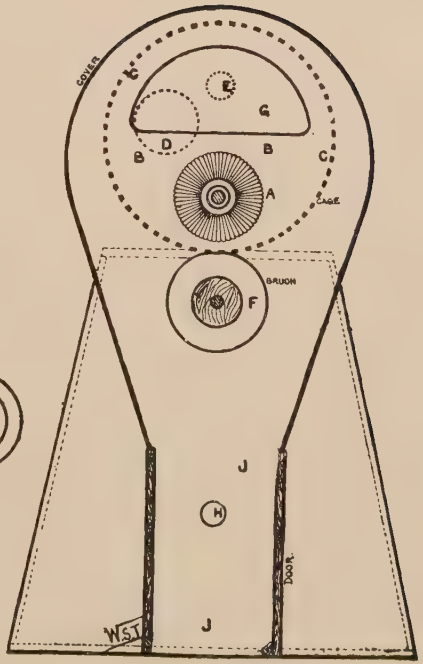


FIG. 75.

hand and the other half left-hand. The arms when threaded on the shaft are close together, so that they cease to have the function of arms and become simply a surface and have exactly the appearance of a conveyer screw, the only difference being in the small rounded tips. It is to these tips that the opening effect is due.

Referring again to Fig. 74, cotton is passed down the feeding trunk D and enters the cage space in the immediate neighbourhood of the beater, so that it at once commences to be acted by the tips of the beater, the speed of which is 2000 revs. per min. The cotton is struck whilst in a perfectly free condition in the cage space, and it continues to be repeatedly struck and dashed against the cage. This process naturally loosens the cotton, and, owing to the spiral arrangement, there is a tendency for the cotton to travel towards the centre of the machine. So long as the cotton remains in a lumpy condition it will continue to keep falling into contact with the beater tips and so receiving further beating. At last a stage is reached when the cotton is so fully loosened and its impurities dashed through the perforations of the cage that it floats in the space B and comes within the influence of a current of air blown into the machine from a fan through the pipe E. This air current blows the loosened cotton on to the other end of the beater, and here a further beating is given to it, the tendency here being to bring the cotton to the centre of the machine because of the conveyer effect of the beater. Ultimately the cotton is so thoroughly opened and in such a fluffy condition that the current of air is able to blow it completely out of the machine through the outlet opening G, from which point the further treatment of the cotton is a question of choice.

The heavier impurities fall down into the lower portion

of the machine at J, from whence they can be removed. The dust, and what might be termed the floating impurities, corresponding to the fan fly, are drawn off by a current of air at H, a fan being used for this purpose.

The machine, as it stands, is extremely simple. It is purely a beating effect on the cotton whilst the cotton is in an air space. It has a resemblance to several other openers in this respect, all of which can claim credit for this great advantage. It, however, possesses an enormous advantage over such openers inasmuch as the opening is not done by means of arms or blades but is simply due to an unusually high rate of tapping of the cotton by means of blade tips only.

The opening effect is a most remarkable one, the cotton being delivered in an unusually loose, free, and downy condition, and, since this is the condition of the cotton before it is delivered from the machine, it is not difficult to understand that the impurities that may have been in the cotton are almost entirely eliminated and ejected through the cage. A further peculiarity, and one of immense importance to the industry, is that the machine allows very little fibre to escape among the impurities, and consequently waste is considerably reduced. A still further property of the machine is that owing to the thorough shaking effect given to the cotton by the extremely high rate of tapping by the tips of the blades, the fine sand, dust, etc., usually adhering to the fibres is removed, and the resulting opened cotton is noticeably brighter and more lustrous in appearance. This is done so effectively that the stripping of cards, using this opened cotton, is noticeable for the small quantity of dust that arises during this operation. This almost entire elimination of dust from the cardroom cannot but be of great advantage both economically and hygienically.

So far it will be observed that the machine requires no adjustments or settings such as are found on most openers, but in two respects some adjustments are necessary. The air pipe E projects only a short distance into the air space. This pipe can be lengthened by an additional pipe, and the strength of the air current can be regulated so that various classes of cotton may be adequately treated both as regards opening and cleaning. Such adjustments are for the purpose of giving a longer or shorter period of beating, so that the machine is not a fixed production machine, it is flexible to the extent that by merely altering the air current and adjusting the pipe, cotton can be passed through the machine quickly or slowly, according to the actual requirements of the bale cotton.

A further adjustment is also provided, but this rather applies to the machine when first installed. For instance, some types of cotton are noted for the large amount of leaf, seed, and other large impurities, whilst other cottons may be very dirty, but such dirt is on the small size. To accommodate these differences, the revolving cage can be made with perforations to suit, and as the cage is built up in segments, easily fixed by thumb screws, the changing of a cage is only a question of a few minutes.

The production of the machine, as at present made, will naturally vary according to the opening and cleaning that is desirable, so that it will range from 200 to 800 lbs. per hour of bale cotton. The machine will treat cotton direct from the bale, or from a mixing, and, no matter how hard, matted, or dirty it may be, it will be delivered from the machine perfectly opened. Of course, the machine is not a card or comber, so that certain kinds of impurities cannot be eliminated without sacrificing production; for instance, fine bits of rough, light leaf, stained entangled cotton, etc.,

but even when traces of such impurities are found, they are in such a free condition that they are scarcely likely to ever reach the carding surfaces, being taken out at the scutcher or the taker-in.

Patent Lattice Opener.—An interesting development in opening cotton is shown in the accompanying illustrations. The use of spiked lattices as opening elements is by no means uncommon, and the three examples given in Figs. 77, 78, and 79 will be familiar. Figs. 78 and 79 are

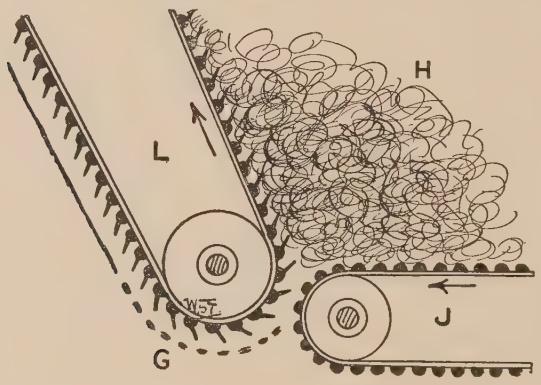


FIG. 77.

examples of evener lattices, and they comb away superfluous cotton from the main lattice L and return this cotton to the hopper. Apart from the fact that these arrangements of lattices are part and parcel of a hopper feeder, it will be noted that, owing to the directions in which the lattices move, no alteration in the speeds will give a full range of opening effect from nothing up to a maximum. On reference to Fig. 80 it will be seen at once how the two spiked lattices can be used as an effective cotton opener and one that is free from any form of beating organ. In effect it is a carding action The spiked lattice A has a

relatively quick speed, and the inclination of the spikes on it enables it to carry the cotton forward. Above the lattice A is placed a second lattice B with inclined spikes, and this lattice travels in the same direction as lattice A but at a relatively slow speed. Cotton passed between the two lattices will be combed out on the same lines as in a card. The distance apart of the two lattices can be regulated to suit the quantity and character of the cotton.

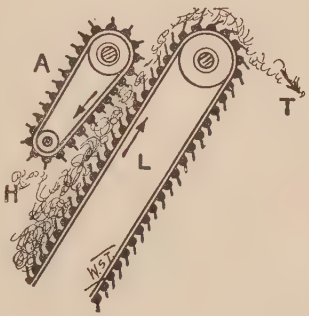


Fig. 78.

The degree of opening can also be regulated by altering the speed of lattice B. If B runs at the same speed as A there will be no opening action. By gradually slowing the speed of B the opening effect will be gradually increased until a maximum is obtained when B is stopped. This method of moving the lattices has the further advantage that the cotton is always travelling in one direction and the inclination of the spikes or pins enable the two lattices to be stripped at their delivery end. No cotton is therefore returned to the feed end. Stripping of the opened cotton may be effected by using a separate stripping roller for each lattice, as at C and D in Fig. 80, or one stripping roller only need be used, as at D in Fig. 85.

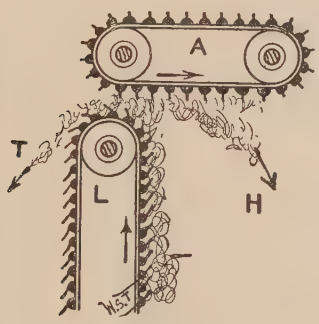


Fig. 79.

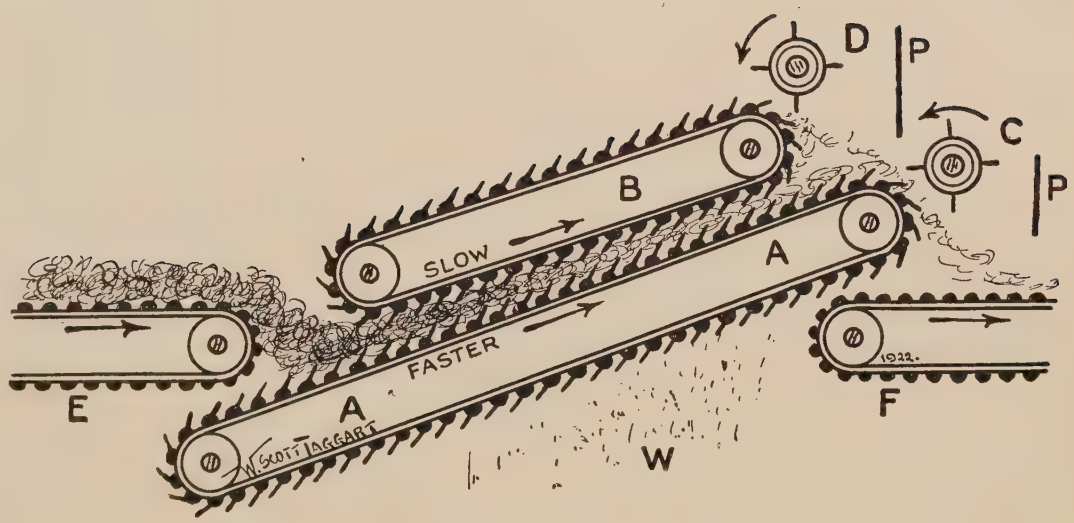


FIG. 80.

It will readily be seen that the combination of movement, speed, and stripping enables the apparatus to be used as a unit, and it can be fitted in to any scheme of lattice work before or after a mixing or as a bale breaker. It may

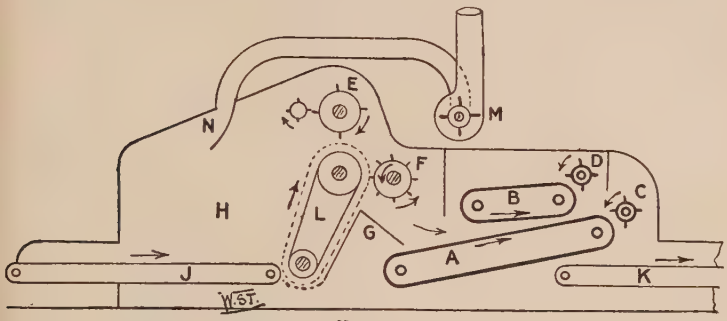


FIG. 81.

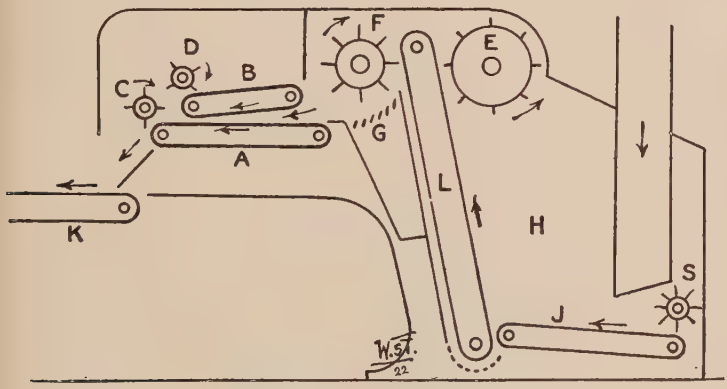


FIG. 82.

be attached to a hopper bale breaker as in Fig. 81, or to a hopper feeder as in Fig. 82. The hopper feeder itself may have the lattices arranged as in Fig. 83. Many feeders at present in use can be easily altered to permit its application. A variety of other applications are possible, a few being shown in Figs. 84, 86, and 87.

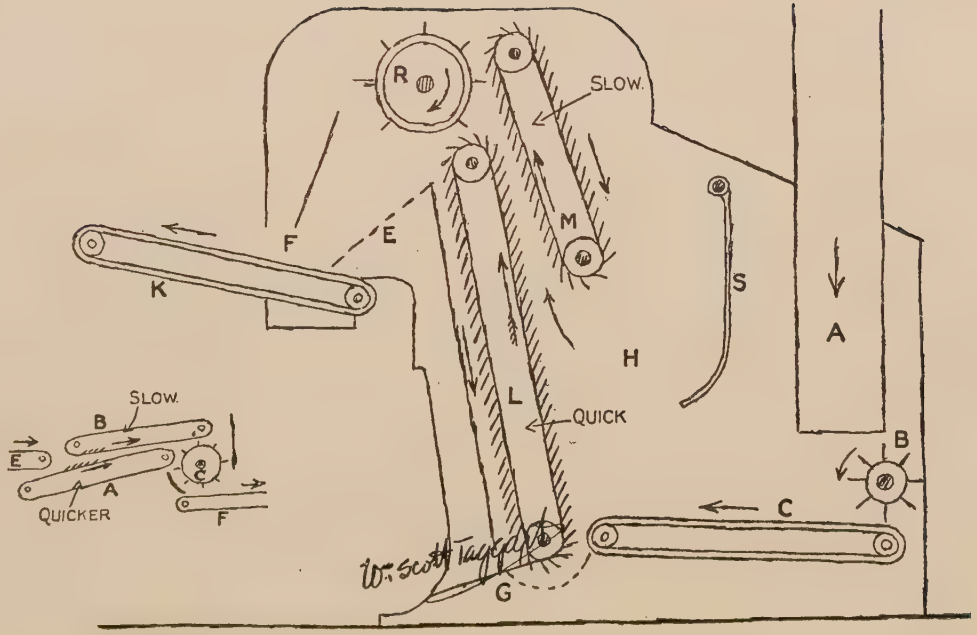


FIG. 83.

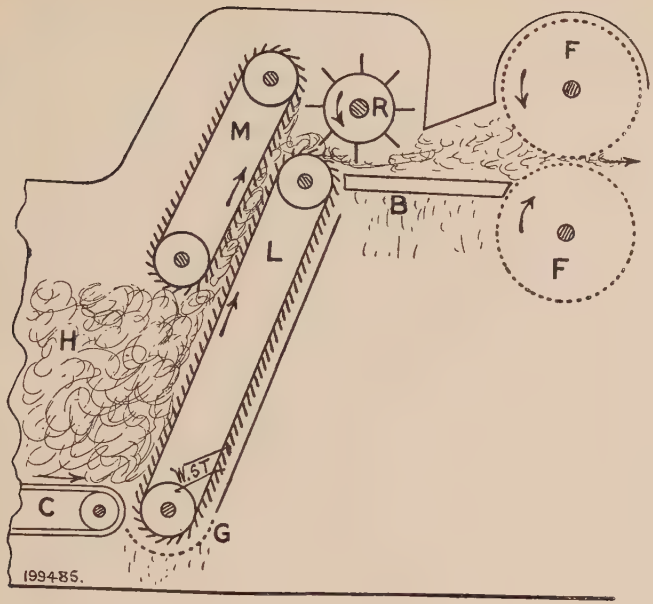


FIG. 84.

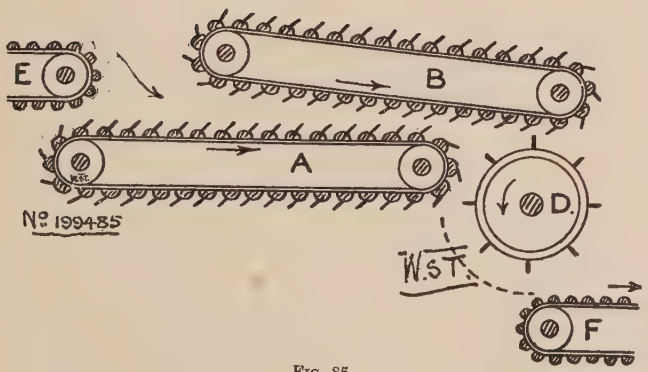


FIG. 85.

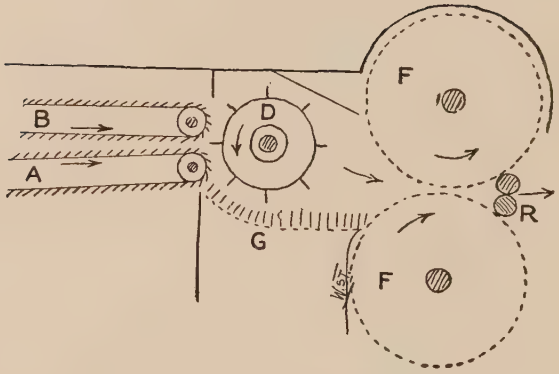


Fig. 86

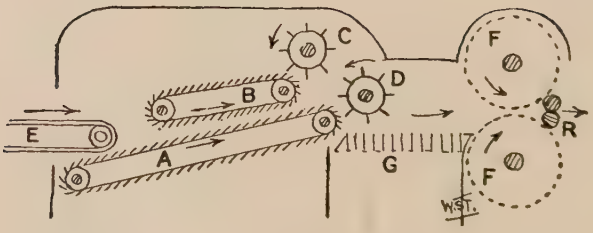


Fig 87.

S. T. Opener.—A type of opener based on the Willow, where cotton is opened and cleaned in a free space, is illustrated in Fig. 88. The beater A is covered with short and preferably rounded blades. The cotton enters by the trunk G and, falling into the open space F, is acted upon by the rapidly revolving beater A. As the cotton is opened out it is drawn along a gradually narrowing space until it arrives at the delivery end at M, from which point it travels to the cages. Owing to the narrowed space, the cotton is compelled to come into contact with the beater more frequently. The casing consists of a fixed perforated cage, or fixed bars surround the beating space, or bars and perforations may be used in combination. To assist the cotton in its forward movement, an air pipe P has branches which just penetrate the casing. These branch pipes admit air at any desired point and at any given pressure, taps, V dampers or valves being applied for the purpose. The air currents from the pipes are directed towards the outlet M.

The cages deliver the cotton to a hopper feeder coupled to a scutcher or direct to the lattice of a scutcher, or a dust trunk system can be coupled to the outlet and a strong suction effect obtained by the use of a large aspirator cage fixed to a hopper feeder at the feed end of a scutcher.

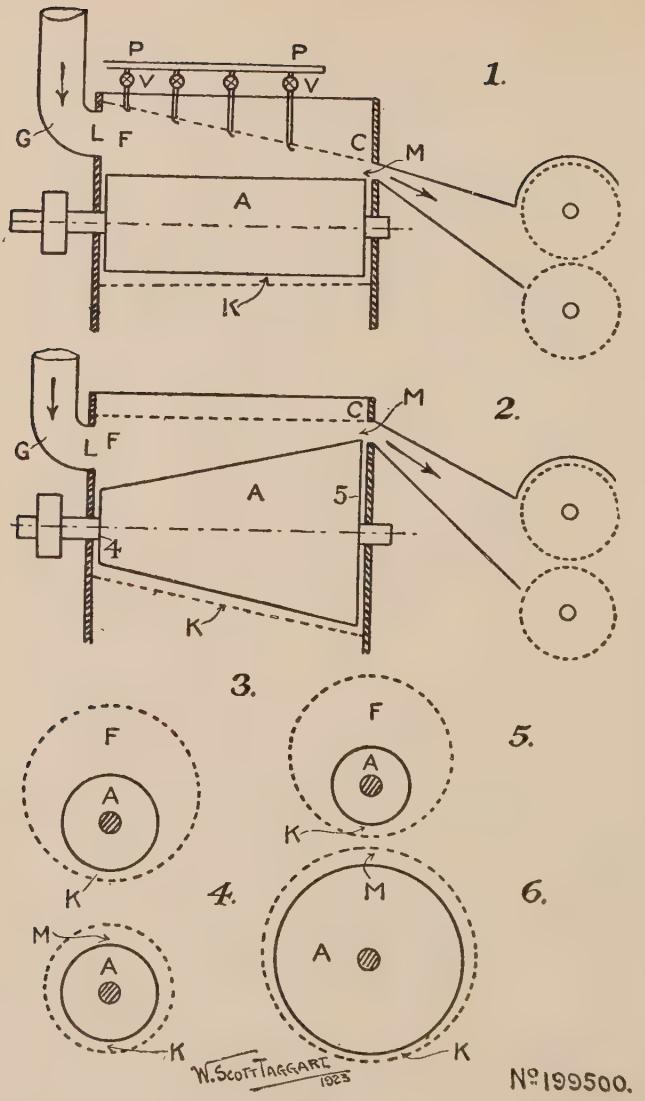

1.
P
P
V
V
G
L
F
C
M
A
K
2.
C
M
G
L
F
A
5
4
K
3.
F
A
K
4.
M
A
K
5.
F
A
K
6.
M
A
K
W. Scott Taggart
1923
No 199500.

Fig. 88.

SCUTCHERS

Although the cotton has now passed through the opener, and has had extracted from it probably about 4 per cent of impurities, it is not in any sense of the term what would be called clean. The opening process is therefore continued under the name of scutching, which literally means beating or whipping. It is, as a matter of fact, a repetition of the action of the beater in the double form of opener, the object, of course, being to drive out as much as possible of the impurities the opener has failed to expel. We will first give a general description of the action of the machine, after which we will proceed to examine very closely its various features. A longitudinal section through a single scutcher is shown in Fig. 89 Three or four laps are taken from the opener and placed upon the travelling lattice. The friction produced by their weight on this moving lattice causes them to unroll and go forward in the direction of the arrows. By this means we get the four layers of cotton combined into one as it emerges from beneath the lap nearest to the beater. In continuing its passage it leaves the lattice and passes between a roller A and a series of pedals C, centred on the knife rail D, the regulating

mechanism being operated through this pedal arrangement. From the pedals it is delivered direct as in Fig. 89, or by a pair of fluted rollers, and brought within range of the quickly-revolving beater H. The beater accomplishes a very effective opening and cleaning operation, the bars I helping considerably to render this performance satisfactory. From here the cotton is taken by a current of air over the bars J, where dirt is deposited, to the cages, which by their revolution conduct it forward to the lap end, where the finished lap is made.

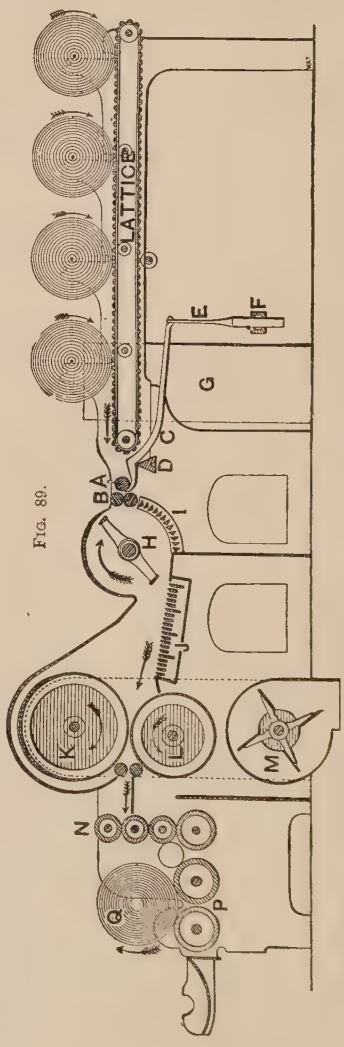


Fig. 89.

SECTION OF SINGLE SCUTCHER DOUBLING FROM FOUR LAPS.

The passages from the fan M to the cages K and L are shown in shaded lines, but this feature varies with different makers. In Fig. 90 a section of the scutcher is shown which is different in detail to the previous one. Here the openings into the cages are much reduced, and confined to positions where a better

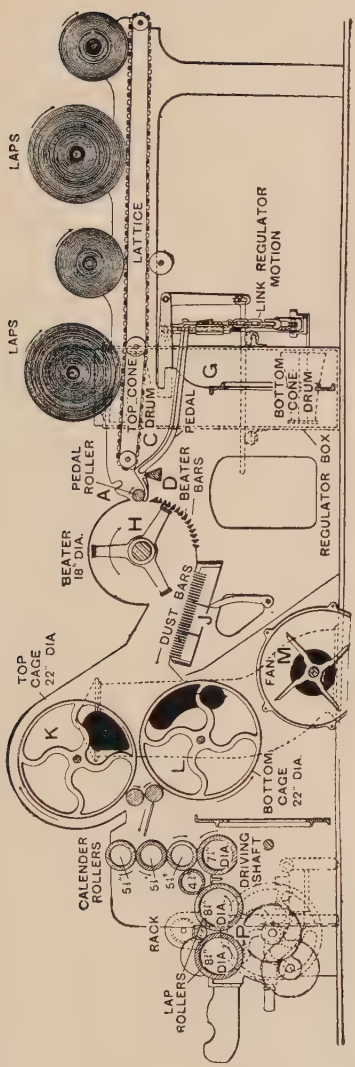


FIG. 90.

effect will be obtained in the deposit of the oncoming loose cotton on the right part of the cages. The drawing also shows the feed roller and pedals only from which the cotton is struck, and not a pair of feed rollers as in Fig. 89. Practically all makes of scutchers in general features are alike; they differ a little in detail, some of which will subsequently be given. Fig. 91 is a sketch only, showing three laps upon the scutcher.

Having given this general sketch of the scutcher, we will now enter upon a detailed account of its important actions, and at the same time investigate the reason for the mechanical means employed to carry them out successfully. It must be borne in mind that the object to be attained in spinning is to obtain a perfectly regular length of yarn exhibiting no variation either in diameter or weight for any

given length. We may say at the outset that this standard of perfection is never reached, but at the same time the whole tendency of the processes we employ is to approach as near to it as the conditions under which the work is performed will permit.

The sooner we commence to bring the cotton into the regular condition mentioned above, the better will it be for its further treatment. In the opening process it is sufficient if the laps from the same machine can be made all to weigh the same within the narrow limit of, say, $\frac{1}{4}$ lb. more or less

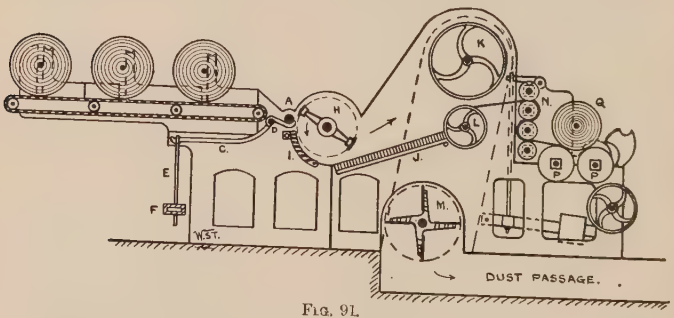
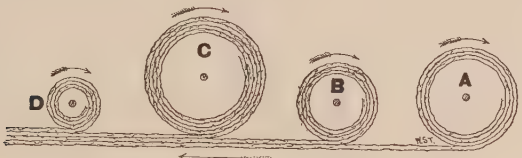


FIG. 91.

in a 33 lb. lap. This would be considered good regulating. But if we take a small quantity—for instance, a square yard of the lap instead of a full lap—we should find a greater difference when compared with other square yards from the same lap; and by taking smaller portions still, the percentage of difference would increase greatly. Every effort is therefore made to get this irregularity eliminated, and for this purpose two methods are generally adopted. One has already been mentioned—namely, that by means of the cone drums. The other is known under the name of doubling. Both systems are employed in the scutcher.

We will deal with the doubling of the laps first. If a

portion of the sheet of a lap from the opener is held up to the light it is seen to consist of thick and thin places, irregularly distributed over its surface. If the lap were allowed to go through the machine in this state the thick and thin places would probably remain so. To prevent this happening another lap with similar thick and thin places is placed on the top of the first one. By adopting this course it is highly probable that a number of the thick places in one lap will come over a number of thin places in the lap below, and *vice versâ*. In this way we get a more uniform lap, but of double the thickness. If another lap is placed upon these two, the probability of the inequalities neutralising each other is increased, and by going a step further still, and making four laps into one, we advance still nearer towards uniformity in the combined lap. We already know that there is comparative regularity



DOUBLING FROM FOUR LAPS

Fig. 92.

in each full lap, but the uniformity this doubling of laps has produced is seen when small quantities of the lap are compared with each other, and this is the very object for which we are working. As we get deeper into the subject we shall perceive that it is around this principle of obtaining equal weights of equal small portions of sliver or yarn that the success or failure of the future operations turns.

A sketch is given in Fig. 92 showing how the laps unroll and pass under each other upon the lattice which conducts them to the feed rollers. This same sketch will also serve to illustrate another point of importance, although it is of

an elementary character. On reference to it, the laps A, B, C, D, all vary in diameter. This is done designedly, the object in view being to keep up the continuity of the four-fold thickness of lap in passing through the feed rollers. As arranged, this is an easy matter, for directly a lap is finished it can be replaced immediately. But if three or four were unrolled at once, their replacement would take much longer, and the risk would be run of a thin place occurring in the combined lap through the piecing not being performed quickly.[1]

We now arrive at the point in the treatment of the subject when it will be of advantage to deal a little more fully with the other method of obtaining equalisation of the lap. It has already been mentioned and illustrated when describing the opener, so that what is now said in explanation of its action will apply with equal force to its application in that machine. We have observed how the doubling of the laps has a disposition to reduce irregularities in thickness, but it is only a commencement towards the attainment of the object in view. So we go a step further in the right direction by passing the cotton between a fixed revolving roller and a series of pedal levers, the arrangement being known as the piano feed or pedal-regulating motion. The pedals, to the number of about sixteen, are disposed side by side across the width of the machine. If the sheet of cotton were perfectly regular, all the pedals would occupy the same position as it passed forward, but if a thick part went through, the particular pedal or pedals over which it traversed would be depressed. A thin portion would have the opposite effect to this, and cause the pedal to rise above its correct position. Now, knowing that our aim is to deliver to the beater equal quantities of cotton in

[1] The principle of Doubling is treated more fully in Vol. II. in the chapter on Draw Frames.

equal times, we can see that this would be the case so long as the thick and thin places were equally distributed throughout the sheet. The action of this state of things on the pedals would be to depress one half of them, and cause the other half to rise, thus neutralising each other. In the lap, however, it is only momentarily that a condition like this occurs; either thick or thin places predominate continually, the variation sometimes being very slight, at other times excessive. A small sketch (Fig. 93) is given explanatory of this point. A transverse section is supposed to be made through the centre of the pedal roller and pedals while the cotton is going through. The varying conditions both in the thickness of cotton and the position of the pedals is clearly shown, and may be taken as the general action of the motion. It must, however, be remembered that, no matter how the individual pedal may

Fig. 93.

be disturbed by thick or thin pieces of cotton, so long as the average thickness keeps the same the speed of the pedal roller will not vary.

If the thick places exceed the thin ones, we can clearly see that too much cotton is being fed, while a reverse state of things, in which the thin overbalance the thick places, shows that the cotton is being fed insufficiently. We can also understand that if the supply is too thick, a less quantity of it must be sent through. This means that the speed of the roller must be reduced: and correspondingly increased to deliver the same quantity of a thinner feed. It will now be obvious that the correct variation in the

speed of the feed rollers, according to the thickness or amount of cotton fed, is a very important factor, so we will proceed to investigate the system of driving generally employed to obtain this variation.

For our purpose, reference will be made to the diagram Fig. 94, and for the sake of simplicity, it may be assumed that the pedal is a straight yielding surface instead of being, as is generally the case, slightly curved at the nose. Suppose the pedal roller takes $\frac{1}{8}$ in. thickness of lap A 1 through, and 6 in. of its length, A, B, is delivered to the beater in one second. Remembering the condition of

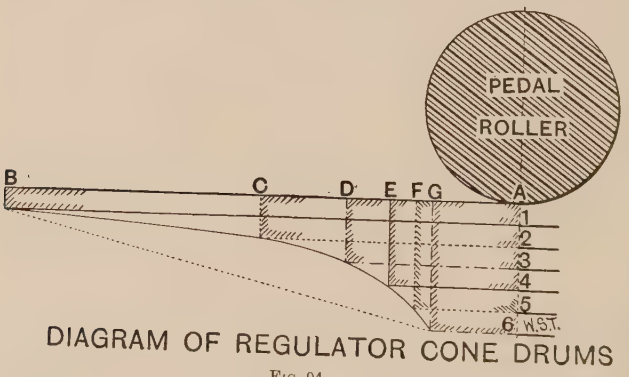


FIG. 94.

equality—namely, that an equal quantity must go through every second—we can easily see that if the thickness of the lap is increased to $\frac{1}{4}$ in., as at A 2, or is otherwise doubled, the length to be delivered in order to equal the first quantity must be 3 in., A, C, or one-half. The speed of the roller must therefore be reduced to turn only this amount through —in other words, its speed must be reduced to one-half. Let another $\frac{1}{8}$ in. be added to the thickness, making the total $\frac{3}{8}$ in. A 3, the length of a $\frac{3}{8}$ in. lap in order to contain

the same amount as is contained by $\frac{1}{8}$ in. lap 6 in. long must be 2 in. long, A, D. This is equal to saying that since the thickness is now three times what it was originally, the length delivered is reduced to one-third the first length, and the speed is reduced to the same extent. By continuing the process of adding to the thickness we reduce the speed, as is shown above, in what is termed inverse ratio. The following table shows at a glance the result of this reasoning, calling the commencing thickness 1, which may be $\frac{1}{8}$ in. or any other dimension, and whatever the speed of roller may be we will call that also 1 :—

If a thickness of	1	is fed,	the speed of roller will be	1
"	2	"	"	$\frac{1}{2}$
"	3	"	"	$\frac{1}{3}$
"	4	"	"	$\frac{1}{4}$
"	5	"	"	$\frac{1}{5}$
"	6	"	"	$\frac{1}{6}$

On referring to the diagram, Fig. 94, we shall see that by joining all the thicknesses together, according to the table, a curve is produced. This, as well as the table, proves to us that the variation in speed is not in direct proportion to the length delivered, but varies in the proportion denoted by the curve. Those readers who have the necessary knowledge will readily see that this curve is the Hyperbola; others will recognise it as the curve which represents Boyle's Law of Pressure and Volume, equalling a constant—it is, in fact, the same principle; for in the table, if we multiply any thickness by its corresponding length, we get the same product in every line. If the fact is thoroughly grasped that the length delivered from the pedal roller per unit of time (say per second or per minute) multiplied by the thickness at that time must always have the same product, there will be no difficulty

in accounting for the curved form of the drums which are used to drive the roller.

It now remains to put into a practical form the reasoning we have employed. In the first place we must work within defined limits; a quarter of an inch will therefore be taken as the minimum thickness, and 1 inch as the extreme thickness. With these numbers given to us, and also the speed of the bottom cone drum, which for convenience may be 100 revs., we will design a pair of cone drums to vary the speed of the pedal to work within the limits given. The bottom cone drum runs at a constant speed; the top cone drum varies, since it drives the pedal roller, the variation depending upon the average thickness of cotton going forward. Now construct a table as follows, leaving the last column out :—

Thickness.	The Speed of Top Cone Drum will be
When $\frac{1}{4}$ in. is going through . . .	$x = 200$ revs
When $\frac{1}{2}$ in. is going through (which is twice the first)	$\frac{x}{2} = 100$ „
When $\frac{3}{4}$ in. is going through (which is three times the first)	$\frac{x}{3} = 66\frac{2}{3}$ „
When 1 in. is going through (which is four times the first)	$\frac{x}{4} = 50$ „

This table tells at a glance that the variation in speed of the top drum is as one to four. We are now enabled to fix the extreme diameter of the two drums. With this in view they may each be made 8 in. and 4 in. in diameter, as shown in Fig. 46; and at the same time the speeds resulting from these diameters are easily found—

$$\frac{8 \times 100}{4} = 200 \text{ revs.}, \quad \frac{4 \times 100}{8} = 50 \text{ revs.}$$

By filling in these speeds in the table it is a simple matter

to find the intermediate speeds at equal intervals along the cone drums as the strap moves from one end to the other.

Since $x = 200$ revs., $\frac{x}{2}$ will equal 100 revs., and $\frac{x}{3} = \frac{200}{3} = 66\frac{2}{3}$ revs.

From these speeds the diameters requisite for obtaining

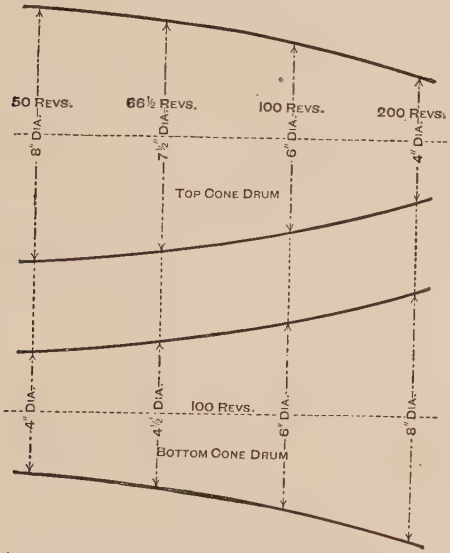


DIAGRAM OF REGULATOR CONE DRUMS.

Fig. 95.

them are readily found, remembering, of course, that the same strap has to fit all the way along the drums, and that the sum of the diameters opposite each other on the top and bottom cone drums should $= 8 + 4 = 12$. On reference to our sketch, Fig. 95, we observe that the 4 in. diam. has 200 revs., and the 8 in. diam. has 50 revs. In the same

descending proportion we shall get the diameter for the $66\frac{2}{3}$ revs. equal to

$$\frac{8 + 4 \times 66\frac{2}{3}}{100 + 66\frac{2}{3}} = 4\frac{4}{5} \text{ in.}; \quad 12 - 4\frac{4}{5} = 7\frac{1}{5} \text{ in.}$$

In a similar manner the bottom drum, revolving at 100 revs., will, when driving the top drum at the same speed, require an equal diameter; so that when the strap is on this point the diameters will be equal to each other—viz. 6 in.

Four diameters have now been obtained in each drum. By joining their extremities we get the curved outline which is characteristic of this motion. It must be understood that the calculations made are for the centre of the strap, both in width and thickness, the actual diameters of the cone drums will in consequence be the thickness of the strap less than those given. It need scarcely be added that a similar method of working applies equally as well to the cone drums of the fly frame. When we come to deal with that machine, however, a further consideration of the matter will then be given, and the problem viewed from a different standpoint, with a more extended application of the principle involved. Sufficient has been said to make it clear that for perfect regulating the hyperbolic curvature of the cone drums is absolutely necessary.

The next step in our explanation will be to show how the cone drums are applied in order to fulfil their special function. For this purpose drawings are given in Figs. 96, 97, and 98. During the passage of the cotton under the pedal roller the pedals will be depressed, the amount of depression varying according to the thickness of material going through. Hanging from the other end of each pedal is a pendant, or, as it is sometimes called, a fishtail, the

latter name being given to them on account of the fan-shaped portion at the bottom of each one. These pendants pass through and are guided in their movements by a rail. Between each pendant in the rail is placed some form of friction bowls, arranged so that a change of position of

Fig. 96.

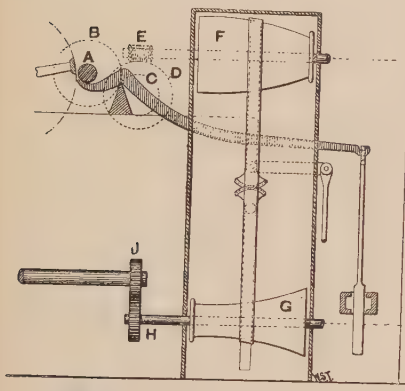
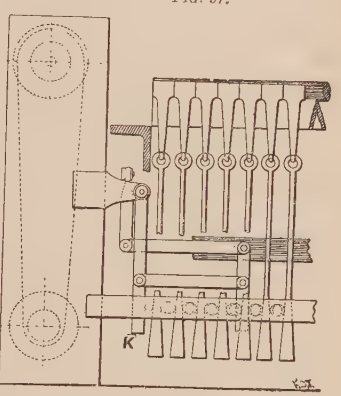


Fig. 97.



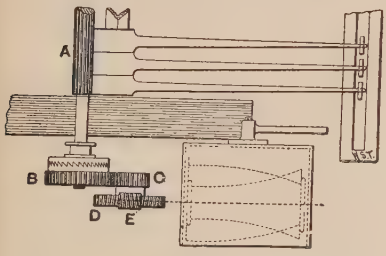


Fig. 98.

any pendant up or down will affect the position of all of them that are between itself and the cone drums. This will be made clear by referring to Fig. 97.

It will be seen that if a pendant is lifted up, which happens when a thick piece is passing under the roller, the tapered portion must displace the bowls in doing so, and

through them the other pendants will be moved on one side. This displacement is naturally transferred to the end of the rail, where it affects a series of levers through which the strap of the cone drum is moved. The remarks previously made in regard to the average thickness not affecting the speed will perhaps now be better understood. We can clearly see that if an excessively thick piece lifted a pendant, the bowls would move outwards and would quickly move the strap of the drums towards the smaller diameter of the bottom cone drum; but if at the same time a thin piece went through, the pendant would drop and the bowls come inwards, thus neutralising the previous action. It is only when the average action of the whole of the pedals is disturbed that the end lever K is moved either in or out.

The bottom cone drum, as we have seen, is driven at a constant speed from the lap end through the wheels J and H. The strap for an average thickness works in the middle of the two drums. If the strap is moved to the large end of the driving cone it will drive the top cone quickly, while if moved to the small end the top cone drum will revolve slowly. The driving from the cones is distinctly shown, and consists of a worm on the cone-drum shaft, gearing into a worm wheel, on the boss of which is a pinion working into a spur wheel on the pedal roller. This wheel is loose on the end of the roller, and can only drive when put into gear with a catch box on the same shaft, the object of this arrangement being that the feed can be stopped on the completion of a lap.

Readers will fully recognise that the efficiency of this regulating motion depends upon the exact arrangement of the levers and the elimination of friction. The first condition of accuracy cannot be attained with levers to the degree sometimes considered necessary, on account of

each lever moving through a portion of a circle, and resulting in what is termed harmonic motion. This defect is overcome when, instead of levers, the connection with the cone-drum strap fork is made by means of a thin, flexible wire rope. An arrangement of this kind has

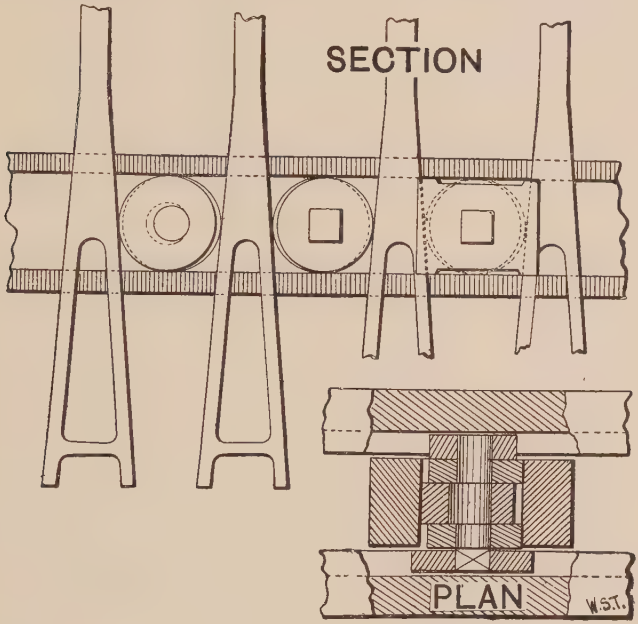


FIG. 99.

been applied to many machines with very successful results, any slight tendency of the wire to stretch being compensated for in a suitable manner.

The other condition of friction is also very important, for unless the pedal acts instantaneously on the drums we reduce the chance of perfect regulation. Two enlarged views are therefore given in Figs. 99 and 100, which show

the methods generally adopted to reduce the friction in the bowl rail. One or more bowls were formerly placed between each pendant; but it will readily be seen that if two adjacent pendants were lifted at the same time,

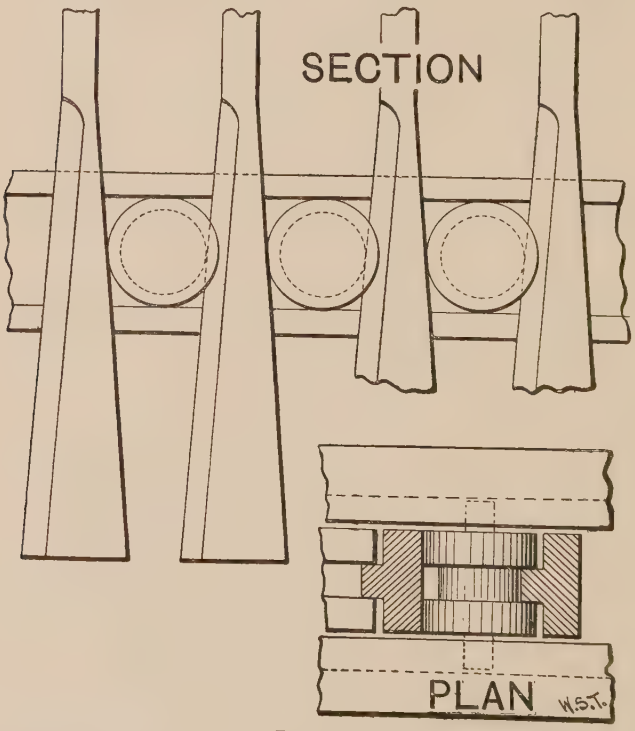


FIG. 100.

considerable friction would be developed, through the bowls turning against each other or rubbing against the sides of the pendant. This fault has been remedied in the two ways shown.

Fig. 99 gives a section and plan, and from it we see that

each pendant bears against its own bowl. These bowls are, however, threaded upon the same shaft, but in such a way that the middle one is on an eccentric portion of the shaft, and so can revolve independently of the two side ones. By this means no interference with the pendants can take place, each working up or down without affecting the adjacent one. To keep the eccentric portion in position, one end of the shaft is made square. On this is threaded a square slide, which runs along a smooth recess cut in the inside of the rail. The other end of the shaft also carries a loose bowl, which helps considerably to reduce the friction as the bowls move backwards and forwards along the rail.

Another method, given in Fig. 100, is very effective for the same purpose. Here we have a small shaft carrying three bowls, the middle one being smaller than the two side ones. The section of the pendants bearing against the bowls is T-shaped, so that the flat portion is against two side ones, while the narrow part bears against the smaller bowl. Each bowl can turn independently of the other, so that very little friction can possibly be developed.

Both of the methods just mentioned are expensive, and in spite of the greatest care are subject to clogging. Improvements on these are now more general, though the idea is old. The fish-tail pendant is displaced and no bowl rail is used, levers and links are used instead, and a good cheap practical arrangement is built up of these elements. Fig. 101 shows the method diagrammatically. The ends A, B, etc., of the pedal levers have links slipped over them. Fig. 102 gives a practical example.

A lever couples the lower ends of each pair of links,

thus forming a series of eight levers. Links are hooked over the centre of each of these eight levers, and the lower ends of these links are coupled together by levers, thus forming a second series of four levers. These four levers are treated in the same way by having links hooked over their centres, and to the lower ends of these links levers are attached, forming a third series of two levers. By links on each of these and a lever connecting them we

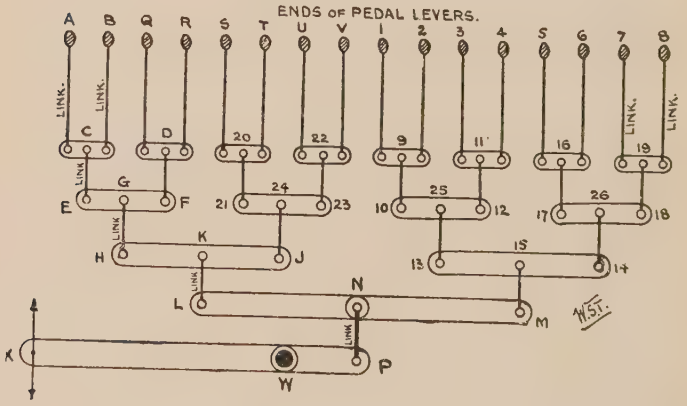
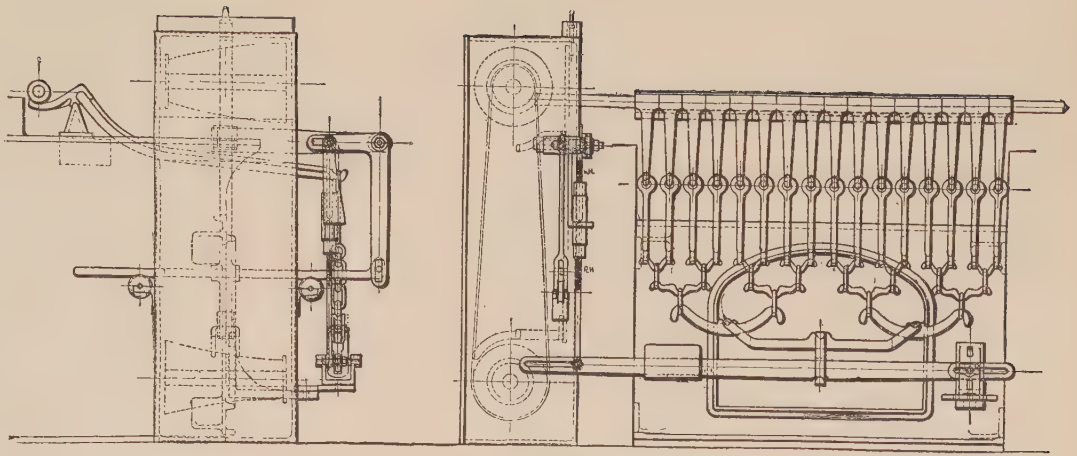


FIG. 101.

obtain one lever, and the centre of this lever is linked to the end of a lever having a fixed fulcrum and whose other end is capable of imparting any movement it receives to the strap fork of the cone drums. The whole arrangement is of the simplest description, clean castings are sufficient, and chain links all that are necessary. It can be readily taken down or put together without skilled labour and it can easily be kept clean. Practically no friction exists. There are no fixed centres except the one at W.



Fig, 102.

The principle is easily understood. If a thick layer is going through the pedal roller the ends A, B, say, will rise, the centre C will rise, G will rise, K will rise, N will rise, and the upward movement of P will depress X and so put the strap on the smaller end of the driving cone drum. If a thin layer passes, the ends A, B fall, and by tracing the effect through the levers it will be seen that the end X will rise and cause an increase of speed of the pedal roller.

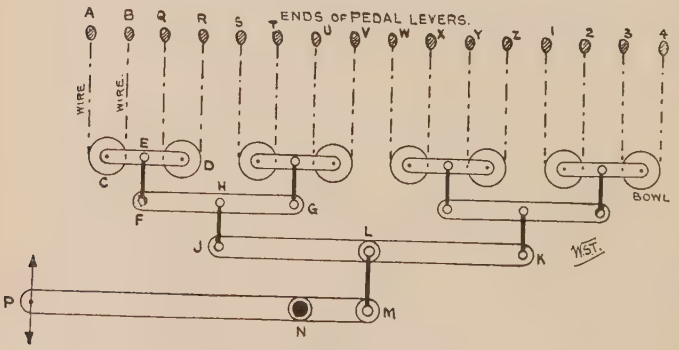


Fig. 103.

If A rises and B falls equally, the point C remains stationary and no change takes place. Each pair of the pedals act in the same way, and each pedal's action will move X unless it is neutralised by another pedal's action in the opposite direction. If all the pedals rise at once, the whole system of levers and links moves bodily upwards except centre W, and it all falls if the pedal ends are all depressed. If half the pedal ends move up and the other half down the centre N is not influenced, and consequently the strap is not affected.

Instead of the links being used as shown, the levers could be slipped over pins side by side. This is done in the next illustration. Fig. 103 is a sketch of a method that has points of simplicity and effectiveness. Instead of links, the pedal ends have wires attached to them, one wire being coupled to a pair of pedals;

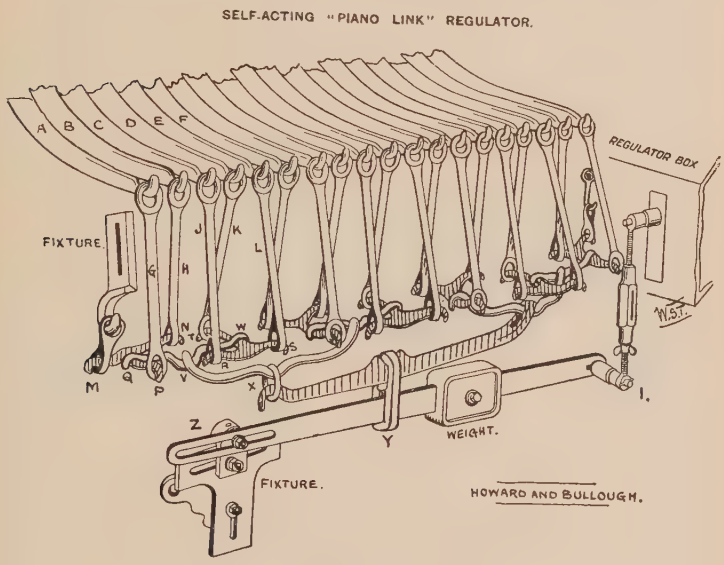


Fig. 104.

this wire passes over a bowl, and the bowl is carried by a lever whose other end carries a similar bowl, the wire of this bowl coupling the next pair of pedal ends. From this point the levers follow on lines similar to the previous illustration, but the simplification arises from the placing of all the free levers side by side and thus dispensing with links. The bowls take the

place of the first series of eight levers already described. The effect of the rise and fall of the pedal ends can be easily followed.

The example given in perspective in Fig. 104 is a further example of links and levers, but in this case the pedal ends are linked up in sets of three to three armed levers. These three armed levers are connected in pairs by simple levers which can easily be traced in the sketch and their action followed downwards to the connection with the

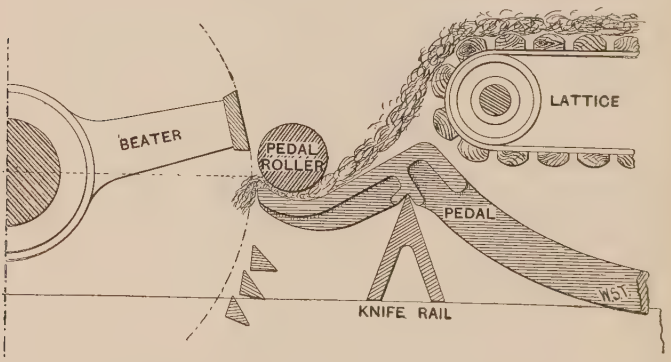


FIG. 105.

regulator box. The apparatus is simple, easily attended to, and readily cleaned.

The next feature to notice is the feed arrangement, and its importance demands some little consideration. It has already been touched upon, but we will now enter more into detail respecting it. In the first place the disposition of the rollers and pedals will be examined. For this purpose Figs. 105 and 106 are given. Fig. 105 represents the usual method of delivering low-class cottons to the beater. There are several reasons for this procedure. The cotton, having a short-stapled fibre, is by this means brought closer

to the beater blade, with the result that it is not knocked away in lumps, which would otherwise happen, but in small detached portions.

Low-class cottons are generally fed more thickly and irregularly than better kinds; consequently, in passing under the action of the beater it is the more easily cleared from the comparatively sharp edge of the pedal nose, and its short length of fibre stands less chance of being damaged in doing this. It is almost impossible for the fibres to get

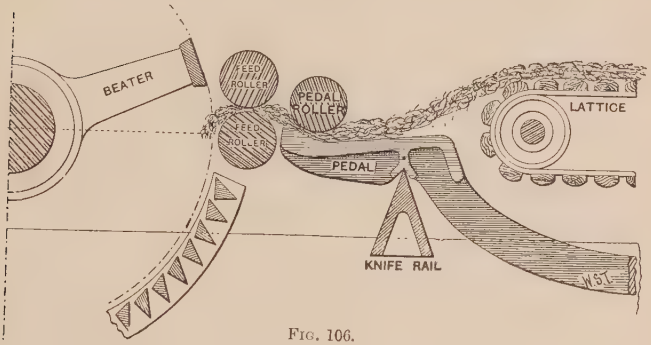


FIG. 106.

crushed between the beater blade and the pedal nose, unless through carelessness in setting. The fulcrum of the pedal is also set so as to allow the pedal, when depressed, to move away from the beater, and thus prevent a possible source of mischief.

In dealing with the better kinds of cotton another set of conditions comes into play. More regular results are required; the fibres are longer and more delicate, so the cotton is passed through the pedal motion, and from there it passes between a pair of feed rollers (Fig. 106), the speed of which in relation to the pedal roller is arranged to

produce a slight draft, and is brought into contact with the beater. Instead of being struck over a pedal nose, as in the first case, it is struck round the bottom roller, in this way minimising the possible damage to the fibres, and at the same time allowing the blow to draw out the cotton instead of breaking it from the grip of the rollers. Carelessness in respect to accurate setting of the pedal in Fig. 105 or the feed rollers in Fig. 106 leads to enormous

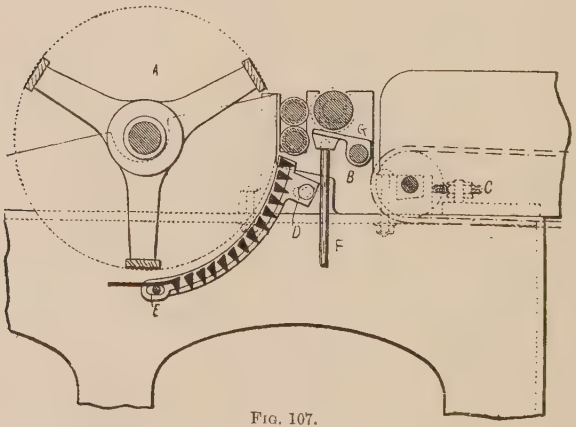


Fig. 107.

damage to the material. This will be very obvious when it is understood that every inch of cotton receives a very large number of blows of a very severe character, so it will be apparent that every effort must be made to confine this extreme action to the special work it has to perform —viz. opening and cleaning. Many evils result also through faulty setting. Cat-tails are formed, which are corded portions of cotton, made so by an unusual length of cotton hanging from the rollers, and the high speed of the beater

in striking it as it passes causing it to instantly curl itself into a stringy condition. The cotton, again, is crushed if the rollers are set too closely, and their strength very materially lessened. A delicate adjustment of the pedals is essential, the whole series being arranged on a knife edge, so that any irregularity is compensated for immediately.

In Figs. 107 and 108 the feed mechanism is slightly different from the previous ones described. Here a varia-

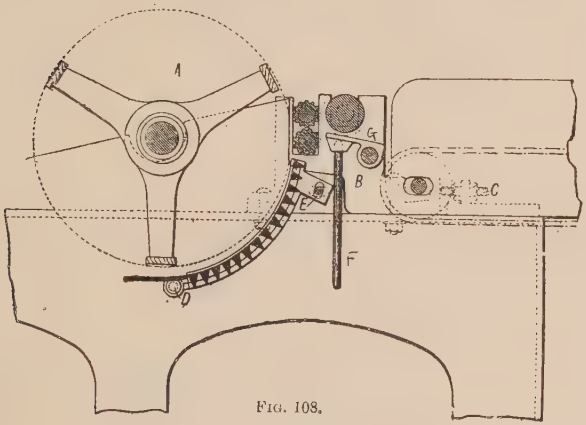


FIG. 108.

tion of pedal is shown which serves the same purpose for regulating. The adjustment of the feed rollers is made through the setting screws C, and as the beater bar supports are carried by the pedestal, one adjustment sets both rollers and bars.

Fig. 109 exhibits the feed arrangements adopted by a large firm of machine makers: (*a*) is for long staple, (*b*) for medium, and (*c*) for short fibred cotton.

Fig. 110 shows a detail of the stripping plate D, the

bars C and the dust bars E between the beater and the cages.

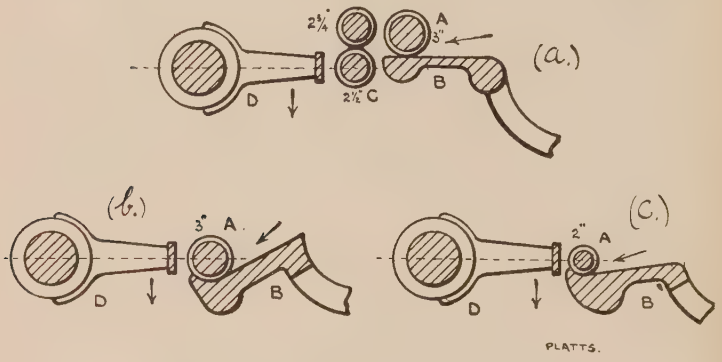


Fig. 109

The beater bars are further illustrated in Fig. 61. The

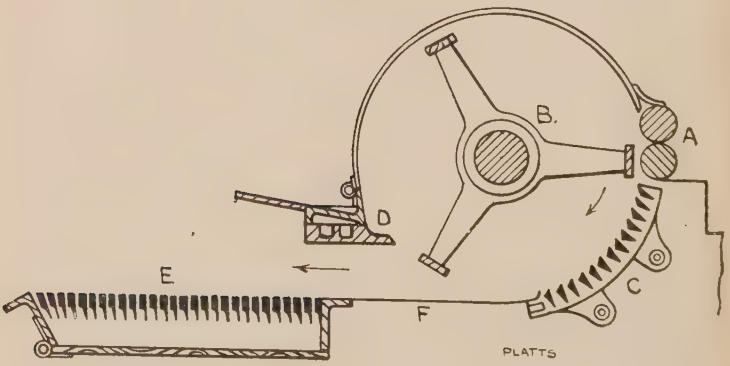


Fig. 110.

factor of bar adjustment is of importance, and we see in this example an arrangement for altering the inclination

of the bars. The adjustment is made from outside the framing, and a glance at Fig. 112 will show where the handle is placed for this purpose.

The drawing in Fig. 113 is, at first sight, an ordinary grate-bar arrangement, but it appears to meet with some favour, owing partly to a comb or needle fixture at S which

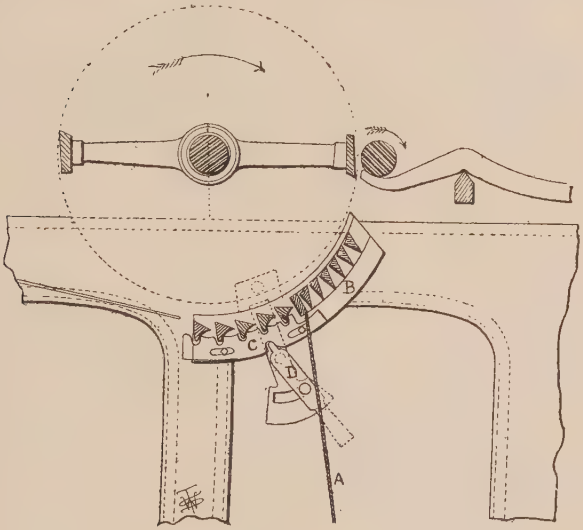


Fig. 111.

performs some species of combing action, and also the shape of the bars, the undercutting of which interferes with the currents of air which would otherwise blow back the dust, leaves, motes, and dirt which pass through them. The bars are supposed to be kept sharp, and the draught or air currents must be carefully regulated. Their shape enables more bars to be inserted in any given space than the ordinary wrought-iron or cast bars.

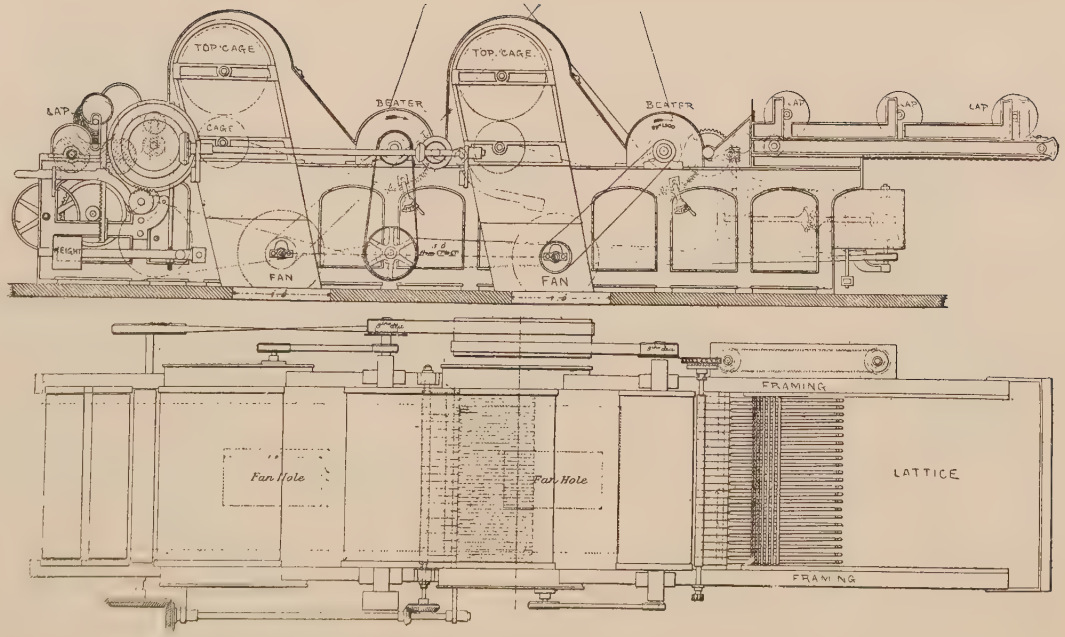

TOP CAGE
TOP CAGE
LAP
CAGE
BEATER
BEATER
LAP
LAP
LAP
WEIGHT
FAN
FAN
FRAMING
Fan Hole
Fan Hole
LATTICE
FRAMING

Fig. 112.

A very interesting method of obtaining better opening and also improved regulating is exhibited in Fig. 114. A pedal B is centred on the knife rail C, and fits the pedal feed roller D as usual. The beater strikes the cotton also as usual, but as the pedal is not used at all for regulating purposes it can be set much better for any given fibre than

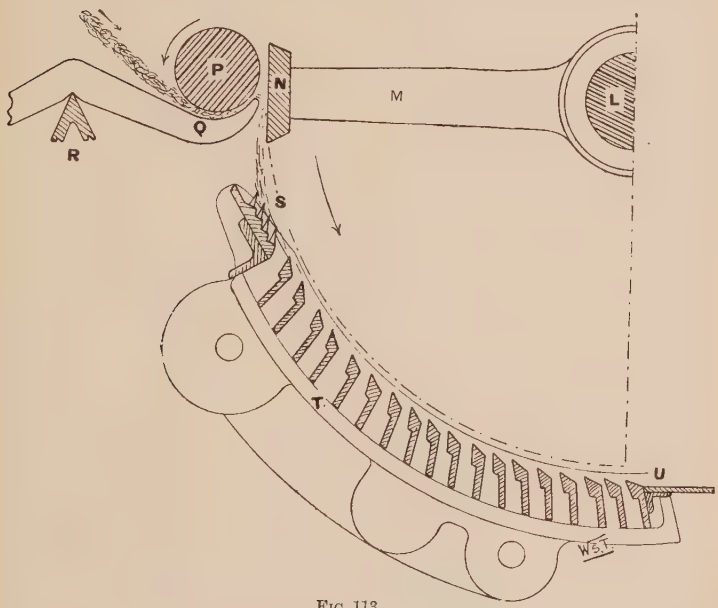
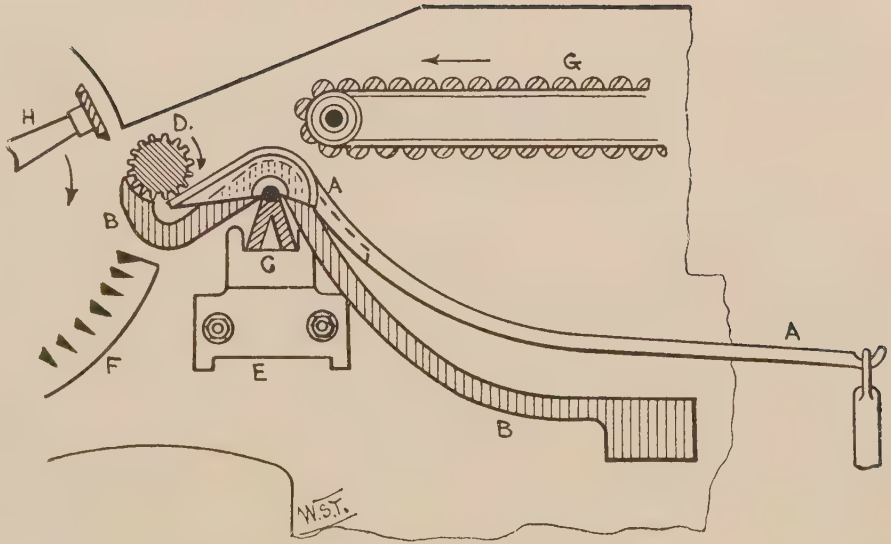


FIG. 113.

the usual pedal; moreover, it being simply weighted as shown, it offers the desired grip to the cotton. So far there is nothing special in this pedal; but it will be noted that another pedal, A, centred on the same knife rail and fitting over the first one, but touching the pedal roller somewhat in front, permits of the cotton being gripped



Howard and Bullough's Patent.
FIG. 114.

at two points on the feed roller. The effect of this is to prevent the cotton being dragged out in tufts, and thus ensuring a better opening of the cotton. Incidentally, since the first pedal, A, over which the cotton passes, does the regulating, there is a small interval of time allowed for moving the strap before the cotton reaches the beater; this is important, for it means better regulating.

In considering the question of the beater used in the opener and scutcher, it is usual to leave the matter in the

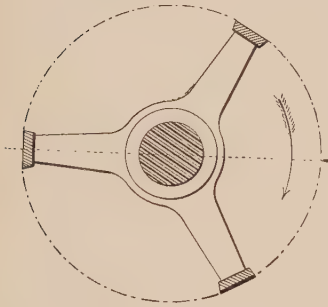


FIG. 115.

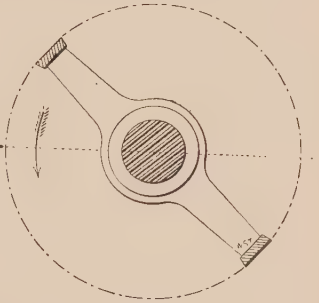


FIG. 116.

hands of the owner of the machine, on account of the great divergence of opinion prevailing as to the advantages or otherwise resulting in the use of a two- or three-bladed beater. A general idea of the question will therefore be given, and a sketch of the two kinds is shown in Figs. 115 and 116. It will be observed that each beater is the same diameter (16 in.), and also that they are strongly made. The blades running across the width of the machine are made of steel, and are firmly riveted to three or four sets of arms keyed on the shaft. Each edge of the blade is bevelled in order to strike the cotton clearly. The amount of the bevel is

not, however, sufficient to have a cutting action on the emerging cotton. As the edge is dulled through continual usage, it is now usual to reverse the beater when this happens, both ends of the shaft being made alike for this purpose; this brings the other bevelled edge of the blade into use.

The specification of the beater has already been remarked, and from what was said the idea would be conveyed that the force of the blow given to the cotton was a very important factor. Now, we must recognise that the force of a blow depends upon two things—the weight of the object dealing the blow, and also its velocity; and, in respect to this, the dependence is not on the velocity in a proportionate sense, but upon its square. To give an illustration, this means that a blow struck by something moving at two feet per second would be four times more forcible than if the velocity was one foot per second.

In comparing the illustrations we see clearly that the three-bladed beater is the heavier one; so that if both are running at the same number of revolutions it will not only give 50 per cent, or $1\frac{1}{2}$ times, more blows, but each blow will be more forcible than the blow given by the two-bladed beater, and this for two reasons. One is, the increased total weight just mentioned; the other demands a little more advanced knowledge to understand thoroughly. It may be briefly stated thus:—In all revolving bodies there is a position, somewhere between the centre and the outside, where the total weight of the moving body may be said to be concentrated. In the beater, for instance, there is the weight of the shaft, the boss, the arms, and the blades; and while these component parts are revolving at the same speed, the surface speed or velocity is different

in each, and, as a consequence, their capacity for storing energy varies. Now it is quite possible to conceive a point between the blade and the centre where the total weight might act, so that the total energy resulting from this position would equal the energy of all the various portions added together. This position is usually called the centre of gyration, and it is not a difficult matter to see that the heavier three-bladed beater will have its centre of gyration further from the centre of the shaft. This results in a higher surface velocity, which increases the force of the blow in the proportion already shown. To neutralise this action the speed of the three-bladed beater is generally reduced, while in some machines it is both run at a slower speed and made of a larger diameter than the two-bladed machine. It is an easy matter by varying the conditions to make the action of each form of beater practically alike, and, as a matter of fact, in most cases the advocates of the respective beaters think them the best, because the conditions under which each is working are bound to result in giving nearly identical results.

It is almost unnecessary to point out, after what has been explained above, that the greater part of the difference of opinion is the result, to a large extent, of a misconception of the principles involved. At the present time the three-bladed is decidedly in favour, and deservedly so. It lends itself to variation of speed more readily, and its slower speed is a very important feature in its favour. It possesses practically all that can be claimed for the two-bladed form, at the same time working without vibrations, and being easily and perfectly balanced. The opening and cleansing actions of the beaters are derived from the rapidly repeated blows striking the cotton

away in small tufts and dashing them against the grate-bars, which are arranged for about a quarter of a revolution, and, starting near to the feed, the dirt is driven out between them and falls into a suitable chamber. It may be remarked that the chambers into which the dirt from the openers and scutchers is deposited require frequent cleaning—once a day, at least, being necessary.

In choosing a machine it should be a point to see that the doors are large and convenient for cleaning out the machine easily and quickly, also that each grate-box can be easily opened so that the dirt within will be tipped out completely, and then closed tightly without difficulty or requiring skilled labour.

The percentage of waste in the scutcher varies according to the class of cotton, but about 1 to 2 per cent is the usual amount. An improvement has been effected recently in the direction of making the beater perform a species of combing action, which ensures the cotton, as it is delivered to it, being thoroughly broken up. Lumpy or stringy cotton is almost eliminated by this means, and, as a consequence, the work of the card is relieved considerably. Fig. 117 shows a section through the beater referred to. It consists of three arms in sets; wooden lags containing steel tempered pins are fixed to these arms; the pins can be varied, both in length and number, according to the work required of them. Their action in taking the cotton from the roller is clearly seen in the sketch, and there is no doubt whatever of its superiority, in opening the cotton, over the ordinary form. Its cleansing power is, however, deficient in the dirtier classes, as its combing action has not the effect of dashing the material against the grate-bars to the same extent that the bladed beater has.

The cages are generally arranged so that the top one is the larger of the two, with the object of permitting the current of air to drive the cotton upon it. The bottom cage is left comparatively free, so that dust and very fine fluff can fall upon it and be taken on to the dust chimney. The top cage also serves this purpose of carrying away the fine impurities that are sufficiently loosened to enter the cage through the wire or perforations. This arrangement

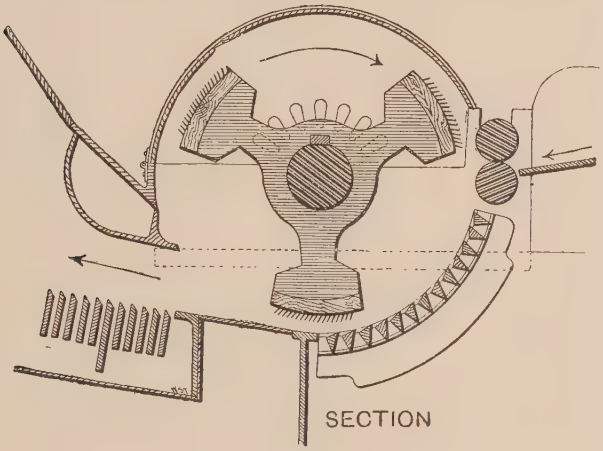


FIG. 117.

of the cages has another advantage of even greater importance. If the cotton were deposited equally on each cage there would be two layers, and although they are combined in going between the cages, a strong tendency always exists to separate, especially when being unrolled behind the card. On leaving the cages (Fig. 118) a pair of cage feed-rollers A conduct the cotton forward to the lap end. This feature of all modern scutching machines is rendered necessary because of the loose condition of the

fibres preventing the perfect separation of one layer from another if made into a lap when in this state.

To overcome this difficulty the cotton is passed between

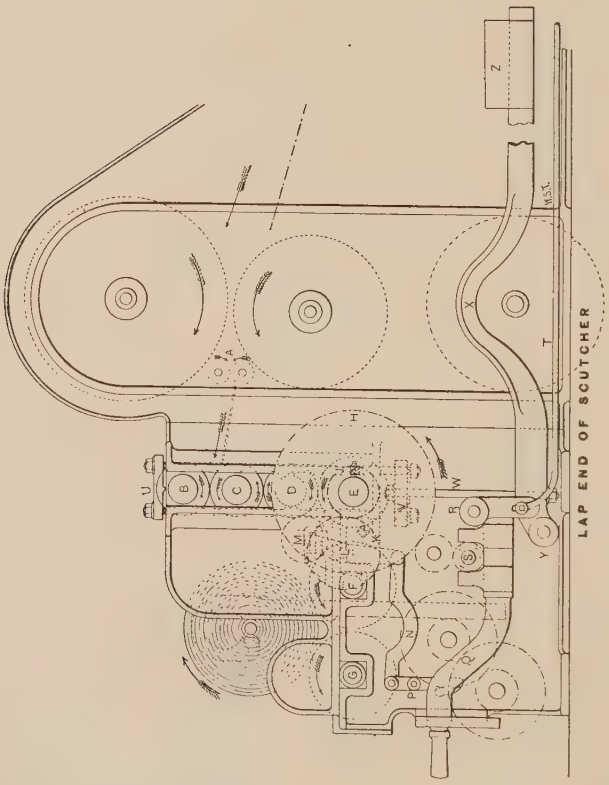


FIG. 118.

heavily-weighted rollers B, C, D, and E, called calender rollers. In this way the fibres are pressed into a more level condition. On leaving these rollers it goes forward, and is wound round what is called a lap roller. This roller

is weighted heavily by a friction arrangement, and rests upon two large fluted rollers F and G, whose revolution causes the lap roller to revolve, and in doing so it winds on the sheet of cotton as it comes from the calender rollers. The lap, as a consequence, is very compact. When the lap is made of the required weight, say 30 lb., it is usual to have some device on the machine to automatically stop the feed part. An arrangement for this purpose is shown in

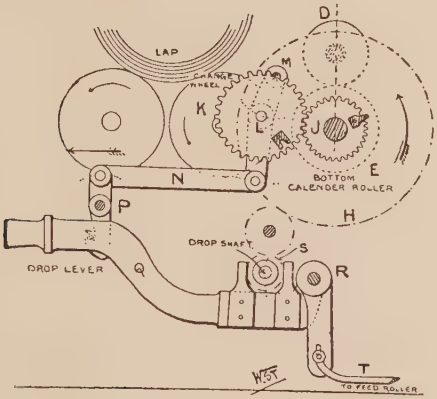


Fig. 119.

Fig. 118, and belongs to that feature in mechanics known as the Hunter cog. The length of the lap or, what is the same thing, the weight, depends upon the number of revolutions of the bottom calender roller E. To make the arrangement clear, a detailed drawing is given in Fig. 119. On the end of the bottom calender roller E is fixed a wheel J (43 teeth), gearing into a wheel K (various wheels, 62 teeth as a rule) mounted on a lever whose fulcrum is at M. The number of teeth in J and K is so arranged that the same teeth in each wheel come together only after a

definite number of revolutions of E. A projection is made on one wheel and a recess on the other, in such a manner that when the same teeth come into gear again the projection, fitting into the recess, moves the wheel K out of gear; the lever L, upon which K is mounted, is connected by a link N to a catch lever P; the movement is communicated to this lever and releases the catch, and thus permits the drop lever Q, whose centre is at R, to fall. In doing so the wheel S, which drives the bottom calender

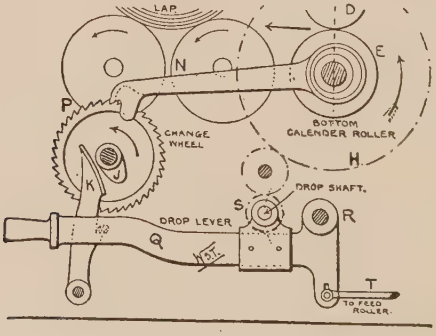


FIG. 120.

roller, is taken out of gear and so stops the lap end. At the same time a projection on the drop lever Q has connected to it a rod T, which by means of levers put the catch box out of gear on the feed pedal rollers, and so the feed of the machine is also stopped. In starting another lap it is simply necessary to lift the drop lever, when everything is put back ready for working again.

Fig. 120 gives another method of a full lap stop motion. An eccentric on the bottom calender roller, acting through the arm N, revolves the ratchet wheel P. A projection or cam J on P will push the lever K aside and release the

drop lever Q, and so throw the wheel S out of gear. Here we see that the number of teeth in the ratchet wheel P represents the number of revolutions of the calender roller that goes to make a full lap. By increasing P we make a heavier lap, and conversely. The small sketch in Fig. 121 serves a similar purpose; a worm "j" on the bottom calender roller drives a worm wheel "k" on a side shaft; a wheel "l" on this shaft drives a wheel "m," on which is a pin or stud which during a revolution pushes a catch lever aside and allows the drop lever to fall, thus taking the drop wheel out of gear.[1]

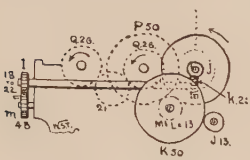


FIG. 121.

The sketch (Fig. 118) also shows the weighting arrangement of the calender rollers, as much as 1500 lb. pressure being attainable with the weight usually sent with the machines.

It is as well at this point, before passing on to the gearing, to say a few words on the fans and the current of air they produce. The whole subject, however, is very vague, and little has been done from which we can determine beforehand the result of any given set of conditions. Experience points to the fact that a large fan running slowly gives better results than a smaller one running much more quickly. A remarkable feature, in this connection, is the low efficiency of the fan, for its work is of a light character, and yet its size and speed would seem qualified for performing a much more difficult operation. The efficiency never exceeds 30 per cent, and is often as low as 10 per cent. This means that the fan is only

[1] The calculations for these stop motions are fully treated in the author's book on *Cotton Spinning Calculations*.

capable of doing from 10 to 30 per cent of useful work. With this ignorance prevailing, it is not surprising that a large amount of haphazard work is the result.

Fans are generally made with straight vanes or arms, although this is contrary to the principle underlying its action. The reason for the practice is said to be the cheapness in making them, and also that the inertia (or weight) of the air can be ignored. Neither one nor the other are satisfactory reasons, especially when we know

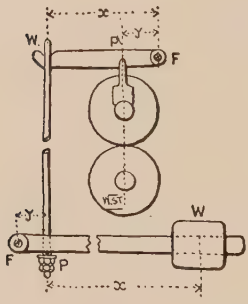


Fig. 122.

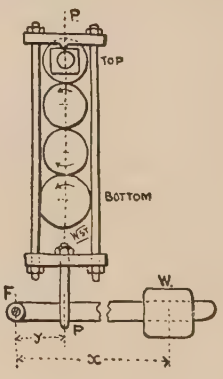


Fig. 123.

that the successful working of an opener and scutcher depends to a large extent on the action of the fan. The outlet to the fans, or the passages along which the air is forced after leaving the machine, must be of a form calculated to allow perfect freedom for the moving air. Sharp corners, abrupt turnings, narrow passages, etc., must be avoided; if not, complications ensue, such as back-pressure, chopping of the air, and partial neutralisation of the fan's action.

Figs. 122 and 123 are given to illustrate two systems of weighting the calender rollers of the lap end.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The Pedal Motion.—In order to prevent the pedal motion being considered a perfect arrangement for obtaining a regular feed and the production of a regular lap, it is advisable to supplement the remarks made earlier in the book.

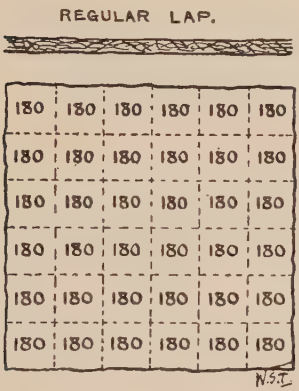


Fig. 124.

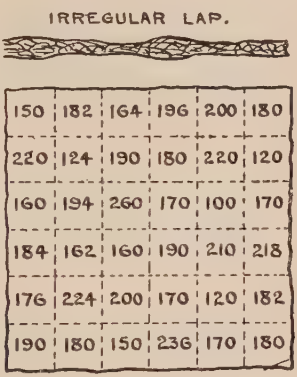


Fig. 125.

The pedal system is one that clearly enables a fairly equal distribution of cotton lengthwise in a lap. The explanation already given will prove this, but an examination of the diagrams in Fig. 126 will clearly demonstrate that any alteration in the speed of the pedal roller, brought about by the cone drums, will not make the slightest alteration in the relative thicknesses of the cotton over each pedal along the width of the machine. For instance, A shows a normal and regular feed with no irregularities. B shows too thin a feed but regular in

thickness ; the pedal roller would be run quicker to rectify the thinness of the feed and so a normal weight would pass forward. C is also regular but too thick, and consequently the pedal roller would run slowly in order to feed the normal amount. D shows half the width too

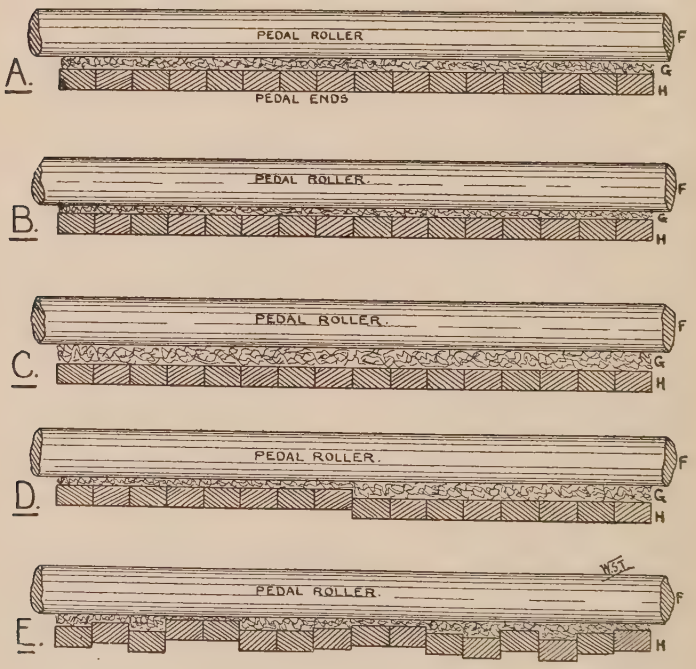


FIG. 126.

thin and half too thick, but since the average thickness is normal and equal to A, the pedal roller would not alter its speed from the normal. The irregular feed therefore as shown at D would pass forward to the cages and on to the lap in about the same condition as it emerges from the pedals. E illustrates a more natural

condition, the thin and thick places being irregularly distributed along the whole width of the machine. The average thickness, however, is exactly the same as at D and equals the normal thickness as at A; the pedal roller at E will therefore not change in speed, and so the whole of the thick and thin places will pass into the lap unaffected by the pedal motion.

It will thus be seen that whilst it is possible to make some given lengths of lap, with only say 8 per cent of variation, the pedal motion has practically little influence in producing any kind of regularity in the component parts of the lengths that may be tested.

Draft in Openers and Scutchers.—The question of *draft* is treated more fully in Vol. II. when dealing with the Draw Frame. It is necessary, however, to point out that, whilst draft in the scutcher is an actual draft in its total effect, there are important features of difference to be noted. In the first place, the cotton in the scutcher is in a very thick tangled condition; no attempt has yet been made to get the fibres into any kind of parallel arrangement, and consequently it would be practically impossible to try and draw them into a longer length beyond a very small amount. Any attempt to exceed a very slight draft between two parts of a scutcher will inevitably result in tearing the fleece apart either wholly or in part and so result in producing thin and irregular places. This will explain why no provision is made in openers and scutchers for changing draft except at one point, and it will also explain why an opener and scutcher, so fixed in its several drafts, may not act equally well on different cottons.

The total draft of the scutcher shown in Fig. 89, p. 150, is made up of the following drafts:—

A draft between the	lattice	and the	pedal	roller.
,, ,,	pedal roller	,,	feed	rollers.
,, ,,	cages	,,	feed	rollers.
,, ,,	cage rollers	,,	cages.	
,, ,,	calender rollers	,,	cage	rollers.
,, ,,	lap rollers	,,	calender	rollers.

We see that there are six places where draft occurs, and they are all fixed except the draft between the cages and the feed rollers. If the total draft were 4 and there is a draft of 2 between the feed rollers and the cages, then all the other five draft places would each have a draft of about 1·13. This is a small draft expressed in this way; it is sufficient to keep the fleece tight, but as it is 13 per cent of a draft it will be seen that if at any spot there is an exposed 10 inches of free length there will be draft or lengthening of $1\frac{1}{8}$ inches and this could easily be a tearing action on the fleece instead of a draft. All such drafts should therefore be kept as low as possible.

The alteration of draft would naturally be between the feed rollers and the cages, but even here it must be noted that the beater speed is fixed, and so any alteration of speed in the feed rollers, either quicker or slower, will result in the cotton being beaten less or more, and this may easily cause an appreciable difference in the character of the cotton on the finished lap.

This phase of altering the draft in the scutcher is of great importance when a light lap is being made from four heavy laps; in such cases there may be as much as eight of a draft and the greater part of it will be between the beater and the cages.

Actual and Calculated Draft.—When dealing with positive drives between rollers and gearing, calculations are of a

definite value, so that if a yard of material is put through a machine or sets of rollers and is delivered as six yards, then the draft is clearly six. If it is a positive drive that is used to effect this draft, then the calculated draft will be also six. Calculated draft is therefore a very definite thing and is an actual draft, indeed the only draft, for draft is concerned simply with a drawing out or lengthening process. A test for draft is to measure the length fed in and compare it with the length delivered, thus $\frac{\text{delivered length}}{\text{length fed}} = \text{draft}$. Now it happens that our system of numbering yarns gives us another method of testing drafts. Instead of length being used we may take the weight, so it is quite a common method of testing the draft by taking the $\frac{\text{hank fed}}{\text{hank delivered}} = \text{draft}$.

Under normal conditions the draft would be the same under both tests, but cotton, in passing through a process, may and does lose moisture, waste, etc., and therefore whilst the length draft is perfectly correct it may, and often does, happen that the hank draft is different simply because any loss on the way would result in a finer hank being delivered and so show a draft differing from the one calculated on a length basis. These two different drafts are usually spoken of as the "actual" and the "calculated" drafts. It would be much better to call them the *hank or weight draft* and the *length draft.*

Adjusting the Cone Drum Strap in Openers and Scutchers.— The following remarks will be based on the scutcher, though equally applicable to the opener. The cone drums are always constructed for a four-lap feed, and the normal or correct speed of pedal roller for feeding these four laps is so arranged by the gearing that the strap occupies the

centre line of the two cone drums. It is always advisable that this should be so, for then the pointer on the strap fork will indicate heavy or light feeding. It must, however, be clearly understood that the four-lap feed can be started by the strap being placed *anywhere* on the cone drums, provided the gearing will give the correct speed for the weight of feed required. The curves of the cone drums are of such a character that thinner or

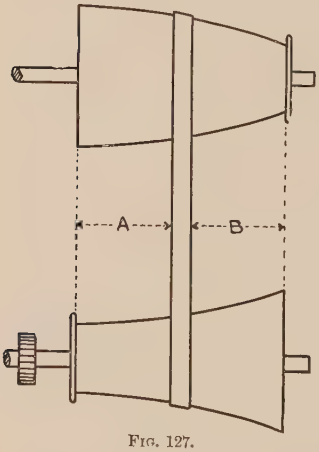


FIG. 127.

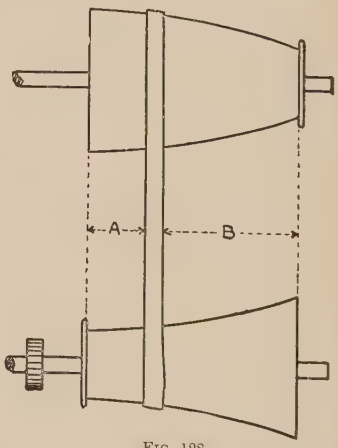


FIG. 128.

thicker feeds will be fed faster or slower respectively in the exact ratio, provided there is enough length on the cone drums on either side of the starting-point to deal with the possible changes of the thickness of cotton fed. This point must be made quite clear, so sketches are given in Figs. 127 and 128 to explain it.

In Fig. 127 the strap is in the centre of the cone drums, and there is room on either side at A and B to cover a wide range of variation in speed if required, such variation being in exact accordance with the requirements for a

thicker or thinner feed. Cone drums on various machines differ in the range with which they can deal, some having a 60 per cent, whilst others can only deal with a 40 per cent, variation on either side. In any case the curves give the correct speeds within their range of action. If we now start with the strap, as in Fig. 128, we must alter the gearing to give the correct speed for normal feed; afterwards the cones will vary the speeds correctly for variations of thickness. The point to note, however, is that there is a much smaller range, as shown at A, for increased thickness than there is at B for decreased thickness. It is, therefore, advisable to have the strap on the middle for every normal speed whatever number of laps are used.

A further point, and one of considerable importance, as it is the cause of much irregularity as tested by, say, the yard test, is due to a bad setting of the levers, etc., which couple the link motion or bowl rail movements to the strap fork. Fig. 129 will enable this to be readily explained. We will assume that the cone belt is in the centre of the cone drums, as at AA, when feeding four laps. Now it is an easy matter to calculate where the strap must be to feed at the right speed if a thickness equal to three laps happens to be passing through. This position is at C, so that we know the strap must move from A to C in order to adjust the speed correctly for the thinner three-lap feed. On the other hand, if a five-lap thickness happened to occur, then the correct place for the strap to move to would be BB, which is an equal distance from A as C is from A.

All cone drums used on openers and scutchers ought to have these positions marked most distinctly on them before leaving the works, but nothing of this kind is done,

so the adjustment of the levers, etc., is left to the fitter, whose work may or may or may not be correct, or, if correct, it may be altered subsequently. What commonly happens is that, if no cotton is going through, the strap can move to the extreme right of A. As a consequence of carelessness, therefore, it will be found in the majority of cases that when a three-lap thickness happens to be passing forward that the strap is moved to E, and for a five-lap thickness the strap's position is at D. It is readily seen that these positions will not regulate the speed of feed or pedal roller correctly for variations of thickness. In the case of the three-lap thickness too high a speed will be given to the feed roller, whilst for the five-lap thickness the feed roller will be driven too slowly.

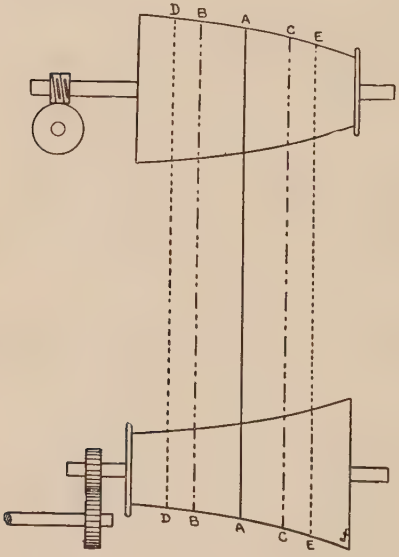


FIG. 129.

Under circumstances as described above it is not surprising that laps tested in short lengths show surprising irregularities. Such laps may and do in many cases show a fair regularity in long lengths and in the bulk, simply because in a long length the chances are about equal that the too-quick speed and the too-slow speed about balance

each other and so disguise very effectively a very real cause of irregularity.

A good practical man who understands his work will always first find the positions on his cone drums corresponding to certain thicknesses of cotton between the pedal and roller, and will use gauges for the purpose; such positions must be marked on the drums, not on the pointer indicator; the pointer has a habit of getting bent and distorted. The levers, etc., will then be adjusted to move the strap fork to these positions, and when all is firmly screwed up, tested and found right, then the levers should be safely locked up by padlock or other means, so that the adjustments cannot be tampered with by any one with a screw-key.

A little refinement, but frequently an important one, may be mentioned in this connection. All cone drums used on blowing room machinery are based on calculated data; this may be easily tested. It will be seen that no account has been taken of the difference of compression in the cotton between very thin and very thick feeds, and consequently some error exists on this factor and leads to too much reliance being placed on purely calculated cone drums and some practical factors being ignored.

For correct cone drums, it is necessary to find out the data associated with the compression of different thicknesses of laps, from one lap to say five laps thick, when all pressures are on. This will enable us to obtain the thickness of each under pressure. The results can then be used for calculating the shape of the cone drums, and a real improvement would soon be apparent from this alone. The cone drums of the flyer frames never have depended upon mere calculation of bobbin diameters. One can see at once that the layers wound on and near a hard wooden barrel are

under different conditions than those wound on diameters that are soft and yielding as the bobbin increases in diameter, and evidence would be quickly seen in the winding if the cone drums were based on each layer being alike; the compression of the cotton must be taken into account. In the blowing room our methods of testing and judging absolutely prevent the discovery of such matters as pointed out above, and the short cones with such a wide range of speeds render the problem a little more difficult than in the long cones of the flyer frame. However, this does not prevent the question being a serious item among those enumerated as responsible for irregularities in our scutcher laps.

Locking Motion for Scutcher Beaters.—Opening the cover of a beater whilst it is in motion, or starting the beater whilst the cover is open, present opportunities for serious accidents. All up-to-date scutchers are provided with safety appliances which prevent the beater cover being opened when the beater is revolving, and which prevent the beater being revolved whilst the cover is opened. A device for this purpose is shown in Fig. 130. Its essential feature is a locking peg. This peg can be moved by a lever into a hole in the cover end, the other end of the peg being free of the pulley flange. In this position the peg prevents the cover being opened. On the other hand, the locking peg can be moved outwards by the locking lever and into one of the holes in the flange of the pulley so that the cover is free, *i.e.* unlocked, and can be raised, but the peg now locks the pulley so that it cannot revolve. When the cover is opened to its fullest extent, the locking peg would be able to be moved so as to unlock the pulley (see Fig. 131). To prevent this, an extension piece or plate is fixed on the cover so that this plate acts as a stop to any movement of the locking peg when the cover is open fully.

It will be noted that any accidental or foolish movement

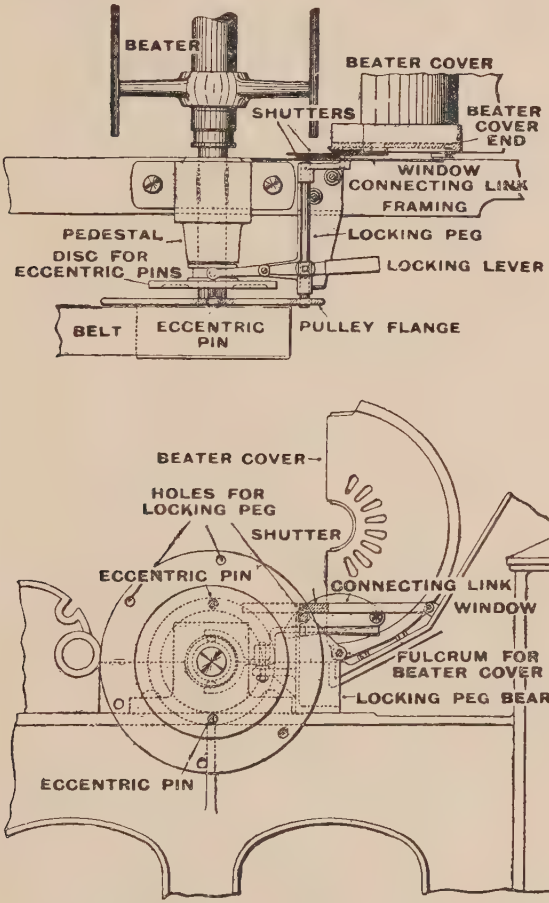


FIG. 130.

of the locking lever would cause the locking pin to press against the pulley flange, and there would be a possible

chance of the peg thus entering a hole in the flange and causing damage. To guard against this a disc is provided carrying a pin (eccentric pin on drawing) which fits into a

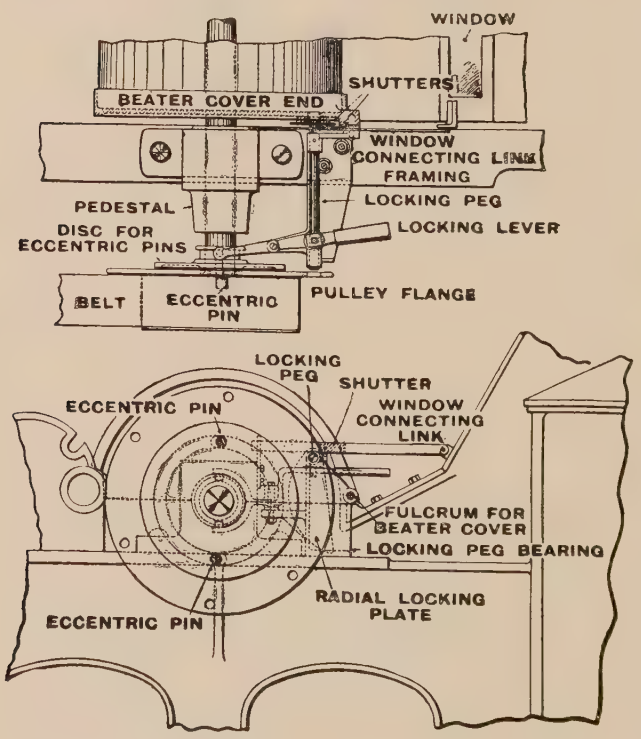


FIG. 131.

series of holes in the pulley back. As the pulley revolves there will be a pressure on this pin in driving the disc, so that any attempt to move the locking lever will meet with a resistance sufficient to prevent its movement. The window is coupled to this device so that it is also safeguarded.

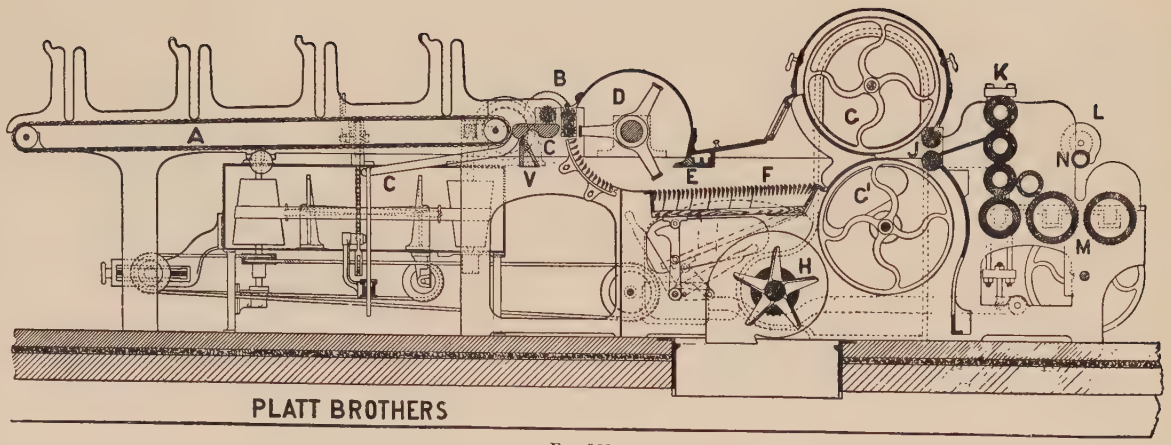


FIG. 132.

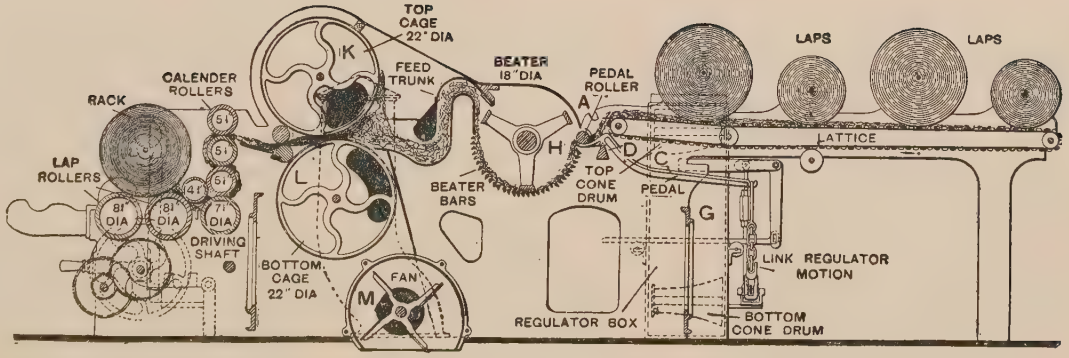

TOP
CAGE
22" DIA
K
FEED
TRUNK
BEATER
18" DIA
PEDAL
ROLLER
A
LAPS
LAPS
CALENDER
ROLLERS
RACK
H
D
C
LATTICE
LAP
ROLLERS
51
51
51
41
8½
DIA
8½
DIA
7½
DIA
L
BEATER
BARS
TOP
CONE
DRUM
PEDAL
G
DRIVING
SHAFT
BOTTOM
CAGE
22" DIA
FAN
M
LINK REGULATOR
MOTION
REGULATOR BOX
BOTTOM
CONE DRUM

Fig. 133.

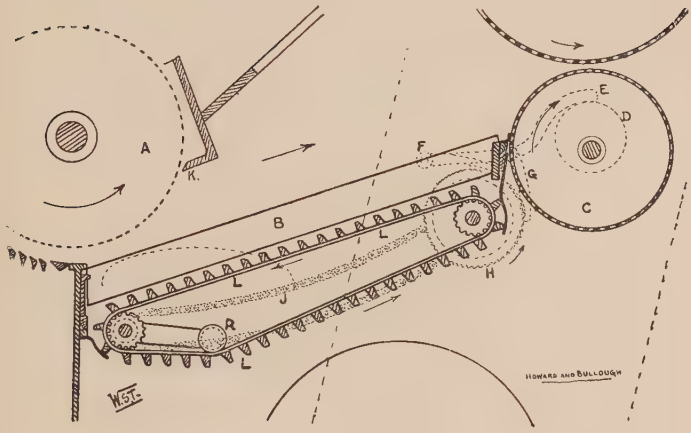


FIG. 134.—Travelling lattice for the removal of dirt.

An enlarged view is given in Fig. 135 of the cages and lap end of Fig. 72. It illustrates the cage dampers and methods of preventing stray currents of air. Its chief purpose, however, is to point out a method of testing the air-currents in the space between the beater and the cages.

Most openers and scutchers exhibit peculiarities in the behaviour of the cotton in passing to the cages; instead of a single current carrying the loose material straight forward, there is a floating effect and considerable hesitancy shown by the cotton before finally deciding where to go. In some machines this is a considerable source of difficulty, and unusual care is necessary in regard to open and closed doors and windows, direction of winds, working of other machines and the state of the barometer, etc., etc. It is, of course, all a question of air-currents and their strength.

A good fan is the first essential, one that is built on

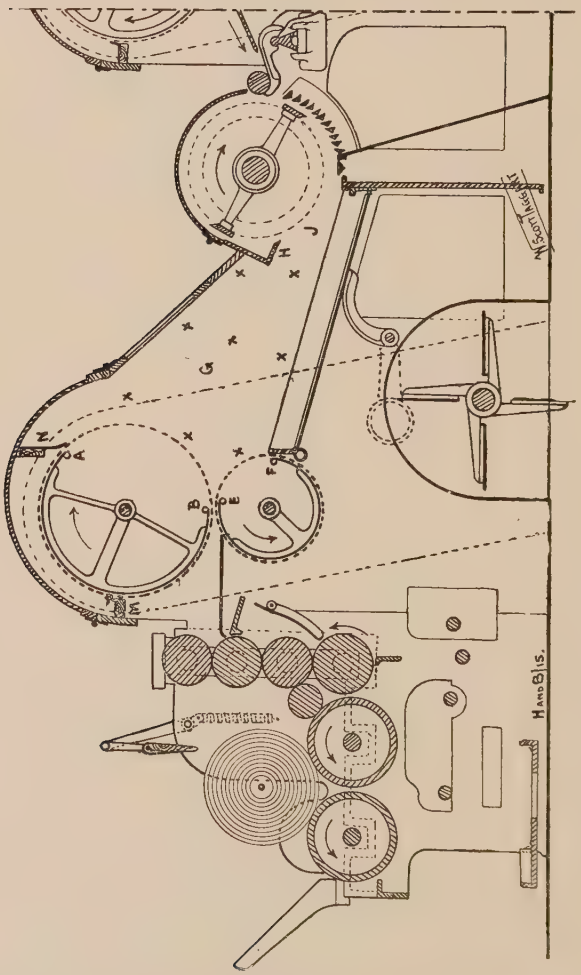


FIG. 135.

scientific lines; well-designed flues that are uninfluenced

by other flues from similar machines, is another important factor; the openings in the chimneys leading to the cages and a proper proportion between the top and bottom openings, so that cross currents are not set up, is a further element of success; but above all this it is advisable to know for oneself where the currents of air exist and their strength in the flues, cages, and air-passages from beater to cages. This can be done by using a gauge similar to that shown in Fig. 136, and inserting a tube that must be attached to D into flues, cages, and at the various points marked by XX in the passage or air space. The information thus obtained is definite as to the strength of the partial vacuum or pressure and the direction, and it will be a much more practical method of finding a remedy for difficulties than guessing the remedy or cause. Holes drilled in the framework sides will easily enable the pipe to be passed into the air spaces, and of course the flues can readily be tested at any point as well as the dust chimney. A permanent gauge ought always to be fixed on the dust chamber and dampers provided, so that adjustments can be made to maintain fairly constant conditions.

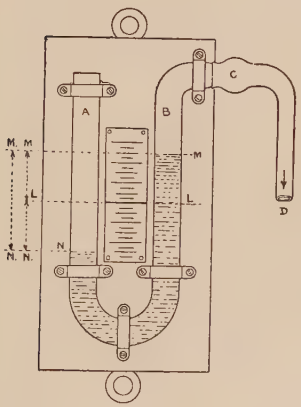


FIG. 136.

Introduction to Gearing Calculations

In entering upon a consideration of the gearing of cotton machinery, we are brought in contact with several of the most important methods of driving which the science of mechanics presents to us. They occur both in simple and compound forms, and are occasionally of such an apparently complicated nature as to acquire a more advanced knowledge of mechanics than the more elementary forms of gearing demand. As the reader's knowledge progresses it will be found that calculations form a very important element in the various processes, in order to bring the cotton from the bale into good yarn; so to make the calculations as clear as possible, an introduction of the principles involved in their working will be made, together with worked examples.

When two circular discs are pressed into contact with each other on their circumference, the friction between them will cause one to drive the other, if the two are equal in diameter they will move equally, so that a revolution of one circle will result in a single revolution of the other circle, and a movement of any portion of the circumference of one will equal a similar portion of the circumference of the other; from this we obtain two equalities; namely, equal revolution, or as it is termed, equal angular velocity, and equal surface speed.

It will be noticed that if calculations were made in connection with the two circles, we should require to know the circumference of the circles—to get this, all diameters must be multiplied by 3·1416, a number that is of the greatest importance to us; when this number is turned into a vulgar fraction of a simple nature we have it

expressed as $\frac{2}{7}\frac{2}{}$, and in this form it proves very serviceable both on account of its simplicity and its adaptability as an aid in cancelling.

If the circles have notches cut in their circumference at equal distances, and the resulting projection of one made to fit or gear into the recesses of the other, we obtain toothed wheels which drive each other not by friction but by leverage. The method of calculation, however, remains unaltered in regard to the dependence on the circumference, for when wheels are in gear the same number of teeth on each wheel occupies equal lengths on their surfaces.

Instead of having to work out the circumference of wheels, pulleys, etc., advantage is taken of the fact that 3·1416 is the common multiple of all diameters, and consequently it is usually left out of consideration, and the number of teeth or the diameter itself used instead.

As an illustration take the following: Suppose a wheel 12 inches diameter on the pitch line is divided by a wheel 6 inches diameter:

The circumference of 12 in. $= 12 \times 3{\cdot}1416 = 37{\cdot}6992$

" " 6 in. $= 6 \times 3{\cdot}1416 = 18{\cdot}8496$

$$\frac{37{\cdot}6992}{18{\cdot}8496} = 2 \text{ (\textit{Answer}).}$$

By arranging the figures as follows: $\frac{12 \times \cancel{3{\cdot}1416}}{6 \times \cancel{3{\cdot}1416}} = 2$

It will be seen that 3·1416 cancels out, as they neutralise each other, and it is unnecessary to go through long multiplication and division, as is done in the first case, when the result can be obtained in a much more simple manner.

In Fig. 137 we have a simple form of gearing consisting of two wheels A and B. If both wheels have the same number of teeth it follows that each will revolve equally;

but suppose A is the driving wheel and has forty teeth, whilst B is the driven wheel with twenty teeth; then if A turns once round, its forty teeth must have geared with forty teeth of B; but B's twenty teeth are insufficient in one revolution of itself, so it follows that more than one revolution of B has been performed. The exact number is found by dividing the forty teeth of A by the twenty teeth of B; this equals $\frac{40}{20} = 2$, so that for one revolution of A, B will revolve twice. If expressed in letters as a

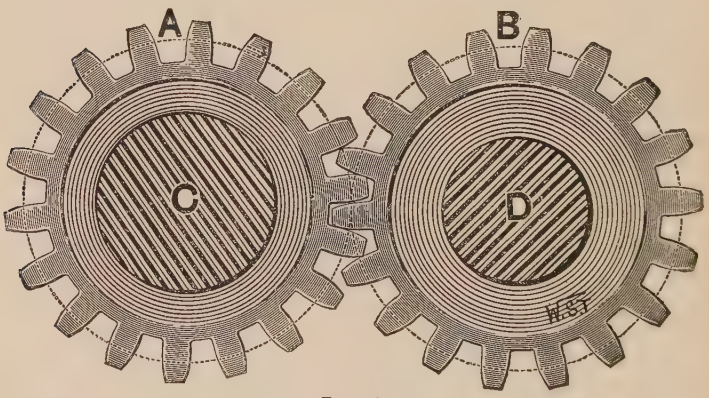


FIG. 137.

formula we should write $\frac{A}{B} = 2$; if expressed as a rule it would be: The speed of A multiplied by the number of its teeth, and the product divided by the number of teeth in B, equals the speed of B.

When B is the driver we have a small wheel driving a large one; so, as above, we divide the driver by the driven, which is $\frac{B}{A} = \frac{20}{40} = \frac{1}{2}$. This result means that A with forty teeth would only make half a revolution, whilst B with twenty teeth made a complete one.

Any number of individual wheels, each on its own axis, placed between A and B would not alter either of the above calculations; they would simply change the direction of rotation if arranged in odd numbers.

Fig. 138 presents us with a combination of wheels A, B, C, and D, and it will be noticed that C and D, introduced between A and B, are not on their own separate axis, but are on the same centre, and connected together, so that if one is moved the other moves also. Suppose A is the

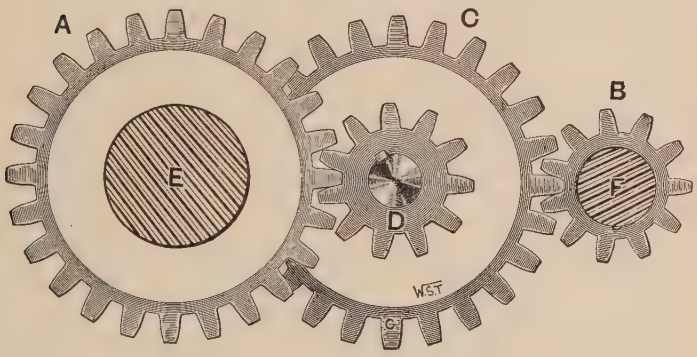


FIG. 138.

driver, then A drives D, and it will be noticed that C is driving B, so C is also a driver. D and B are simply driven wheels. If we proceed as before we should take these as two separate simple trains, but they are easily combined, for instance:

$$\frac{A}{D} = \text{speed of D and } \frac{\text{speed of D} \times \text{teeth in C}}{\text{teeth in B}} = \text{Speed of B}$$

This latter is expressed better when by using $\frac{A}{D}$ for the speed of C we get $\frac{A}{D} \times \frac{C}{B} = $ speed of B for one revolution of A.

An examination of this shows us that A and C—the drivers—are multiplied together, and their product divided by D multiplied by B, which are driven wheels. In other words we have multiplied the drivers together and divided by the driven wheels multiplied together.

It is imperative that in addition to the above method of finding the revolutions, we should know how to obtain the surface speed of any roller that is on the same axis or shaft as the wheel; to do this we must know the diameter of the roller as well as the number of teeth in the wheel; we can readily find its revolutions, if the circumference is therefore multiplied by this, the surface speed is obtained.

For purposes of draft we frequently want to know how much quicker the surface speed of one roller is than another; this is done by finding the surface speed of each, and dividing one by the other. Example:—In Fig. 138 let A = 40 teeth; D = 15; C = 30; B = 20; the diameter of the roller E = $1\frac{1}{2}$ in., and diameter of F = 1 in., the problem is to find how much quicker or slower the surface speed of F will be compared with that of E. A will be the driver.

First find the revolution of B for one of A.

$$\frac{A \times C}{D \times B} = \frac{40 \times 30}{15 \times 20} = \frac{1200}{300} = 4 \text{ revs. of B.}$$

Next find the surface speed of E.

$$1\tfrac{1}{2} \text{ in.} \times 3{\cdot}1416 = 4{\cdot}71.$$

The surface speed of F = $4 \times 1 \times 3{\cdot}1416 = 12{\cdot}56$ in. Now $\frac{12{\cdot}56}{4{\cdot}71} = 2{\cdot}66$, so that the surface speed of F is 2·66 times quicker than E, or there is that much of a draft between them.

The above is a long process, but it is the foundation of the method generally adopted. It is usually expressed as a formula where instead of working out each step as above, the whole is combined as follows :—

$$\frac{A \times C \times \text{diam. of } F \times 3{\cdot}1416}{D \times B \times \text{diam. of } E \times 3{\cdot}1416}$$

This can be made more simple by cancelling out the 3·1416; the worked example by the formula is now given :

$$\frac{40 \times 30 \times 1 \text{ in.}}{15 \times 20 \times 1\frac{1}{2} \text{ in.}} = 2{\cdot}66$$

which is the same result as found above.

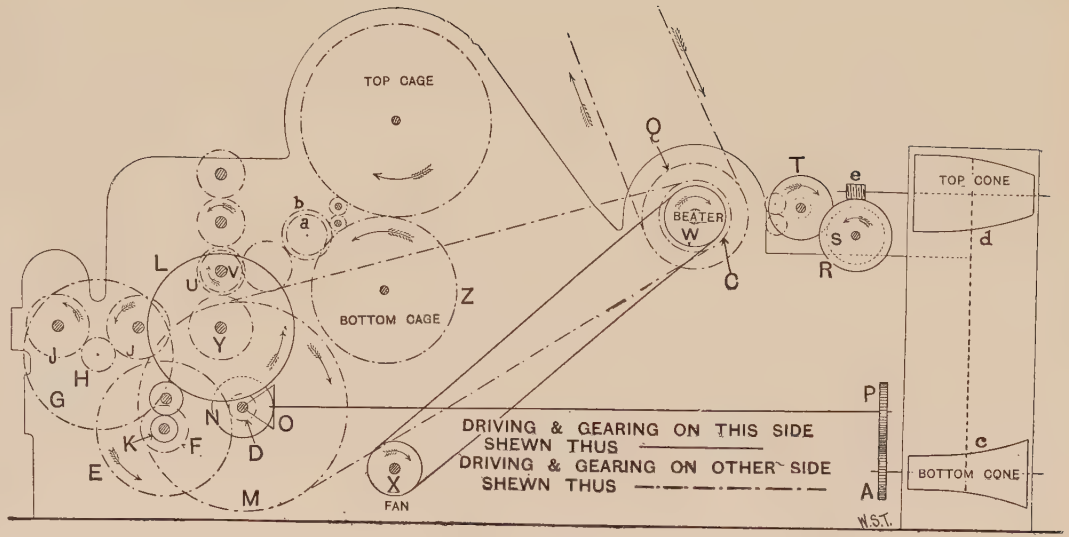
When a single worm is introduced in any gearing arrangement, it must be considered as a wheel with one tooth; if a double worm, as two teeth. When dealing with driving by belts, we proceed as above; but instead of teeth being used, the diameters of the pulleys are used in their place.

Calculations.—We will now devote some space to the subject of the driving and gearing of the scutcher.[1] It is a phase of the subject with which all who are connected with cotton spinning ought to make themselves thoroughly familiar, not only in this particular machine, but in all the machines used in the process. It is also one which demands a little more mental development than a mere knowledge of the construction of the machine. It is not to the credit of those in authority that hitherto calculations relating to our subject have been presented in a form that proves only too clearly the poor opinion writers have of the extent of

[1] The author's book, *Cotton Spinning Calculations*, contains full calculations and complete drawings of the gearing of the various machine makers' openers and scutchers.

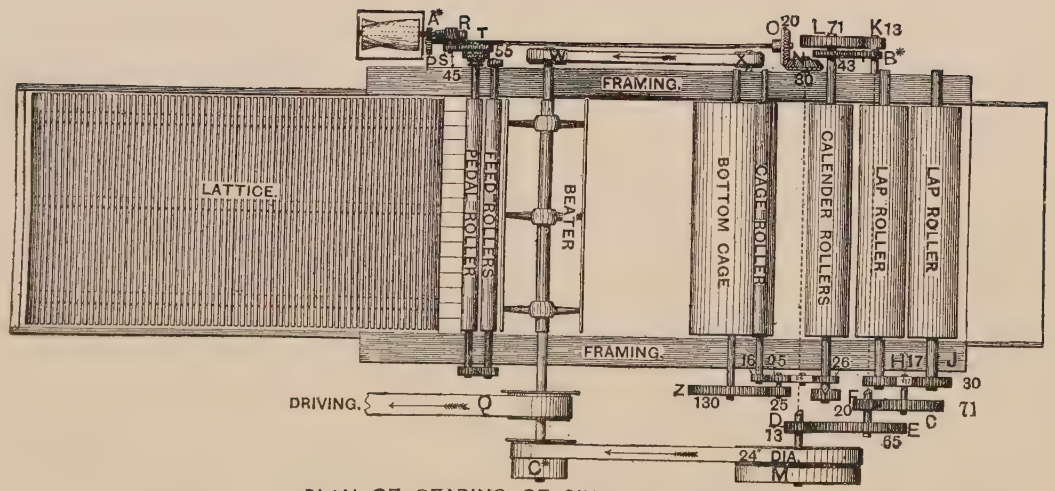
their readers' arithmetical knowledge, yet, even with the low standard it has been necessary to adopt, only a small percentage are found capable of profiting thereby. The requirements for the higher success in the examinations in cotton spinning, in the insistence of a knowledge of Applied Mechanics, is having a wonderful effect in raising the standard of our students, and of those in positions where a practical knowledge and its application is absolutely essential. This is the class to which the arrangement of the rules and calculations will most directly apply. Those of our readers unacquainted with the form in which they are given will be materially assisted by the table of wheels which accompanies them. But at the same time they are strongly advised to join classes, or to study the matter, so as to gain a knowledge of methods of calculations which will dispense with much of the rule-of-thumb work and the puerile style of calculating that is in vogue to a great extent at the present time.

In order that the following calculations can be easily followed and understood, two drawings, Figs. 139 and 140, are given, each one complete in itself. The first one gives the driving and gearing as seen in elevation, each side of the machine being represented by a different type of line. The latter drawing (Fig. 140) is a plan view, looking on the machine from above, and shows the disposition of the gearing very clearly as regards the relative positions of the wheels side by side. The same reference letters are used in both diagrams, and allusion to them in the rules will be made, not by their names, but by the various letters applied to them. From drawings like the ones shown, anything relating to the speeds can be readily found, and very little difficulty will be experienced in applying the



ELEVATION OF GEARING OF SCUTCHER

Fig. 139.



PLAN OF GEARING OF SINGLE SCUTCHER.

Fig. 140.

principle employed to other makes of machines than the one illustrated.

It will be observed that the direct driving of the scutcher takes place through the beater, Q being the pulley used for this purpose. On the same end of the beater shaft is a pulley C driving a large pulley M at the lap end. The shaft of this pulley practically dominates the gearing of the machine; the wheel D on it drives the entire lap end and cages, while the wheel N on the other end of the shaft transmits the necessary movement to the feed part. The machine as a whole can be run quicker or slower by changing the speed of the beater only, but portions of the machine can have their speeds altered to almost any extent by a change in the gearing at the point desired. The following table is given to enable the necessary calculations to be made :—

			No. of Teeth.
A	Bottom cone drum wheel changes the draft .	24-52, usual	24
B	Hunter cog wheel changes length of lap, various .	usual	62
C	Beater end pulley changes time of making lap, various	usual	7 in.
D	Bottom cross shaft wheel		13
E	Large wheel on drop shaft		65
F	Driving pinion for lap rollers		20
G	Compound carrier for lap rollers		71
H	,, ,, ,, ...		17
J	Lap or shell roller wheels		30
K	Drop shaft wheel		13
L	Bottom calender large wheel		71
M	Lap end pulley	diam.	24 in.
N	Driving bevel for regulating side shaft . . .		30
O	Driven ,, ,, ,, . . .		20
P	Regulator shaft wheel, 20-48 teeth . . .	usual	48
Q	Beater pulley, various, 12-16 . . .	usual	13 in.
R	Worm-wheel		65
S	Worm-wheel pinion		45
T	Catch-box wheel		55
U	Second calender wheel		21

		No. of Teeth.
V	Second calender wheel driving cages, etc.	26
W	Beater pulley to drive fan, various	usual 7 in.
X	Fan pulley, various	usual 7 in.
Y	Bottom calender small wheel	27
Z	Bottom cage wheel	116
a	Compound carrier driving cages, etc.	33
b	,, ,,	25
c	Bottom cone drum, various diams.	middle $5\frac{3}{4}$ in.
d	Top ,, ,,	middle $7\frac{1}{4}$ in.
e	,, ,, worm	Single
	Diameter of lap roller	$8\frac{3}{4}$ in.
	Diameter of pedal	$2\frac{1}{4}$ in.
	Revolutions of beater, various	say 1000

Since the beater is the starting-point in our calculations, it is advisable to know definitely its speed. This can be obtained in two ways, either by calculating it from the main line shaft and through the counter shaft, or by using an indicator. The use of the indicator is the readiest and best method, even when a watch is necessary, but by means of an indicator called "the Tachometer" the exact revolutions per minute of the beater are ascertained instantly without using a watch. This instrument is of inestimable benefit to the authorities in a mill, speeds from 300 to 12,000 being its usual range.

The speed of beater from the line shaft is found as follows:

(1) $$\frac{\text{Revs. of line shaft} \times \text{drum on line shaft} \times \text{drum on counter-shaft}}{\text{Pulley on counter shaft} \times \text{pulley on beater}} = \text{revs. of beater.}$$

$$\text{Ex.} \quad \frac{250 \times 32 \times 27}{18 \times 12} = 1000 \text{ revs.}$$

(2) $$\frac{\text{Rev. of line shaft} \times \text{line-shaft drum} \times \text{counter-shaft drum}}{\text{Revs. of beater} \times \text{dia. of counter-shaft pulley}} = \text{beater pulley Q.}$$

$$\text{Ex.} \quad \frac{250 \times 32 \times 27}{1000 \times 18} = 12 \text{ inches.}$$

The driving pulleys on shafting are generally called drums—the driven ones being known as pulleys.

To find the revolution of the pedal roller—

$$(3)\quad \frac{\text{Revs. of Q} \times \text{C} \times \text{N} \times \text{P} \times c \times e \times \text{S}}{\text{M} \times \text{O} \times \text{A} \times d \times \text{R} \times \text{T}} = \text{revs. of pedal roller}$$

$$\text{Ex.}\quad \frac{1000 \times 7 \times 30 \times 48 \times 5\frac{3}{4} \times 1 \times 45}{24 \times 20 \times 24 \times 7\frac{1}{4} \times 65 \times 55} = 8{\cdot}73 \text{ revs. per min.}$$

The above is based on the principle of multiplying all the driving wheels together and dividing the product by all the driven wheels multiplied together.

To find the length of cotton fed to the scutcher, the above product must be multiplied by the diameter of the pedal roller and by 3·1416, or $\frac{22}{7}$

$$\text{Ex.}\quad \frac{1000 \times 7 \times 30 \times 48 \times 5\frac{3}{4} \times 1 \times 45 \times 2\frac{1}{4} \times 3{\cdot}1416}{24 \times 20 \times 24 \times 7\frac{1}{4} \times 65 \times 55} = 61{\cdot}7 \text{ in. per min.}$$

To find the total draft of machine, obtain the surface speed of feed roller, and divide it into the surface speed of the delivery roller. In the scutcher with which we are dealing, the pedal roller and lap roller correspond to these parts. The surface speed of the pedal roller can be found from (3), while the following will give that of the lap roller :—

$$(4)\ \frac{\text{Revs. of Q} \times \text{C} \times \text{D} \times \text{F} \times \text{H} \times \text{dia. of lap roller} \times 3{\cdot}1416}{\text{M} \times \text{E} \times \text{G} \times \text{J}} = \text{surface speed of lap roller.}$$

$$\text{Ex.}\quad \frac{1000 \times 7 \times 13 \times 20 \times 17 \times 8\frac{3}{4} \times 22}{24 \times 65 \times 71 \times 30 \times 7} = 256 \text{ in. per min.}$$

If (4) is divided by (3) we get the result as follows :—

$$(5)\quad \frac{\text{D} \times \text{F} \times \text{H} \times \text{O} \times \text{A} \times \text{R} \times \text{T} \times d \times \text{dia. of lap roller}}{\text{E} \times \text{G} \times \text{J} \times \text{N} \times \text{P} \times c \times e \times \text{S} \times \text{dia. of pedal roller}} = \text{draft.}$$

$$\text{Ex.}\quad \frac{13 \times 20 \times 17 \times 20 \times 24 \times 65 \times 55 \times 7\frac{1}{4} \times 8\frac{3}{4}}{65 \times 71 \times 30 \times 30 \times 48 \times 5\frac{3}{4} \times 1 \times 45 \times 2\frac{1}{4}} = 4{\cdot}14 \text{ draft.}$$

This result can be obtained in another way. Assume the pedal roller to be the driver, and that it makes one revolution ; then by multiplying the drivers together and

the driven together until we get to the lap roller, and dividing them, we shall get this formula—

(6) $$\frac{T \times R \times d \times A \times O \times D \times F \times H \times \text{dia. of lap roller}}{S \times e \times c \times P \times N \times E \times G \times J \times \text{dia. of pedal roller}} = \text{draft.}$$

The top line indicates drivers, bottom line driven wheels, and when the number of teeth and diameters are substituted for the letters, the result gives a draft of nearly $4\frac{1}{2}$.

Ex. $$\frac{55 \times 65 \times 7\frac{1}{4} \times 24 \times 20 \times 13 \times 20 \times 17 \times 8\frac{3}{4}}{45 \times 1 \times 5\frac{3}{4} \times 48 \times 30 \times 65 \times 71 \times 30 \times 2\frac{1}{4}} = 4{\cdot}14 \text{ draft.}$$

There are two draft wheels, A and P, so that if a draft wheel is required for a certain draft, one of these wheels must be assumed; then work as follows if A is wanted—

(7) $$\frac{T \times R \times d \times A \times O \times D \times F \times H \times \text{dia. of lap roller}}{S \times e \times c \times P \times N \times E \times G \times J \times \text{dia. of pedal roller}} = A.$$

Ex. $$\frac{55 \times 65 \times 7\frac{1}{4} \times 4{\cdot}14 \times 20 \times 13 \times 20 \times 17 \times 8\frac{3}{4}}{45 \times 1 \times 5\frac{3}{4} \times 48 \times 30 \times 65 \times 71 \times 30 \times 2\frac{1}{4}} = 24 \text{ teeth.}$$

If P is wanted, then—

(8) $$\frac{T \times R \times d \times A \times O \times D \times F \times H \times \text{dia. of lap roller}}{S \times e \times c \times \text{draft} \times N \times E \times G \times J \times \text{dia of pedal roller}} = P.$$

Ex. $$\frac{55 \times 65 \times 7\frac{1}{4} \times 24 \times 20 \times 13 \times 20 \times 17 \times 8\frac{3}{4}}{45 \times 1 \times 5\frac{3}{4} \times 4{\cdot}14 \times 30 \times 65 \times 71 \times 30 \times 2\frac{1}{4}} = 48 \text{ teeth.}$$

To find the speed of fan—

(9) $$\frac{\text{Revs. of beater} \times W}{\text{Dia. of fan pulley}} = \text{speed of fan.}$$

Ex. $$\frac{1000 \times 7}{6} = 1166 \text{ revs.}$$

(10) $$\frac{\text{Revs. of beater} \times W}{\text{Speed of fan}} = \text{dia. of fan pulley.}$$

Ex. $$\frac{1000 \times 7}{1166} = 6 \text{ in. dia.}$$

To find the percentage of waste in scutcher—

(11) $$\frac{\text{Weight fed} - \text{weight delivered} \times 100}{\text{Weight fed.}} = \text{percentage of waste.}$$

Ex. $$\frac{100 - 98 \times 100}{100} = 2 \text{ per cent.}$$

To find the length of lap, take a length of several yards (say 5) and weigh it; then—

(12) $$\frac{\text{Weight of full lap} \times 5 \text{ yds.}}{\text{Weight of 5 yds.}} = \text{length of lap.}$$

Ex. $$\frac{30 \text{ lbs.} \times 5 \text{ yds.}}{3 \text{ lbs. } 2 \text{ oz.}} = 48 \text{ yards.}$$

The usual draft is 3 to 5, being generally equal to the number of laps doubled.

To find the velocity of bottom cage—

(13) $$\frac{C \times D \times K \times Y \times V \times a \times \text{dia. of } Z \times 3{\cdot}1416}{M \times E \times L \times U \times b \times Z} = \text{surface speed of cage Z.}$$

Ex. $$\frac{7 \times 13 \times 13 \times 27 \times 26 \times 33 \times 16 \times 22}{24 \times 65 \times 71 \times 21 \times 25 \times 116 \times 7} = 204{\cdot}3 \text{ inches.}$$

When an alteration is desired in the production of the machine, the pulley on the end of the beater-shaft, which is driven from the counter-shaft, must be changed; if a smaller one is put on, the production will be increased, whilst a larger one would give us a reduced output.

If the production for any given pulley is known, it will be an easy matter to find the production when a change is made, as it is a simple case of proportion.

For instance, if a 7 in. pulley gives 12,000 lbs.

Then a 6 " " $\frac{12{,}000 \times 7}{6}$

$$\therefore \frac{12{,}000 \times 7}{6} = 14{,}000 \text{ lbs.}$$

It is sometimes required to alter the weight of the complete lap without altering its hank; to do this the wheel B is changed, a difference of one tooth making

the lap heavier or lighter by the amount of the circumference of the bottom calender roller.[1]

The hank of the lap is also changed occasionally; when this is done the bevel wheel O is altered as required by the method of simple proportion.

Ex.: If a 20's bevel gives a lap of 12 ozs. to the yard,

Then a 24's " " $\frac{12 \times 20}{24}$

$$\therefore \frac{12 \times 20}{24} = 10 \text{ ozs. to the yard.}$$

The hank of a lap can also be altered by means of the draft wheels A and P in a similar manner to the above.

The following table represents the usual practice in regard to the weight per yard of laps from opener and scutcher when different classes of cotton are used:—

Cotton.	Opener.	Scutcher.
	Per Yard.	Per Yard.
Sea Island . .	13 ozs.	8 to 10 ozs.
Egyptian. . .	14 to 16 ozs.	10 to 11 ozs.
American . } Indian . . }	16 ozs.	13 to 14 ozs.

In order to facilitate calculations it will not be out of place to give briefly the method adopted of denoting the weights or measures in the cotton industry.

The table used for weighing is a combination of avoirdupois and troy weight, by this means the grains of the latter system enable very delicate differences in weights to be made.

[1] The weight of a lap can be found by multiplying the weight of a yard by the revolutions of the bottom calender roller into its circumference. (The number of teeth in wheel B represents the number of revolutions.)

TABLE OF WEIGHT

24	grains =	1	dwt.	0	grains			
$109\frac{3}{8}$	„ =	4	„	$0\frac{3}{8}$	„	=	$\frac{1}{4}$	ounce
$218\frac{3}{4}$	„ =	9	„	$2\frac{3}{4}$	„	=	$\frac{1}{2}$	„
$437\frac{1}{2}$	„ =	18	„	$5\frac{1}{2}$	„	=	1	„
7000	„ =	291	„	16	„	=	16	„

TABLE OF MEASURE

54 inches = 1 thread
4,320 „ = 80 threads = 1 lea
30,240 „ = 560 „ = 7 leas = 1 hank = 840 yards

An explanation of this table is desirable. A hank is the name given to the number of 840 yards there may be in a pound of lap, sliver, or yarn; if there is just 840 yards in a lb. the hank is one, if 12×840 yards the hanks will be 12s. and so on, so that if we know the weight of any given length we can easily deduce from it the hanks. It is not advisable in actual practice to measure off 840 yards of a lap, or sliver, or even yarn, so a shorter length is taken, and by means of a simple proportion sum we deduce the required hanks.

We can see from what has been said that if 7000 grains is divided by the weight of one hank (*i.e.* 840 yards) we shall get the hanks. Now when a smaller length than 840 yards is taken, for instance 120 yards, we only need divide by $\frac{1}{7}$ of $7000 = 1000$, and by taking a smaller length still the dividend will be proportionately smaller.[1]

[1] For instance, if 840 yards weigh 7000 grains,

Then 1 yard weighs $\frac{7000}{840}$ „

$\therefore \frac{7000}{840} = 8{\cdot}33$ grains.

So that if 1 yard weighs 8·33 grains we can find the hank by dividing it into 8·33, which equals one; or if the weight of a yard equals 12 ozs. or 5250 grains, we can obtain the hank in the same way by dividing it into the 8·3 opposite one yard in the table: $\frac{8{\cdot}3}{5250} = {\cdot}0015$ hank. When two or more yards are taken, the dividend into which the weight must be divided is increased as shown.

To save working out the hanks when short lengths are taken, the dividends in the following table may be used according to the length weighed :—

Yards.	Dividend.	Leas.	Dividend.
1	8·3	1	1000
2	16·6	2	2000
3	25·0	3	3000
4	33·3	4	4000
5	41·6	5	5000
6	50·0	6	6000
7	58·3	7	7000
8	66·6	...	...
9	75·0	...	...
10	83·3	...	...
15	125·0	...	...
20	166·0	...	...
30	250·0	...	...
40	333·3	...	...
60	500·0	...	...
80	666·6	...	...
120	1000·0	...	...

Dust Chimney.—The series of sketches given here show four different ways of laying out the dust passages to the dust chimney.

In Fig. 141 the room below the scutching room acts as a dust chamber with a connection to the dust chimney E. All the fans blow the dust into this lower chamber.

Fig. 142 shows the same machines. Canals A, B, C, from each scutcher connect into a large dust chamber D, under the opener. This chamber D opens into the dust chimney E.

Fig. 143 has a cellar below the blowing room; the scutcher dust trunks A, B, C, pass along the ceiling of this into a dust chamber D, partitioned off from the rest of the cellar. D is open to the dust chimney E.

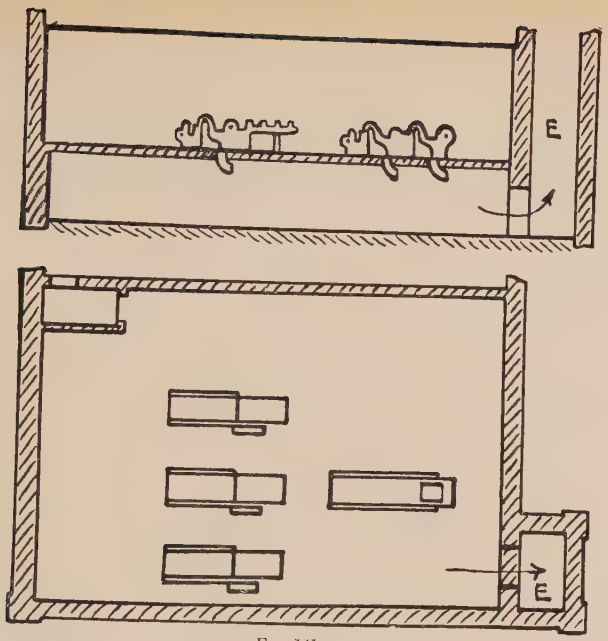


Fig. 141.

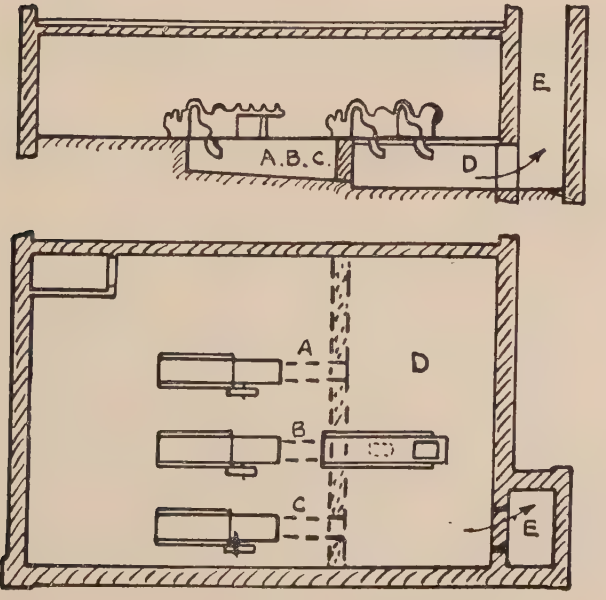


Fig. 142.

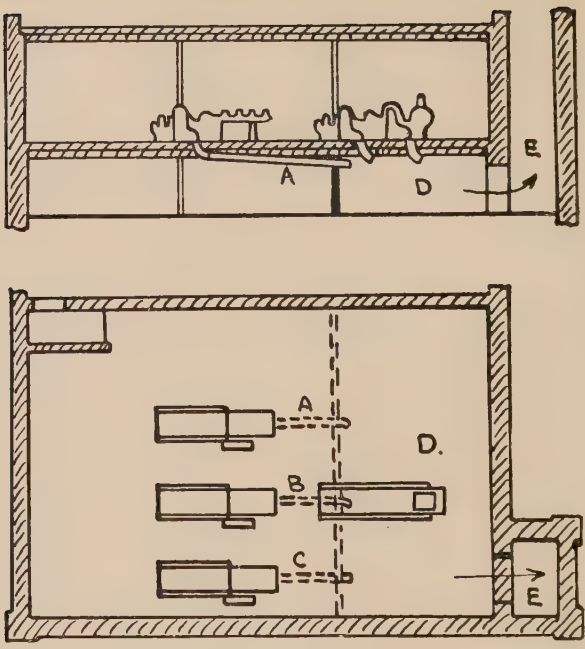


Fig. 143.

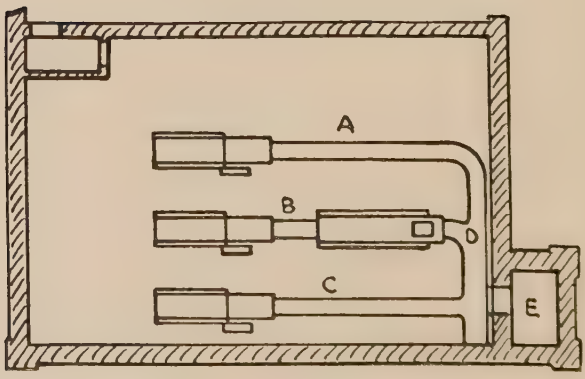


Fig. 144.

Fig. 144 is an arrangement of simple canals A, B, C, D, cut into the floor and covered up closely; they open out into the dust chimney E.

CHAPTER VI

CARDING

Up to this point we have dealt with processes whose objects have been to loosen the matted condition of the fibre and to drive out or eliminate a class of impurities which may be considered as foreign to itself; for instance, leaf, stalk, husk, broken seed, sand, etc. These are generally known as heavy impurities, and we have seen that a very severe treatment has been necessary in order to separate them from the bulk of the cotton. If, however, we examine a finished lap as it comes from the scutcher, we shall find that, in spite of what has been done, it is far from being satisfactory. A casual glance will show us that some of the heavy impurities are still mixed up with the cotton, their retention having been aided by an entanglement of fibres sufficient to have prevented centrifugal force driving them out. A closer investigation, moreover, will also disclose a state of things that it is important should be thoroughly realised if a comprehensive idea of carding is to be obtained. A few of the various appearances presented to us in this examination will be given, some of them, of course, requiring a microscope for their detection.

(1) *Small Masses of Stained Fibres.*—These result from several causes—moist foreign matter getting into the open pod and staining it; moths using the pod as a depository

for their eggs, which ultimately produce caterpillars; in passing through the gin seeds are crushed, the oil of which stains the cotton considerably; wet cotton, when packed, develops mildew, and stained cotton is the result.

(2) *Broken Fibres.*—The best-arranged gin will produce broken fibres, but a badly-set one does enormous damage in this respect. Opening and scutching is responsible for much of it. Many fibres are naturally weak and easily broken, and though their breakage is an accidental occurrence it is an advantageous one, as they are easily eliminated and prevented from reducing the strength of the yarn with which they would otherwise have been incorporated.

(3) *Short Fibres.*—Apart from broken fibres, there are a number of short fibres which are taken from the pod and grow close to the seed. Much of it is of a downy nature; all the fibres do not arrive at perfection at once, and these may be described as fibres which would be perfect if allowed a little longer to develop.

(4) *Immature Fibres.*—Over-ripe and under-ripe fibres are present. All pods contain a proportion of each. The former are dried and shrivelled, while the latter are full length, but have been plucked just before their walls have collapsed and the accompanying twist been given them through this action. Twist is therefore absent, and their cross-section is cylindrical. Dead plants, caterpillars, and insects prevent development of portions of a pod. The fibres are, as a consequence, imperfectly developed and brittle, lacking all the essential features of a perfect fibre.

(5) *Nepped Cotton.*—Small entanglements of fibres firmly knotted together, and incapable of being unravelled, are formed principally in the gin.

(6) *Crossed Fibres.*—The whole lap comes under this head. All the fibres are arranged in a mass, and kept together by

an accidentally and loosely woven condition of crossing and recrossing in every imaginable direction.

All the above-mentioned conditions, while being natural to the cotton, are decidedly against its use for the making of yarn. Hence the importance of the next operation, called carding, which practically frees the cotton from these imperfections, must be apparent, and upon its success in doing this depends the success of all future operations in the cotton mill.

Carding, like all the other processes in spinning, has grown from very primitive forms. Its evolution has, however, been very rapid, so that the steps in its development can be easily traced. It is unnecessary to do this here; for our present purpose it is sufficient to state that each improvement made has kept in view the one principle of separating each individual fibre and combing it in such a manner as to free it from both its foreign and natural impurities.

Innumerable patterns of cards were made twenty or thirty years ago, but to-day practically only one form survives, and is used throughout the cotton-spinning industry to the exclusion of all others. (This remark, of course, does not apply to waste spinning.) As many old mills are still using the cards that have worked for a good number of years, it will be as well to give a general idea of their form, and a description of their operations. Three types of machine will therefore be taken in order to give a clear view of the subject, and while the two older cards —the roller and clearer, and the stationary-flat or Wellman card—will be treated briefly, the card of to-day, known as the revolving-flat card, will receive a thorough examination and be fully illustrated.

The Roller and Clearer Card

The lap is taken from the scutcher and placed in the position shown at A, Fig. 145. It is the usual practice to rest it upon one or two wooden rollers B and C, when the friction caused by its weight enables it to be unrolled as the rollers revolve. On going forward it passes between a weighted feed-roller D and a dish plate E. Directly it emerges from these, a quickly-revolving roller covered with saw teeth, and called the taker-in (F), takes it round and brings it into contact with a large cylinder (G) covered with thickly-set wire, whose greater surface speed enables it to transfer the cotton to itself. The fibres now carried round are next brought into contact with a number of pairs of wire-covered rollers called rollers and clearers (J and K). In passing these a combining action is set up, which has a tendency to isolate the fibres and consequently clear them of their impurities. The first one or two rollers (H) are so arranged to serve the purpose of clearing a quantity of dirt from the cylinder, and are known as dirt rollers, though it must be understood that all the rollers perform the same function to a greater or less extent. After passing about half-way round the cylinder, a smaller and comparatively slow-moving cylinder, called the doffer (L), is met with. Upon this are deposited the carded fibres in a condensed form; from this they are taken by means of a quickly-vibrating comb M, and after being gathered together and passed through a funnel, go forward between a pair of rollers N to the coiler.

In order that a better idea of the special action of the roller and clearer may be obtained, a supplementary drawing, Fig. 146, is given. As the cylinder, with a surface speed of about 1600 ft. per minute, carries the fibres of

cotton round in the direction of the arrow, the inclination

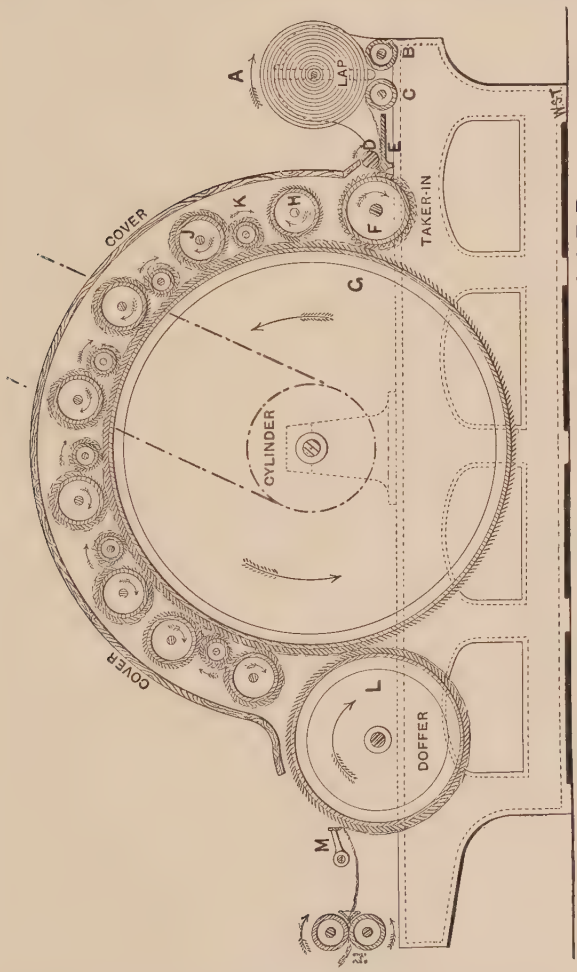
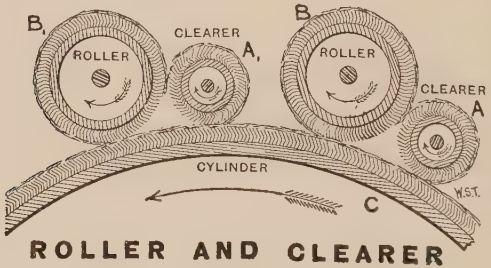


Fig. 145.

of its wire points will enable it to keep the fibres on its

own surface until some obstruction meets them. In passing the small roller or clearer A, whose surface speed may be about 400 ft. per minute, the cotton will naturally go forward uninterruptedly, especially as the wire teeth of A are inclined away from the direction of the motion of the cylinder. The revolution of A, although slower and in the same direction at their point of contact, aids the passage of the cotton, and if there were any cotton on the surface of A the quicker speed of the cylinder would easily take it forward. On arriving at the roller B, however, an obstruction is met with in a double form—first, its



ROLLER AND CLEARER

FIG. 146.

teeth are inclined against the direction of the cylinder; and, secondly, their movement is slow—about 20 to 30 ft. per minute.

Now suppose a small entangled mass of cotton comes round to this point; it is held by the teeth of the cylinder, and in passing B would be caught by the teeth of the roller. One of three things will now happen. Either the entanglements of the cotton on the cylinder teeth will yield, and in doing so will be combed out; or the entanglements on the roller teeth will yield and consequently be combed; or neither will yield, and so the small mass will

be torn asunder, the cylinder and roller each taking its own piece.

In the first case the cotton held by the roller B will be carried round until it meets the clearer A, whose teeth will easily free those of B from its fibres, and, as we have shown, these will in their turn be taken again by the cylinder as it passes A. This smaller entanglement is now in the same position as the entanglement of our second supposition, and they will go through more or less the same treatment in passing each roller until the doffer is reached.

We are now in a position to see the defects in this form of card. On looking at Fig. 146 it will be noticed that the roller B is almost in contact with the cylinder at what is practically a point. The teeth of B on either side of this point leave the cylinder, so that the fibres of cotton in passing have only two or three rows of teeth to meet them and help in combing them out. Such a small surface of teeth easily permits large quantities of the smaller entanglements to pass forward without being acted upon, and in this condition they are totally unfit for good work. This evil is aggravated by the fact that small as the working surface is, yet it is only repeated at intervals of 9 or 10 in. round about one half of the cylinder. The enlarged sketch shows very clearly the passage of the cotton. It must be observed, though, that the cotton on the roller or worker B is entangled cotton which its teeth have retained. The cylinder has not deposited it there in the same way as the cotton is deposited on the doffer, the speed of B being altogether too slow for that purpose.

The last remark must be thoroughly understood before leaving this part of the subject—First, because it is the essential feature of the machine, and secondly, because

several writers have presented it in their descriptions in a manner that has conveyed the impression that the clearer has the cotton deposited on it in the same way as the cylinder deposits the fibres on the doffer. If this were the case, as some writers state, no carding whatever could take place at this point, exactly in the same way that no real carding or combing can take place between a cylinder and doffer. Again, when the clearer takes the cotton from the roller, carding is also entirely absent, the fibres are attenuated in respect to each other, if they are loose enough to permit it, because of the greater speed of the clearer, but an entanglement on the teeth of the roller or worker remains an entanglement on the teeth of the clearer, and there is no action whatever between the two rollers that can possibly comb or card out an aggregation of fibres, any more than the cylinder can comb out any entanglement of fibres that may exist on the teeth of the taker-in. The very weakness of the card lies in the fact that such a small number of teeth are presented to the cotton as the cylinder carries it past the clearers. It is owing also to this that the roller and clearer card was almost always used for the rough work of the breaker card in double carding, and at present its use in the spinning of waste and low numbers permits a production where quantity occupies first place and quality is scarcely necessary.

The Revolving-Flat Card

We will now proceed to treat of the revolving-flat card, and, as this card will be dealt with very fully in detail, it is advisable at present to give merely an outline of its form as well as a general idea of its operations.

For this purpose a diagram (Fig. 147) is given, showing its chief features, and the following description will assist in conveying a knowledge of the process.

The lap A is placed upon a slowly-revolving roller B, and is unwound through the friction produced by its own weight. From here the sheet of cotton passes over the smooth surface of the dish-plate C, and on between the curved portion of this plate and the feed roller D. The slow revolution of this roller (about 7 inches per minute) brings the cotton into contact with the saw teeth of the quickly revolving taker-in E ($9\frac{3}{4}$ inches diameter; surface speed, 1000 feet per minute). It receives a very effective cleaning at this point, and the loosened fibres are carried round to the large wire-covered cylinder F, whose surface speed of double the amount enables it to take them to itself and carry them forward. Surrounding almost one-half of the cylinder F is a series of what are generally termed flats, G, set very close to the wire of the cylinder, and covered also with similar teeth. Their movement is extremely slow (about 4 inches per minute), and in the same direction as the cylinder. They offer, therefore, a large and almost stationary combing surface to the fibres of cotton as they are brought round, and give this machine an immeasurable advantage in its cleaning power over the previous machine. The carded cotton is now transferred to the doffer H ($24\frac{3}{4}$ inches diameter; surface speed about 78 feet per minute), from which it is stripped by the comb J, and after the resulting web is gathered together at the calender rollers K, it is taken on and placed in the coiler L by suitable mechanism.

In dealing with the details of the card, the first feature to receive attention will be the feed part. Formerly it

consisted simply of two feed rollers, which carried the

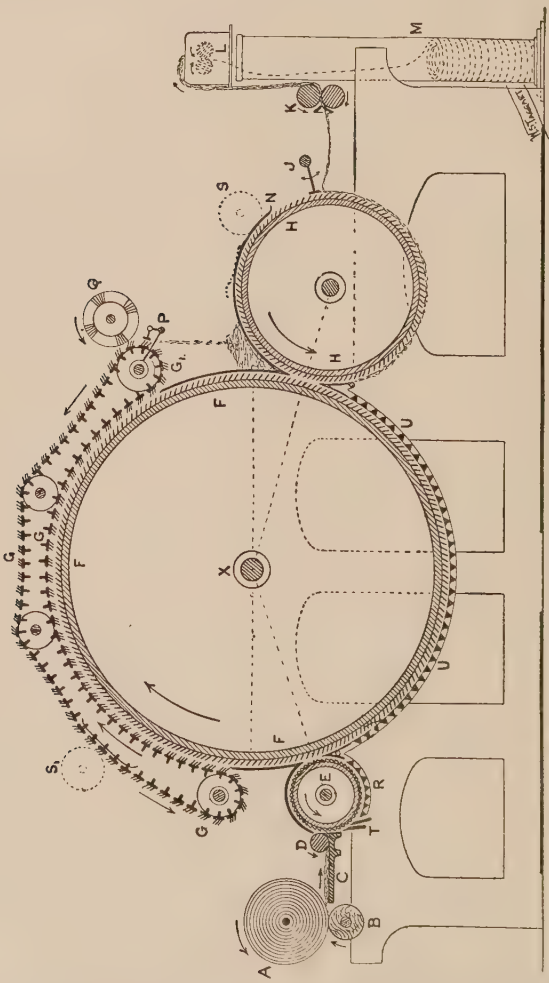


Fig. 147.

cotton forward and presented it to the taker-in, as seen

in Fig. 148; but now this arrangement is practically dispensed with. At the same time it will be instructive to examine into its action, and see where the fault lies that prevents its utility. We had occasion, when treating of the scutcher feed, to point out the disadvantage of feed rollers for short-stapled cotton; for a similar reason their unsuitability for the card can be shown. Not only so, but by taking into account the combing action of the taker-in, we shall also see their unsuitability for any kind of cotton, either long or short staple.

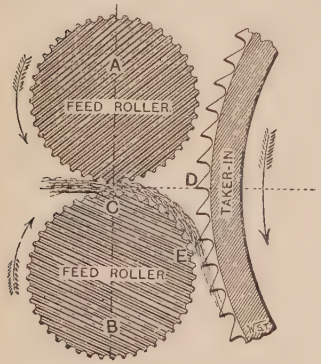


FIG. 148.

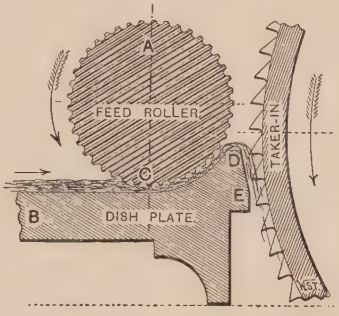


FIG. 149.

In the sketch the feed rollers A and B are $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches diameter. A vertical line through the two centres gives us their point of contact C, and therefore the point where the lap in passing through is gripped. From this point to the teeth of the taker-in (which just clears the feed roller) will be about $1\frac{1}{16}$ inch. The fibres, on being fed by the rollers, do not stand out horizontally between the two, but are delivered along the curve of the bottom one. The distance in this case from the grip C to the striking point E of the bottom feed roller will be about

$1\frac{1}{2}$ inches. Under these conditions it would be absolutely impossible for fibres to be combed by the teeth of the taker-in, and at the same time be held by the two rollers, instead of this the cotton would be taken away in lumps, and masses of entangled fibres would be presented to the cylinder by the teeth of the taker-in. If smaller rollers were used the evil would be reduced to that extent, but rollers of the minimum diameter, consistent with strength, would always contain the serious fault of having the grip too far away from the taker-in teeth, and consequently result in the prevention of the combing action, which is such an important factor in this part of the card. The above difficulty is now overcome by the almost universal practice of using what is termed a dish feed, a section of which is given in Fig. 149. Here we have the bottom feed roller taken away, and in its place is substituted a polished plate B, curved upwards at that part where it comes under the feed roller A. The immediate result of this is to move the points where the cotton is held from C to D. In other words, the cotton is brought almost to the teeth of the taker-in, so that directly it emerges at D it comes under their combing action, and since the fibres as they come forward are arranged in every imaginable position relative to each other, we can easily see that the teeth of the taker-in, as it passes through them, will effect a thorough combing before they have moved along the surface E of the dish plate a sufficient distance to free themselves.

A point to be carefully understood in respect to this is, that if some fibres are lying in the lap with their length in the same direction as the length of the roller, they will simply be struck away at once by the taker-in, whilst those lying crosswise will be partially combed and

then freed from the grip of the roller and plate according to the amount of their cross position. This leads up to the fact that only those fibres whose length lies in the same direction as the moving lap, and which are delivered to the taker-in, end on as it were, will receive the greatest amount of the combing action. A very small percentage of the fibres of a lap, however, occupy this position, so that from these considerations, as well as by a reference to the remarks previously made on the inequalities present in the mass of the fibres themselves, we are compelled to recognise that the cotton is not detached from the dish feed as separated individual fibres except occasionally, but rather in very small groups or tufts.

This probability from the above reasoning is rendered almost a certainty when we remember that no matter how close the taker-in is brought to the dish feed, there will be a portion of the cotton between the grip D and the teeth which will be taken forward directly it is free without being combed. Fig. 150 is presented in order to give an idea of the effect of the taker-in teeth in passing through the cotton. We can see that the fibres are arranged in nearly parallel order, and almost individually isolated; but to prevent a misconception arising that all the fibres, or even a majority of them, are detached in this condition, the drawing must be interpreted by the foregoing description. This appearance of the lap can be seen on any card if the feed roller be lifted out and the end of the lap that has projected through is examined. The position of the point on the surface E of the dish plate B, Fig. 149, where the average fibres are supposed to become free from the grip at D, is an important feature. The one used for short-stapled cotton will naturally have the point nearer to D than long-stapled cotton. To show this clearly sections of the dish plate for different

kinds of cotton are given in Fig. 151, and are used for the cottons there denoted. It will be seen that Indian cotton is freed very soon after coming under the action of the teeth, whilst the other cottons remain gripped for a longer period, according to the length of their staples. The point where they may be said to become free is emphasised by a

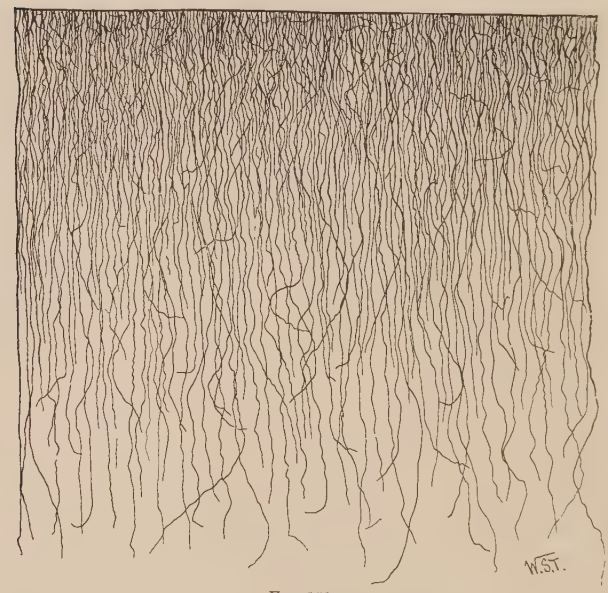


FIG. 150.

small spot in each of the sketches A, B, C, and D. In setting this part of the card in relation to the taker-in, it is advisable to exercise great care, for whilst very little damage can result to the fibres themselves, granted everything else is correct, a great deal of waste can be made, and very inefficient work be done, as well as a greater strain being put upon the other working parts of the card.

Having considered the feed arrangement in detail, we will now give a view of the immediate locality of this part of the machine in Fig. 152. The cotton is no sooner taken from the feed than it is carried past one or two bars C and D with sharp edges, known as mote knives. Large numbers

FIG. 151.

of what may be called unattached fibres are naturally easily caught by these bars, and so fall between their spaces. The same thing happens when the portions of seed, leaf, etc., are loosened. It is here where they are driven out, as freed from the tips and between the spaces of the saw teeth of the taker-in, where they are sometimes sticking.

There is very little, if any, necessity for varying the

angle at which the mote knives are set, so the drawing shows no arrangement for this purpose, but their adjustment in two other directions is essential. For instance, their correct distance from the teeth is obtained by means of the setting screws shown at F and G, whilst the interval between where the fibres are free from the feed part to the edge of the first mote knife C can be altered by unscrewing

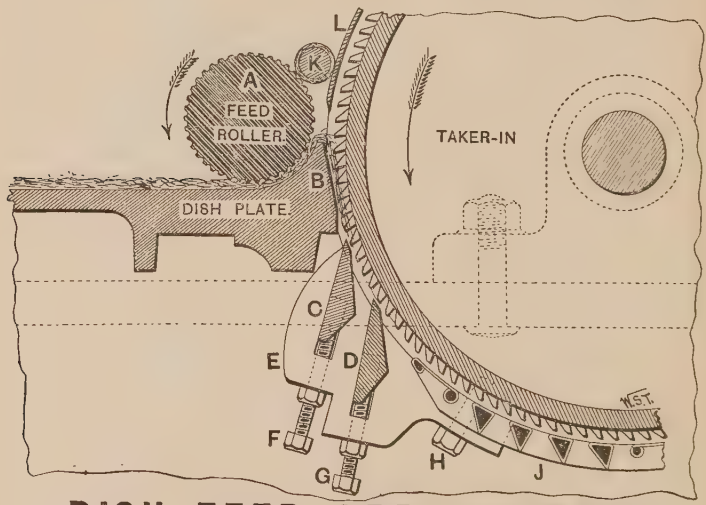


FIG. 152.

the set screw H and sliding the bracket E (which carries both knives) round a circular plate that forms part of the pedestal of the taker-in ; H is then used to securely fasten it in its new position. Following on from the mote knives in the direction of revolution we have a grid, or, as it is generally termed, an undercasing J, its object being to permit short, loosened fibres to fall out. It is hinged to a similar under-casing for the cylinder, and it is so arranged that on a

resetting of the card through wear of the wire it is capable of being adjusted to the new position. The cover L is a polished sheet of steel, covering in the whole of the upper part of the taker-in. An iron rod K, covered with flannel, is placed between the cover L and the feed roller A, and it serves a very useful purpose in taking up from the feed roller the dust and fluff or very short fibres which adhere to it. It also acts as a kind of draught preventer at this particular point.

In reference to Fig. 150, it was remarked as a kind of warning that the state of the fibres there represented, though actual, was only momentarily so. Very few fibres go forward to the cylinder in this condition; indeed, it is almost impossible for such a thing to happen. If individual fibres are detached, which can easily happen, because the feed roller is delivering them at the same time the teeth are combing them, they stand very little chance of reaching the cylinder. An examination of the waste from below the taker-in of any card will show that a proportion (and by no means a small one) of the fibres are of a good average length, which proves that the cotton, unless locked in the teeth, is in a position to be easily taken off with the slightest obstruction, or even by centrifugal force alone. (With under-casings well set and constructed, the above remarks would be much modified.) We can obtain confirmation of this view by looking at the teeth of the taker-in, and examining their disposition upon its surface. Figs. 153 and 154 represent the form of the tooth, and Fig. 155 the method of inserting it into the iron surface. Grooves are cut spirally from one end of the taker-in to the other.

The number of rows of teeth vary from 6 to 10 per inch, so that the pitch of a single spiral equals an inch, whilst the distance from one row to the next will vary

from $\frac{1}{6}$th to $\frac{1}{10}$th of an inch. By this spiral disposition of the teeth we obtain an unbroken line of points, because no two teeth can possibly follow each other in the same path during the revolution of the taker-in. The plan of a portion of the surface in Fig. 88 will show this about the natural size; but to make the matter clearer, an enlarged view is also given to the right in Fig. 90, when it will be seen that one tooth is followed by another tooth, which, however, does not strike the cotton exactly in the same spot as the first one, but is about half the thickness of its tooth on one

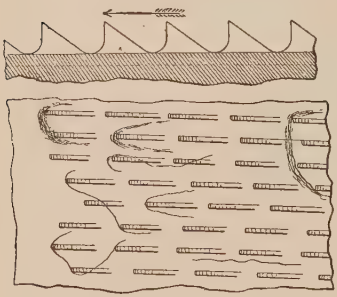


FIG. 153.

FIG. 154.

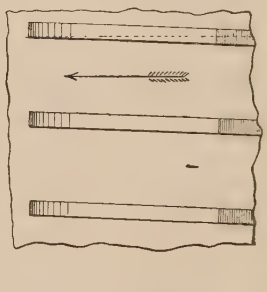


FIG. 155.

side, where eight rows of teeth are used to the inch, and 90 teeth are in the circumference of each row ($\frac{1}{90}$in. will represent this distance). In this way an increased probability of good combing by the taker-in is obtained. This especially will be recognised when it is mentioned that as many as two million teeth pass the dish feed whilst one inch of the lap is fed to them. The one inch of lap is calculated to contain about the same number of fibres, and at first sight it might be thought that there is some design in having the teeth and fibres equal; but although it represents the best experience on the matter, we are not at liberty to suppose that each fibre is provided with a tooth to carry it away. We

have already shown how this is quite contrary to actual practice, and there also seems to be no reason for the suggestion when an intelligent examination is made of its action.

Fig. 153 will give some idea of how the teeth carry the fibres forward. It will be understood that tufts are easily taken onwards, and the individual fibres, when locked in two or more teeth, are also easily carried to the cylinder; but when a fibre is free from, or on the tips of, the teeth, it is almost certain to be lost at the mote knives, or in passing over the under-casing. Of course the short fibres stand the best chance of becoming free enough to escape in this way.

The setting of the taker-in in relation to the dish feed requires a very careful adjustment. Two methods are generally adopted to obtain the necessary degree of exactness, both of which in their practical application suffer somewhat through carelessness. The first, and one that is still very extensively practised, and upon which great reliance is placed, is where the dish feed is brought sufficiently close to cause the revolving teeth of the taker-in to touch it. A hissing noise is produced when this happens. The dish feed is now moved back, leaving an interval between itself and the teeth which depends upon the judgment and experience of the man in charge. Considering the delicacy of the operation, and the very small distance concerned (from $\frac{1}{200}$th in.), it is not surprising to find how few men can set so that both ends are exactly alike, as $\frac{1}{1000}$th part of an inch out at either end probably means 10 to 20 per cent variation from the desired distance. This is bound to result in unequal work being thrown on the cylinder teeth—a state of things which is most undesirable both for the card and for the finished yarn.

The other method is one that is preferable in every way. It consists in moving the organs that are being adjusted together, and inserting between them a gauge in the form of a slip of steel, the thickness of which is definitely known, until it fits anywhere along the full width of the card. Exact settings can be obtained in this way, but a serious evil is often present in the gauges themselves. Almost all gauges, especially after being in use some time, get bent in their width, and instead of being perfectly straight, as at A, Fig. 156, they become shaped as at B and C, and consequently they touch at the points DEF in B and GHJK in C.

With the thinner gauges, B and C will straighten somewhat if a tight fit is obtained when setting, but from

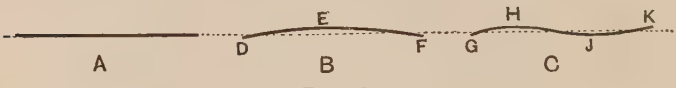


FIG. 156

numerous observations and tests which have been made, it is found that the thickness marked on the gauge is always exceeded. The thicker gauges, such as the $\frac{1}{90}$th part of an inch, when bent as above, scarcely yield at all when used in setting, and a large percentage of error is consequently introduced. This error, however, is not one that produces inequality in the setting, like the previous method; for when gauges are used the distance across the face of any organ of the card is uniform, and so the wire is not worked unevenly. But the evil is still a serious one, and requires attention. Many faults experienced in the card may be traced to faulty setting and still faultier gauges. A considerable reduction in the possibility of error in a gauge might be made if the steel were split up

the middle, or even into three parts, the width remaining the same. This would prevent the distortion of the gauge, as the narrow width would not bend so easily as the full gauge would. Another way to overcome the difficulty would be to make three narrow strips of steel into the single width of an ordinary gauge.

The cotton, having been carried round by the taker-in, is brought into contact with the teeth of the cylinder, a distance of about $\frac{7}{1000}$th inch separating the two cylinders. The special form of the teeth, their large numbers, and the greater surface speed (cylinder, 2100 ft. per minute; taker-in, 1000 ft. per minute), enable it to take the cotton from the taker-in, and, if the fibres are sufficiently loose to permit it, a slight attenuation may take place at this point, otherwise the cylinder will take the cotton forward exactly in the same condition as it is presented to it, and this for the simple reason that the teeth of the taker-in offer no resistance whatever to this action; indeed, they rather aid the freeing of the cotton from their own surface, and allow of its transference to the teeth of the cylinder with a minimum amount of disturbance. Fig. 157 will make this apparent, but a clearer view will be seen in the drawing, Fig. 158, and a still better idea will be obtained from the full-size view in Fig. 159 (AB is a line joining the centres of the cylinder and taker-in, and serves this purpose for both sketches).

A consideration of the cylinder teeth may with advantage be made at this part of our subject. It presents a wide field for investigation, but we will try to confine ourselves to those features of which a knowledge is essential to a good understanding of its principles.

In the first place, the cylinder ($50\frac{3}{4}$ in. diameter on the wire and 40 in. wide) is covered with a very large number

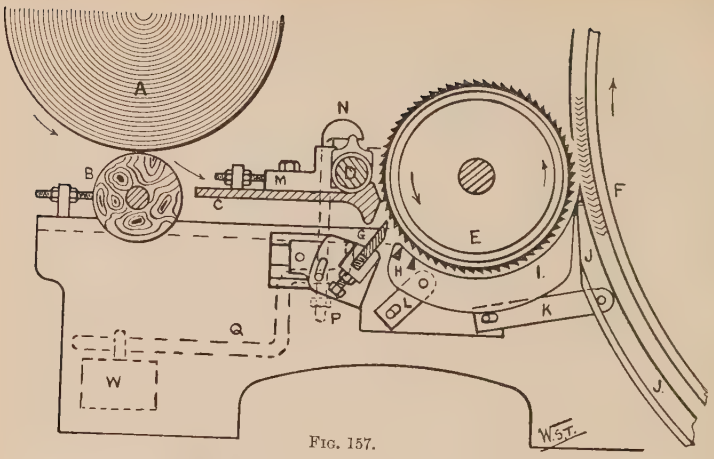


FIG. 157.

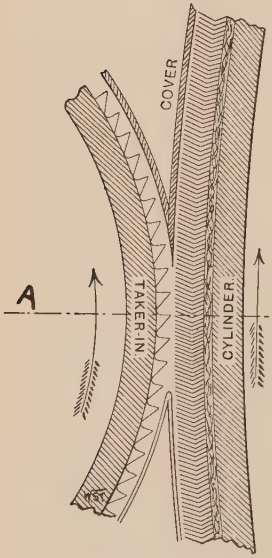


FIG. 158.

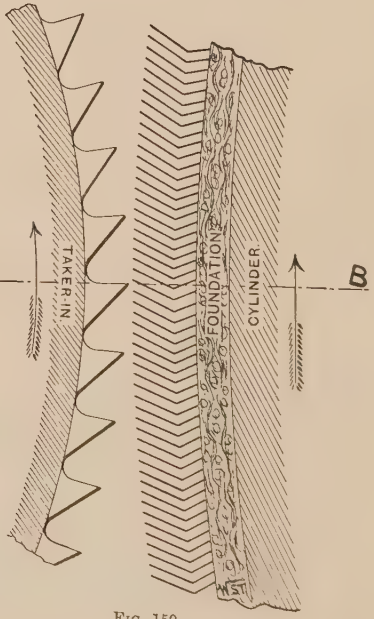


FIG. 159.

of wire teeth, there being almost four millions round its entire surface. These teeth are embedded in a foundation of specially-woven materials, composed principally of mixtures of wool and cotton, and sometimes in a surface of indiarubber. The purpose of this foundation is to supply a holding power for the teeth, and at the same time to allow a certain amount of flexibility to exist. The teeth stand out from the foundation at such an angle as to give them power to carry forward any fibres to which they become attached. This function of the teeth presents a wide latitude for choice, and enables a variety of angles to be made, and, as a fact, scarcely two specimens can be obtained having the same inclination.

Fig. 160 represents an enlarged general view of the teeth fixed in their foundation. The surface of the foundation at G is frequently covered with a thin layer of rubber, the elasticity of which is intended to cause the wire to spring back into its original position whenever it has been deflected either by the grinding roller or by any other strain put upon it when working. The rubber is found to be susceptible to climatic conditions, and when these vary through a long range the heat produces a species of disintegration, so that care is necessary in deciding on the adoption of this kind of clothing.

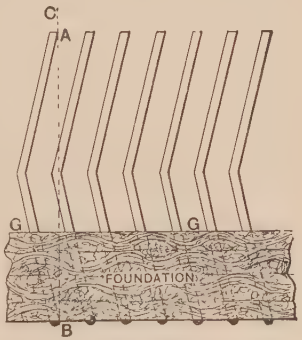


FIG. 160.

The arrangement of the wire points follows one of three systems shown in drawings Figs. 161, 162, and 163, which are known respectively as "open set," "twill set," and "rib

set." These names are given to them according to the method adopted of inserting the teeth in the foundation. As two teeth are composed of one piece of wire (the back of the wire is shown by the dotted line joining the teeth,

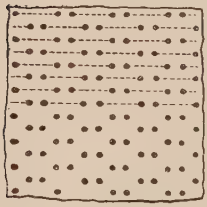


Fig. 161.

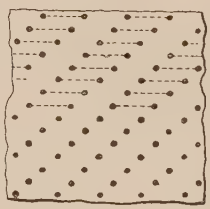


Fig. 162.

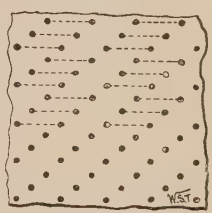


Fig. 163.

the dots representing the points, or, as they are called, the crowns) according to the number of points within a given space we get what is termed the counts of the wire—the higher the counts the more teeth there are in this given area.

If the card is being used for long fine cotton the number of teeth on the various organs must be greater than if coarser cotton is being worked, the reason for which is often presumed to be self-evident; but it is frequently overlooked that the better-class cottons are the weakest, and they therefore require more support whilst being carded than the poorer classes. And again, as they are used for a superior kind of yarn, it is necessary that a better cleansing action should be given to them. There is, how-

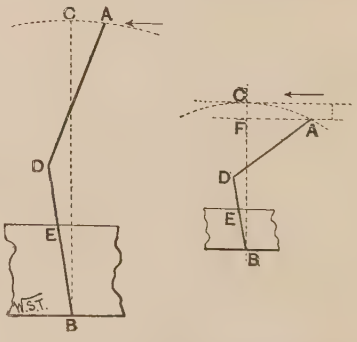


Fig. 164.

ever, no fixed rule on the matter, the decision as to the counts being generally left to the person responsible for the working of the card.

The clothing or filleting, as received from the makers, is in long, narrow lengths, and the fixing of it upon the cylinder, etc., demands extreme care. It must be perfectly level throughout, and as it is wound on spirally it must be so done as to have an equal tension throughout its entire length. Machines are now used that record this tension, and supply us with a means of regulating it to the requisite degree, so that blistering, etc., is almost a thing of the past. To secure it firmly in position, the cylinder is drilled longitudinally at intervals, with rows of holes, and then plugged with hard wood. The clothing is nailed to these plugs, and upon the care and skill exercised in performing the whole operation depends the working quality of the machine, and also the length of time it is capable of doing this successfully before renewal is necessary.

A point that it is perhaps necessary should be understood in connection with the angle of the wire teeth is the position of A (Figs. 160 and 164) in relation to the vertical line BC drawn through the other end of the tooth B at the back of the foundation. Now it is not difficult to see that if something forces the point A from its position in the direction of the arrow, it will move it in what would be practically a portion of a circle having its centre at B. It is generally assumed that this centre is at E, where the wire leaves the foundation, but this is apparently a mistake, for the elasticity of the wire tooth is immeasurably greater than that of the foundation, which would yield considerably before the wire itself began to bend at E. If A corresponded with C, its movement along the circle would bring it away from any teeth that might be above it, and this we

may say is a most desirable working condition; but from an analysis of a very large number of wires of various makers, it is quite an exception to find the point of A so well placed, its usual position being a little in advance of the vertical line, as shown in Fig. 164. This being so, it is quite obvious that any movement of A towards C would cause A to be raised a little, and to approach any teeth that might be placed above it. The evils supposed to exist in consequence of this are sufficient excuse for examining the matter a little further, and seeing if the supposition is one that might safely be ignored. An exaggerated diagram is given in Fig. 164, to which our remarks will apply. The dimensions we shall use are, however, exact ones—BC = $\frac{3}{8}$ inch, AF = $\frac{1}{16}$ inch. This last distance is extreme, and is taken to test the distance that A would move vertically from the foundation in going from A to C. The problem resolves itself into finding the distance FC in a circle of $\frac{3}{8}$ inch radius described from the centre B. This works out as 0·0055 inch, which equals about the $\frac{1}{200}$th part of an inch. Very few cards are set, or can be set for the production of good work to this distance between the cylinder and the flats, so that the lifting of a tooth in the way suggested would appear to be of no serious consequence. Apart from the above reason, we may ask if it is possible for the tooth to be raised up under normal conditions of working when made as described above! When we reflect that it is only when the same entanglement of fibres is held by both the cylinder and flats that the necessary force to separate the fibres exists—which also tends to disturb the position of the point of the tooth—we shall see that the possibility of such a thing happening is very remote. Several teeth would of necessity be engaged on each side, and the firmness of any foundation in which they were

embedded would effectually prevent the teeth yielding any more than the slightest distance; the entanglement would be pulled asunder before the teeth would move, and, if it so happened, the combined strength of several fibres would be found inadequate to overcome the resistance of the foundation to the movement of the tooth. Broken fibres would naturally be the result, and there is no doubt that broken fibres in the card are traceable to this cause. Even the chance of an entanglement occurring strong enough to

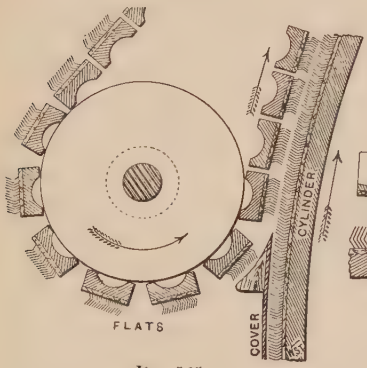


FIG. 165.

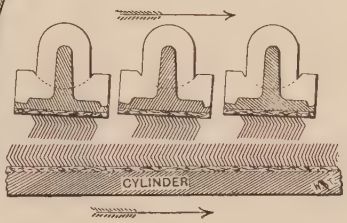


FIG. 166.

move the wire is very small, and the possibility of this taking place, so that the flat teeth and cylinder teeth acted upon are directly over each other, is still so remote that its damaging effect on the wire may be safely ignored.[1]

Almost immediately after passing the taker-in, the cylinder brings the cotton to the point where the flats begin to enter upon their work. This is illustrated in Fig. 165, and as an aid to an explanation of the effect on the fibre of passing onward between the cylinder and the flats, an enlarged drawing is given in Fig. 166, which shows the

[1] See p. 326 *et seq.*

relative position of these organs to each other. It will be noticed that the wire surface of the flats is not parallel to that of the cylinder, the two being wider apart at the point where the cotton enters, and nearer to each other where it leaves. This arrangement is generally termed the heel and toe, and its object is to effect a gradual carding at each flat. As the cotton is carried forward from one flat to the other several conditions tend to cause the fibres to rise a little from the surface of the cylinder as the space between each is passed. Currents of air, centrifugal force, and the elasticity of the fibres might be suggested as probable causes of this action. These raised fibres would be rather severely dealt with if they were dragged instantly into the narrow space between the cylinder and flats; so this suddenness of action is avoided by making the entrance three or four times greater than the finishing space, and a gradual effect is the result. Small masses or entanglements are beneficially treated in this way, and eventually reduced to isolated fibres by the continued action from flat to flat.

The manner in which the cotton is carried forward may with advantage have a little attention devoted to it. We have already given a representation of the wire teeth, and from a consideration of the number of these teeth we should conclude that there were several ways in which they could carry the cotton onwards. For instance, if a small mass of cotton was penetrated by a few of the teeth, it would be easy for the cylinder to take them forward; individual fibres would be carried if they became locked or mixed up among several teeth; and, finally, fibres would be removed if one or more teeth caught them so that they doubled round, leaving the ends free and furthest away from the direction of motion. All these methods are in active operation in the card. The first, of course, could only

exist for a moment at the first flats, when it would be broken up, and then partake of the action of the other two. The second method would be more applicable to the short fibres, as these would the more easily find their way into the teeth. Their accumulation in this way among the wires of the cylinder necessitates a frequent clearing to remove them. The longer fibres would only occasionally be able to lie with their full length locked as suggested; a free end would always admit of the possibility of the flat wire catching it and plucking it out.

The third method is the one that is paramount in good carding, for here we have the fibres doubled up, as it were, and held anywhere from near the ends to the middle, by the wire, with the ends flying behind and being drawn through the superimposed wire of the flats. It is scarcely possible that many of the fibres maintain one position on the cylinder during a revolution, as they must be considerably disturbed in various ways in their onward movement. When entanglements occur they are certain to be caught by the teeth of the flats as well as the cylinder. The angles of the teeth of each enabled them both to maintain their hold, and as a consequence the collection of fibres is combed out by one or the other, or else it is pulled asunder, each taking its own portion. The cylinder's portion will be treated by the other flats, which will be passed; whilst the flat's portion may be caught by the cylinder again, and further reduced. This is only probable for very small entanglements, like neps, as close observation seems to show that when once they become entangled in the teeth of the flats they remain there. It will be understood, from the whole of the action explained above, that the greater portion of the carding will take place on the earlier flats. As these become charged they lose some of their cleansing power;

but to compensate for this the fibres are very loose, and have not the same necessity for it as on their introduction The flats, as they come round to the doffer end, leave the cylinder and return over the top of the card to the front again; in the meantime they are stripped of the waste that has accumulated in their teeth. An examination of this waste will show that it is almost all doubled on the holding teeth, the free ends lying in the direction of movement; and, further, if the flats are examined with the waste on them, they will be seen to have their surface very unequally covered by it, being very thickly coated in some places and almost bare in others. It is quite obvious from this that the cotton is in a very irregular condition when taken by the cylinder, and considerable waste of good fibre is the result, as can readily be seen if the denser portions of the flats' waste are inspected. In doing this, care must be taken to open the fibres out in order to get their full length. At present it is apparently impossible to avoid what we have just pointed out, but fortunately it is only in the earlier flats where the evil exists. By the time the cotton reaches the ends of the flats, it has been opened out to such an extent that it would be an impossibility to strip it in the form of a web. It must not be supposed that this extreme looseness of the fibres is the result of the fibres being completely isolated and arranged in some kind of a parallel condition on the surface of the wire. A close view of the cylinder would quickly dispel this idea, and show that the fibres, although few to the square inch, are arranged crossing each other in all directions among the tips of the teeth. This may be accounted for partly by the well-known characteristic of the cotton fibre—when it is free to do so—to retain the twisted and distorted form it had when taken from the boll. Each fibre has probably been isolated and

straightened out innumerable times in passing between the flats, but they are sufficiently elastic to return immediately to their original state, and when this portion of the operation is finished, they are found to lie very irregularly both in direction and condition.

We will now leave for a short time the further consideration of the carding action, and direct our attention to a matter which is bound up with the process with which we have just been dealing. Stress was laid upon the necessity of setting the flats very close to the cylinder (from $\frac{1}{90}$ in. to $\frac{1}{200}$ in.). Continuous working and cleaning of the wire teeth affect their working qualities, which can, however, be renewed by grinding the tips of the teeth. This grinding removes some portion of the length of the wire on flats and cylinder, and consequently the space between the two wire surfaces is increased. This is shown in the diagram Fig. 167. AB is the space required between for good working, but the grinding action has taken a portion off both flat and cylinder (this is shown black in the sketch), and the space then becomes greater, as seen at CD. It is imperative that AB should be constant; so to effect this the flat must be lowered until this space is obtained. In the previous portion of the subject a brief description was given of how the flats moved slowly forward over the upper part of the surface of the cylinder.

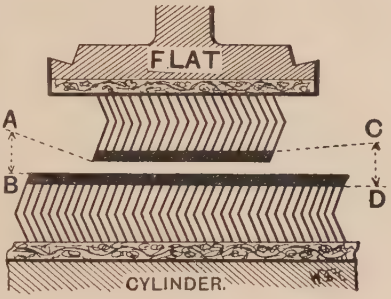


FIG. 167.

As the grinding operation affects every flat, it will be

seen that they must all be lowered to the same extent and at the same time. To do this successfully many devices have been adopted, ranging from very primitive efforts to some of the most remarkable instances of mechanical ingenuity. In order to cover the ground as completely as possible, all the important methods used by the principal machine-makers will be given as examples.

In order that the flats can be affected to the extent of lowering them bodily towards the centre, it is necessary that they should move upon some surface through which the requisite change can be made. This surface is generally termed the bend of the card, and, according to its character, it may be termed a flexible bend or otherwise. The conditions which are imperative in a successful card in relation to the bend are—that it must be a perfectly smooth surface; that the flats moving upon it must also be perfectly smooth on their moving surface; the flexible, when once set, must remain unyielding so far as bending or deflection is concerned; and there must be every facility for setting the arrangement accurately and expeditiously.

Previous to the year 1880 the form of bend was similar in principle to that shown in the illustration in Fig. 168. A framework A, forming part of the framing of the machine, had connected to it, by means of bolts and links, a segmental strip of metal surrounding its circumference for over one-third of the distance. The bolts which supported this surface were capable of adjustment, and as there were at least five of these supports for the flexible on either side of the card, the flats travelled on a fairly good solid surface. When the necessity arose for re-setting and bringing the flats nearer to the centre of the cylinder, the adjusting screws drew the flexible down, and in doing so caused it to yield sufficiently to become a portion of a smaller circle

This was done the more effectively by arranging the shape of the flexible in such a manner that the yielding would take place gradually on either side of its middle.

In the flexible made by Dobson and Barlow, and shown in Fig. 168, A is a circular portion of the framework of the machine, and B is the flexible upon which the flats travel. Five pins are firmly fixed at equal intervals along the flexible, 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5, and engage in brackets C, D, E, F, and G respectively. These brackets are bolted to the

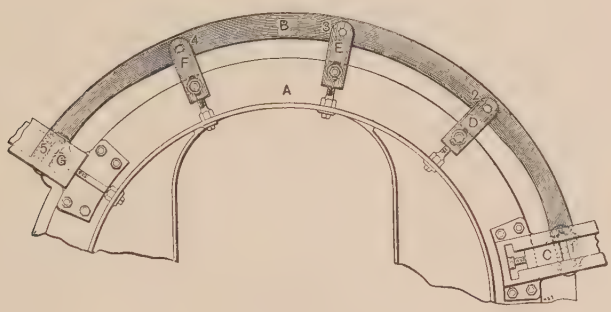


FIG. 168.

solid framing A, and are adjustable radially. When the card requires re-setting, the adjusting screws below each bracket are each in their turn operated upon, and the flexible is drawn towards the centre. It will be noticed that the centre bracket E has the pin 3 fitting it exactly, so that this point must follow the bracket in its movement; but the other brackets contain slots. The reason for this is apparent when we know that the flexible in its new position on a smaller circle occupies a greater proportion of the circle than it did in its old position, and consequently we find that the pins C, D, F, and G do not fall radially, but partake of a combined movement both circumferentially and radially,

the slots being made in the brackets to permit of this being done.

Some form of this arrangement is made by all textile machinists; but some years ago innumerable attempts were made to overcome the objectionable feature of having to set the flexible bend at five or more points, and moreover requiring a high degree of skill in this operation. Practically every machine-maker designed special arrangement for setting the flexible from one point, and an enormous number

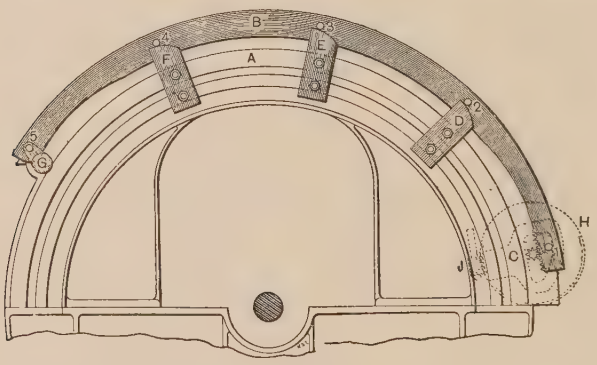


FIG. 169.

of cards were made with these single setting points. Since then, experience has tended to discount the advantages anticipated from some of the arrangements, and now, though the single setting point card is still made and well made by some firms, the original form of five or three setting points is the present practice of other important firms.

In consequence of such large numbers of single setting point cards being still made and in use, several of them will be described, and for our first example we take the one illustrated in Fig. 169, made by Dobson and Barlow. Here we have the segmental flexible with five pins resting on sup-

ports. To lower it, a very effective and ingenious method is adopted. One end, 5, of the flexible B is connected to the end of a short lever G, having its pivot or centre on the circular framing A. Each of the supports C, D, E, and F are also firmly fixed to this framing, and are never disturbed. The other end contains a portion of a rack into which gears a small wheel; by turning the wheel the whole flexible moves downwards, and in doing so the pin 5 begins

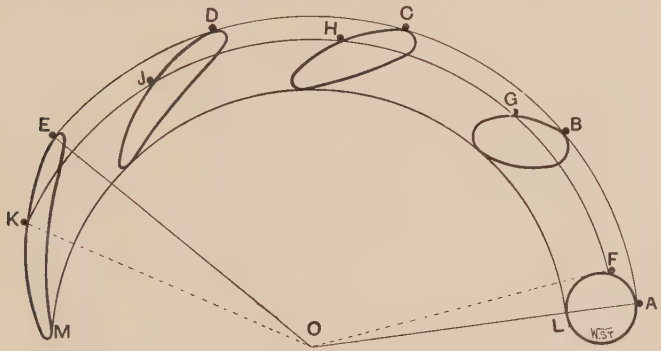


FIG. 170.

to travel round in a small circle in consequence of its connection with G, and in this movement it naturally approaches the centre, but not radially so. The position taken up by 5 regulates the position assumed by the other pins, for they must all approach the centre to the same amount. The path they follow will not be circular, like that at 5, but will be a mixed curve resulting from this circular movement and their greater angular displacement on account of occupying a large proportion of the smaller circle as previously described. Fig. 170 is given in order to enable the description to be followed more easily. AE is the flexible in its first position, and A, B, C, D, and E denote the

five pins. When A is turned round in the smaller circle it will occupy the position at F, which is nearer the centre, its angular movement having been AOF. It is clear that all the other pins must approach the centre to the same extent if the flexible is to be concentric, and it is also clear that the end E must move through a greater angle than A if the same condition is to be fulfilled; so a combined movement is the result, and as all the pins are affected for the same reason, but not equally so, it will follow that each pin would trace out a curve suitable for itself. If brackets are made having surfaces similar to the curve, we can rest the flexible upon them, and be perfectly certain that it will be concentric whatever position it may occupy. The curves for the various points are clearly shown, and in order to show the effect of a complete revolution of the small lever G in Fig. 169, the complete curves are drawn out. It must be apparent that the flexible will require bending to the smaller circle, and so that this yielding during re-setting may be distributed equally over its whole length, it is shaped specially for that purpose.

The great advantage of the above arrangement is that the whole of the five setting points are set simultaneously, and the amount of the setting clearly indicated. This is shown in the drawing Fig. 169. On the axis of the small wheel is fixed a large index wheel H, having teeth cut in a portion of its circumference; into this is geared a worm, J, and through this worm the flexible is moved, a finger indicating the exact amount. To prevent any one tampering with the arrangement, a lock can be applied to it.

It will be seen, from the sketches and description just given, that a flexible arrangement of this kind possesses advantages over the older form of five setting points. The setting of the whole of the flats is an operation of

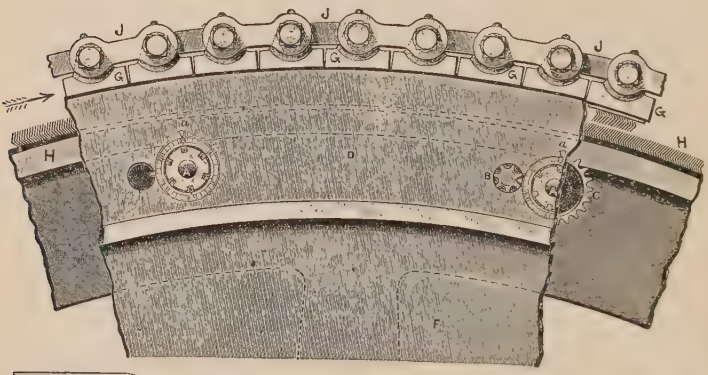
such a simple character that the possibility of damage through carelessness and loss of time in its performance is reduced to a minimum. The form of the flexible lends itself easily to the necessary amount of bending that is required in bringing it into a circle half an inch less in diameter than its original size, and the five supports upon which it rests afford a very firm foundation for the movement of the flats. The character of the concentricity depends entirely on these supports and the spiral curvature adopted in each; and provided these are made with precision, there is nothing to prevent an almost mathematical exactness being obtained, especially considering the smallness of the curve that is actually used.

The next example of an improved form of flexible bend as made by Howard and Bullough is represented in the drawings Figs. 171, 172, and 173, and is very successful in its practical application when there are taken into account the narrow limits within which it works. Its exactness to a very small fraction of an inch is undoubted, and for all practical purposes it is thoroughly equal to the demands made upon it, both in its maintenance of concentricity and in its accuracy of adjustment. On this account it will be of interest to the student to observe that the principle underlying its action is not strictly mathematical—for the simple reason that the principle which enunciates that a straight inclined surface, sliding upon another inclined surface in the same plane, always moves parallel to itself, is not applicable to curves or curved surfaces of any description. (This is capable of easy demonstration, but, as already pointed out, the movement required is so small that the calculated variation is of a character so microscopic that it may be, and is, ignored.)

An examination will now be made of its arrangement

and action, reference being made to the drawings. Fig. 171 gives an outside elevation of a portion of a flexible; Fig. 172 shows a section through its various parts; and Fig. 173 represents a sectional plan view.

Fig. 171.



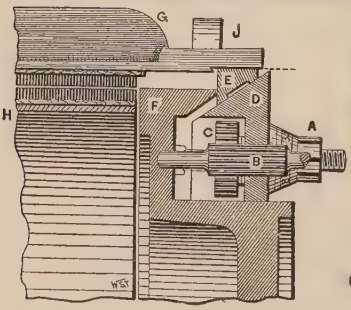


Fig. 172.

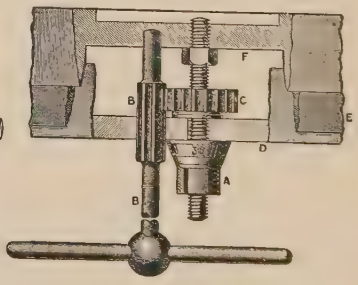


Fig. 173.

The various parts may be enumerated as follows: H is the cylinder, over which the flats G travel; F is the general circular framing, which is firmly bolted to the card sides: D is a turned segment, capable of sliding upon a true concentric ledge of the framing F, so that, whatever position

it occupies on this ledge, its concentricity is maintained. The upper surface of D is inclined, and upon this incline is supported an inclined segment E, upon which the flats G travel, E thus becoming the flexible. When it is desired to lower the flats, the inclined segment D is drawn out, and E will consequently fall and occupy a lower position. It is necessary that the flexible should bend in order to conform to the smaller circle of which it will now form a portion, and it is specially made so as to permit easily of this. The adjusting mechanism is not operated at one point, so that each of the five setting places on each side of the card must be set separately. An improved method of doing this, however, renders the performance an extremely simple one: a screwed stud is firmly fixed to the framing F, and passes through the segment D, its outer end being fitted with an index nut A. On the inner side of D a toothed nut C is fitted on the screw, and by the manipulation of A and C any adjustment required can be easily obtained. In order to effect this setting, and at the same time to prevent interference therewith, a toothed key B is inserted through a hole in D, and gears with the tooth nut C; this enables C to be screwed up and locked against the face of the index nut A. When one point has been set correctly the number of the index is noted, and each setting place is adjusted to the same indication. It will be noted that, although there are five distinct setting places on each side of the card, only one of them requires care in setting, and even then the operation is of a most elementary character. The other nine operations are quickly performed, and the accuracy of the indices and the perfect manner in which the nuts and studs are made, ensure uniformity in the whole operation.

From Fig. 171 a good idea may be obtained of the method

adopted in connecting the flats together. It consists of an endless chain J, each link swivelling upon a stud fixed firmly in the end of the flat G. The stud is screwed into a projection cast on the end of the flat, so that the chain comes immediately over the flexible bend E, Fig. 172. This position is important, and all modern cards adopt the same; the reason for its adoption being that the pull and weight of the chain cause a deflection of the flat if placed in any other position, and so disturb the accuracy of the setting.

It is absolutely necessary that the chains on each side should be exactly alike, and should work with the same tension, for the slightest variation would cause the flats to become twisted or crossed on the cylinder and their accuracy to be destroyed. To show how exact the chains are now made, it may be mentioned that in the whole length of the chain used the variation does not exceed one-fiftieth part of an inch from the standard.

Another feature that may be noticed in the drawing, Fig. 172 (which represents what is now the common arrangement of all cards), is the closeness of the cylinder H to the framing F. The opening is, indeed, so close that it may be almost considered closed, and the currents of air that were formerly such a serious cause of trouble are now practically eliminated. The cylinder can also be clothed with wire up to its end, and an appreciable increase in the working area is thus obtained, which means increased production.

The next arrangement (Ashworth's) to be described is one based on a principle entirely different from the preceding ones, and one that does not depend in any way on the flexibility of its support for success in maintaining a circular path for the traverse of the flats. Its main features are illustrated in the drawing Fig. 174. Instead of the

usual flexible bend, a series of steel bands, A, about fifteen in number, varying in thickness from $\frac{1}{30}$th to $\frac{1}{100}$th of an inch, are used; and upon the uppermost of these the flats move forward. The surface on which they are placed is turned true to the centre of the cylinder, and they are kept in tension by means of their connection to the fixed pin B

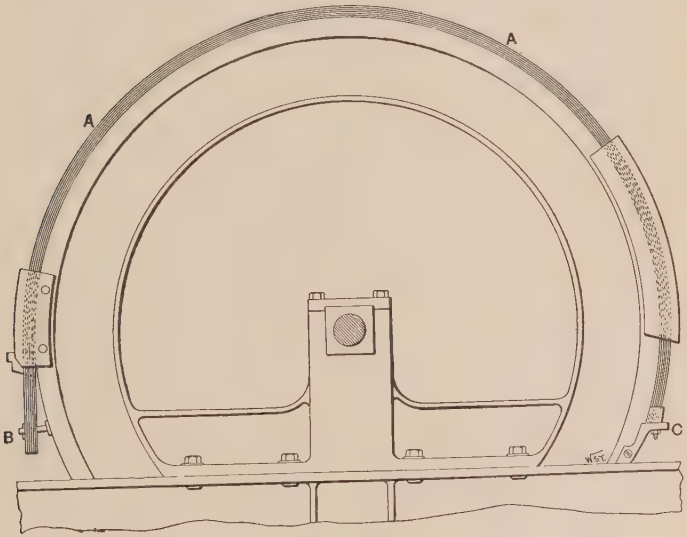


FIG. 174.

and the tightening screw C. Whenever the necessity arises for the lowering of the flats, one of the bands is removed, and a smaller circle is thus provided to compensate for the effect of grinding. If the removal of a band is too much for the purpose, it is taken off, and a thinner one is put in its place, so that a much finer setting can be obtained than is represented by any single band. For instance, if a $\frac{1}{30}$th band was withdrawn, and a $\frac{1}{40}$th one replaced it, the differ-

ence would mean an adjustment of $\frac{1}{120}$th of an inch. It is easy to see that this changing of the steel bands must result in considerable waste of time in a large mill, and the apparent advantages of the system would be counterbalanced by such a loss. To overcome this most decided objection a peculiar plan was adopted, which was a kind of compromise between leaving the adjustment as it was until sufficient grinding justified the removal of a band and an exact adjustment by changing to obtain the correct setting necessitated by the grinding. We will explain the method adopted by supposing grinding to have taken place, and an adjustment to be necessary. This means that the flats are too far away from the cylinder. Now, instead of lowering the flats the required distance, the cylinder centre is raised by means of a regulating screw and index arrangement: as a consequence, the space between the flats and cylinder, which is vertically over the centre, is reduced to the necessary amount; but at the sides the vertical movement has not made any material change in their relative positions, and as a result concentricity is destroyed, and the card works under slightly unequal conditions on its surface. This is, however, of such a small amount that for practical purposes it may be disregarded.

In Fig. 175 an interesting form of flexible bend is shown, and we proceed at once to describe it, after which an analysis of its action will be made: A is the centre of the cylinder and B the circular framing. The upper surface of this framing is shaped as a portion of a spiral, and upon it is bedded the flexible C, which, of necessity, partakes of a wedge shape. This form is most unsuitable for obtaining the requisite amount of flexibility; therefore a series of holes and saw-cuts is made in it, in order to permit of its bending equally throughout its length. The flexible is

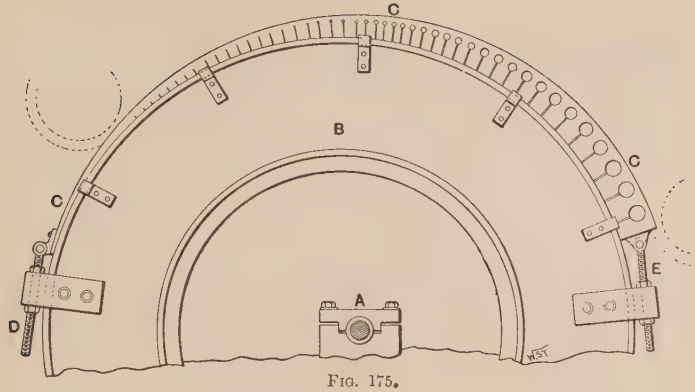


Fig. 175.

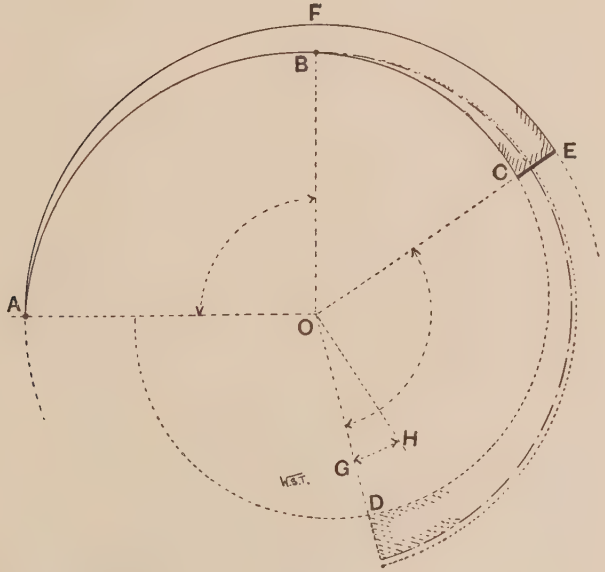


Fig. 176.

maintained in position by the adjusting screws D and E, and by their means the curvilinear wedge can be moved round the spiral. When this happens its surface naturally approaches nearer to the centre A, and the flats which travel upon it are regulated accordingly.

As before remarked, the small movement made by the flexible is taken advantage of by many, as affording a good opportunity of totally ignoring scientific principles in the construction of a flexible. This may be all right in its way, if the result is good practically; but in cases of this kind no claim can be sustained for them as regards mathematical accuracy. In the present example, which is undoubtedly practically correct within the limits worked, we have a typical specimen, which, if judged upon the question of the principles involved, would be quickly condemned.

As it will be interesting to the thoughtful reader, a diagram is given in Fig. 176, so that an explanation may be made of its action. The drawing is, of course, exaggerated, but the reasoning will hold good. ABCD is the spiral framing, upon which rests the flexible ACE, the upper surface of which will be a true circle from centre O. If the end A of the flexible be now moved along the spiral framing through a right angle to B, it will have approached the centre a distance denoted by FB. During the movement of A, the other end C of the flexible must have moved along an equal length of the surface of the spiral, and its new position will be at D. The diagram clearly shows that its angular movement is greater than that of the end A, its excess over a right angle being represented by the angle GOH. This extra angular motion results in the end D falling nearer to the centre than the other end A, and, of course, concentricity is destroyed, the variation

from a true circle when in its new position being shown in the diagram. What has been said in regard to a large movement is equally applicable to a smaller movement, and the demonstration of error can readily be made; but it is found to be too inappreciable to interfere with the general accuracy of practical working.

Another form of flexible is represented in Fig. 177. The flexible A has cast upon it four projecting pieces, which serve the double purpose of affording guides for its adjustment and serving as slides for the reception of eccentric

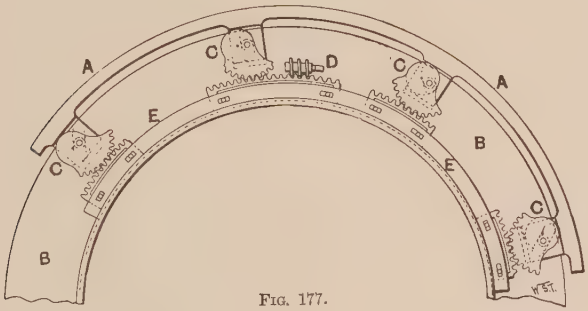


FIG. 177.

bowls, which are used to obtain this adjustment. Upon studs fixed to the framing B, and passing through slots in the projecting portions of the flexible, are mounted eccentrics C, to each of which is fixed a quadrant gearing into a circular rack, which is capable of a circumferential movement. The movement is brought about by a worm D gearing in a portion of the rack, and is such that when D is turned the rack causes each eccentric to revolve upon the fixed studs. This action lowers or raises the flexible according to the direction of movement, and is an equal one for each part of the flexible where an eccentric is situated. It is necessary that the slots in the flexible

should partake of a suitable curve to allow for the difference of angular movement in the several points indicated, and it

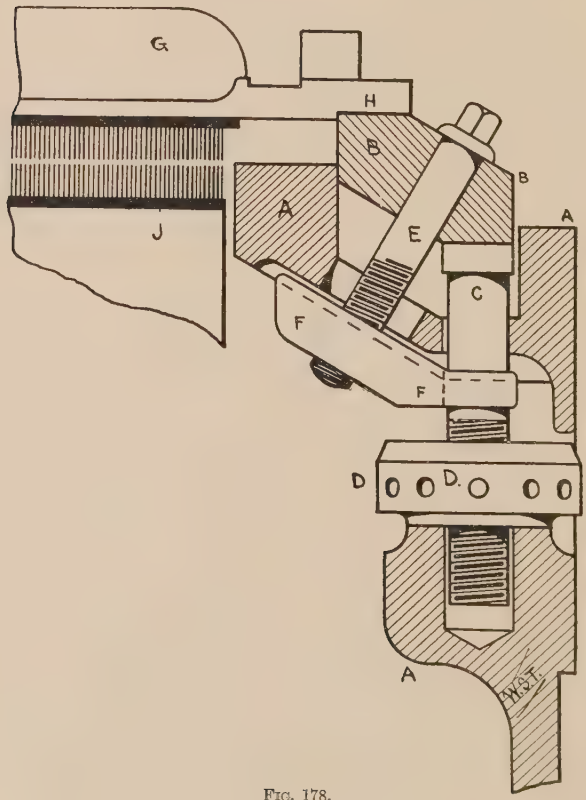


Fig. 178.

is also essential that no play or backlash should exist, otherwise the accuracy of the arrangement will be destroyed.

Our next example of a flexible is Tweedale and Smalley's shown in Fig. 178, and is one of the most recent forms

introduced. It possesses several characteristics of its own, upon which we propose to bestow a little attention. In the first place, the circular framing A differs somewhat from that usually adopted. Its upper portion is seen to be grooved out and arranged at intervals for the reception of bolts or screws C and E. In the groove is fitted, with as perfect a sliding fit as possible, a segmental strip of metal B, which forms the flexible upon which the flats travel; several supports in the form of screws C, at suitable intervals, are arranged, upon which the flexible rests. These screws in their turn are supported by the framing A, in consequence of their connection with the large circular nuts D. Through the medium of the several nuts D the flexible B can be raised or lowered, and so far we have nothing essentially different from the simplest form of support for the flats. It will be noticed, however, that each support C is on one side of B, while the flats would travel on the upper surface of the flexible and considerably out from the vertical line through C. Such an arrangement means that the weight of the flats would tend to cause B to be depressed, such depression acting round the edge of the top of each support C. This depression would be prevented by the framing A, but as long as the tendency exists there must be a pressure between the two surfaces: the greater this pressure becomes the more firmly will the surface of B adhere to the surface of A, and as a result B will partake practically of the rigidity of the framing A along its whole length; so that although it is only supported at intervals by the screws C it is still strongly supported between these screws by reason of its overhanging character. The weight of the flats is not sufficient to give the necessary pressure for the purpose, nor yet to maintain the flexible on its supports; therefore a series of screws E is introduced opposite to

each of the screws C, so arranged that by screwing them into specially formed nuts F the necessary pressure is easily obtained; F is forked, and fits round the turned part of C in order to prevent any movement. The setting nut D is indexed, and projects slightly through slots cut in the face of the framing A; this enables the setting to be easily performed.

To those capable of understanding the matter it may be interesting to go a little further into the subject of the sketch. We have spoken about the pressure between A and B; this pressure must act at right angles to their surfaces, so it will naturally be a horizontal one; and the pressure upon C will for the same cause be vertical. These two pressures are merged into the one pressure produced by the screw E in its angular direction. According to this angle, we can easily tell which will be the greater pressure, that on C or that between A and B. As arranged in the drawing, the greatest pressure is on C, so if C is lowered by means of D the part of B resting on C will be lowered also. We cannot expect the whole of the flexible to be lowered, for as already pointed out, the rigidity of the pressure between A and B would certainly prevent that part of the flexible moving. This difficulty is overcome by loosening each of the screws E whenever a re-set is necessary, after which the setting is done by the nut D. The flexible is thus free to fall into its new position, and when this is obtained the screws E are again tightly screwed up, and a state of rigidity in the flexible is resumed.

The question as to whether the deflection of a flexible having supports every 13 or 14 inches is one of material consequence to the working of the card, or whether it interferes with any necessary accuracy, is one that may safely

be ignored. It is certainly so microscopic an amount that it is questionable whether such a presumed advantage as its elimination is not overbalanced by the introduction of additional work in the operation of adjustment.

Fig. 179 illustrates Asa Lees' method of adjusting the card flexible from one point. It is a further example of

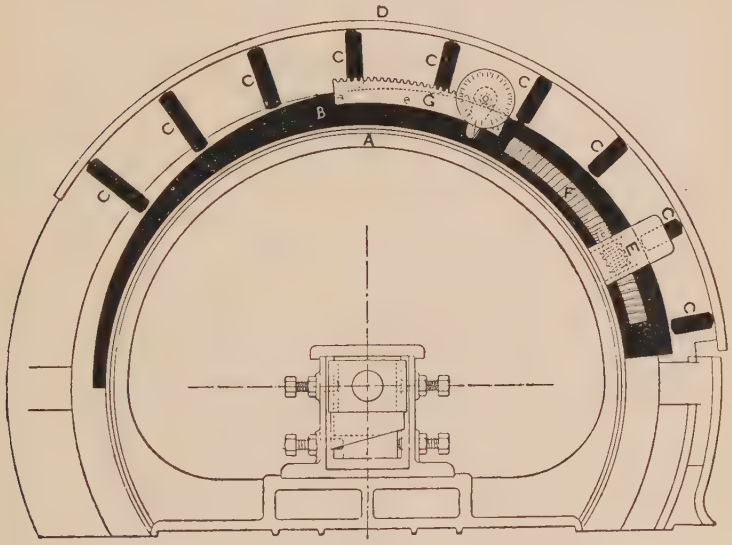


FIG. 179.

the use of a curved wedge. A is the fixed bend of the card. A projecting flange on A turned accurately forms a bearing for a loose bend B, whose lower surface is a true circle, but the upper surface of which is a spiral curve. Resting on the upper surface of B are a series of nine blocks C, all varying in length, but such that their top points are equidistant from the centre of the cylinder. On these blocks is placed the flexible D, so D clearly forms a perfect circle.

If the bend B is now moved, by turning the worm E which gears into teeth cut on the bend B, all the blocks C will rise or fall simultaneously and equally from or towards the centre, and so the flexible D will maintain its concentricity. A rack G and pinion enable the operator to see on the disc the amount of adjustment made. When once adjusted the setting arrangement can be locked up to prevent interference.

There are numerous other forms of bend or curved supports for the flats; for instance, one well-known machine, instead of a flexible bend, consists of a disc or ring that revolves upon the same centre as the cylinder. Its speed is such that it has practically the same surface-speed as the flats which travel upon its outer surface; this, of course, prevents any possible wear of either flats or flexible, because friction between them is neutralised. The lowering of the flats is brought about by milling off a little of the surface of the ring, special and accurate arrangements being provided for this purpose. Another form has its flexible composed of several brackets, arranged to slide radially towards the centre of the cylinder. Each bracket slides within the other in angular grooves, and all are in a series and connected to each other by pins. A cover plate is connected to the middle series, and also to the centre bracket of each end. The series is adjustable, and its movement causes the whole of the brackets to move simultaneously into a smaller circle. The brackets are turned to a circle half-way between the extreme positions they will occupy when working, so the possibility of error is reduced to a minimum.

Platts' flexible bend is given in Fig. 180. It has five setting points, of which three are shown at B, C, and D; the other two are simply indicated. The separate sketch of the flexible shows the five points clearly. The chief feature

of this flexible is the facility afforded for setting. Slots are cast in the flexible at H, and through these slots the gauge K can be inserted and adjustments made easily and quickly. Small plugs G are provided to close the slots when the card is working; these plugs are attached by chains to the framing, so they cause no trouble by going astray.

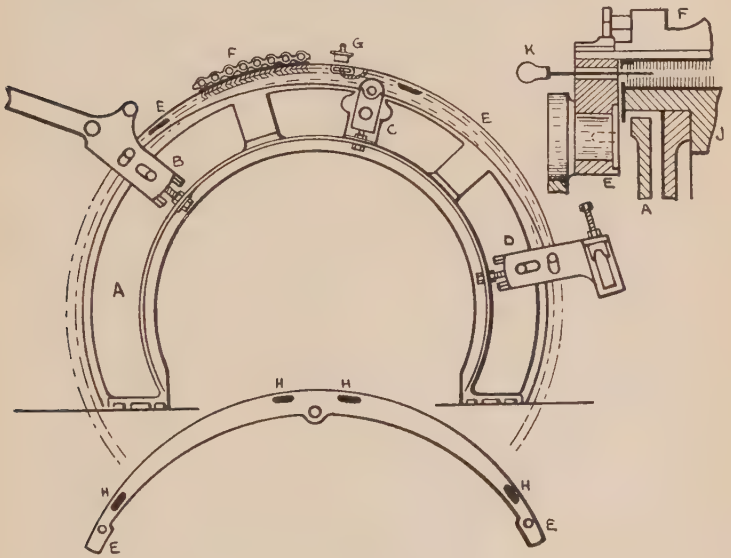


FIG. 180.

An enlarged view of the section of Platts' flexible, cylinder, bend, and flats is given in Fig. 181, which illustrates the common practice now of all machine-makers to obtain the maximum width of carding surface and the shortest possible length of flat, together with the elimination of space between the cylinder ends and the fixed bend of the card. The drawing is self-explanatory. P is the plug closing the slots used for the insertion of the setting gauge.

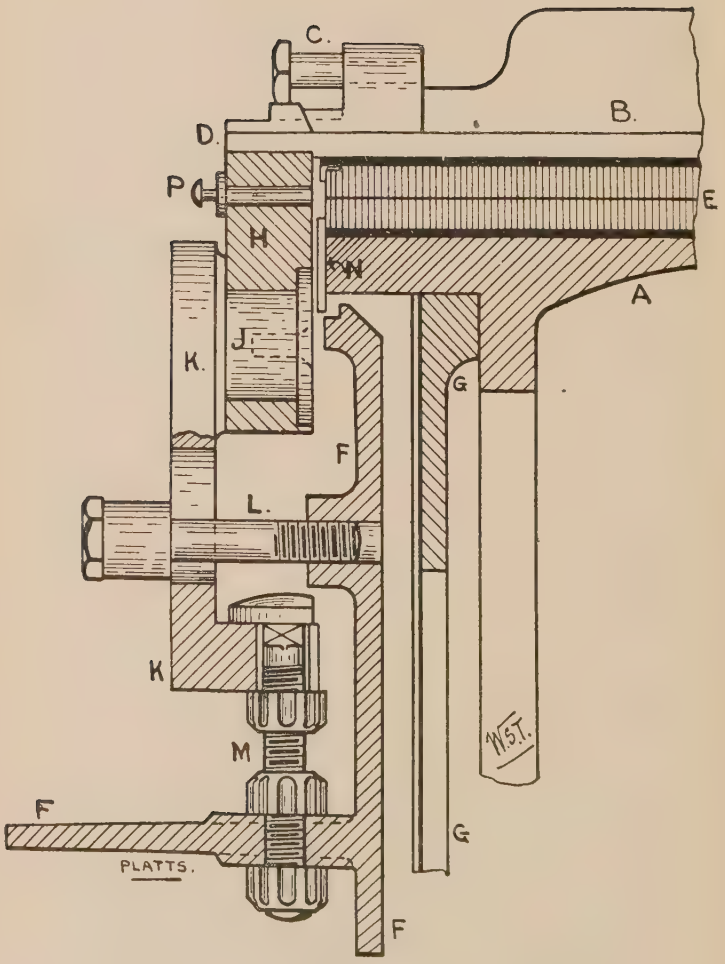
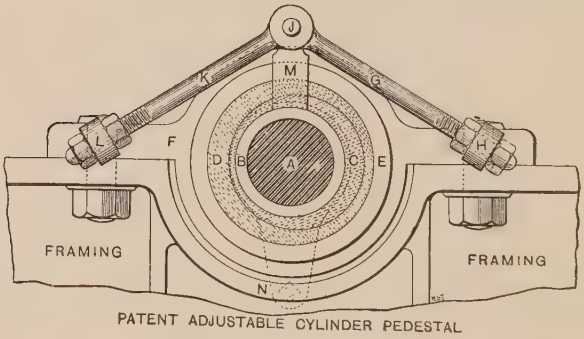


Fig. 181.

In most of the flexibles we have been considering it will have been apparent that, no matter what advantages might be claimed for the respective types, their real value would depend upon the stationary character of the cylinder centre. The flexible shown in Fig. 168 and all five or three setting point cards are exceptions to this, because there we have an arrangement which enables it to be set so that at each point we can obtain concentricity whether the centre has moved or not; but in the other examples the simultaneous setting of the whole flexible, or the necessity existing for setting each point exactly alike, introduces the condition that the centre around which they are set must maintain its position, or else it ceases to fulfil the condition of its successful action. Several causes tend to alter the position of the cylinder centre, all resulting in the wearing of the shaft bearing, this wear taking place in various directions, according to the cause which produces it, such as the weight of the cylinder; the pull of the strap; vibration of the machine; the slightest irregularity in the balancing of the cylinder; or negligence in lubricating, etc. When such wear does take place something must be done to restore the centre to its original position, and with this object in view several methods have been adopted which satisfactorily attain this result.

The first example is the one shown in Fig. 182. A is the cylinder shaft running in a phosphor bronze bush B, to which is cast a lug that can be set-screwed to the framing, so that it will be prevented from revolving with the shaft. This bush is contained in an eccentric iron bush C, which in its turn is also enclosed by an outer eccentric bush D, the whole arrangement being set in the loose cylinder pedestal F, which is firmly bolted to the framing of the card. Each eccentric, C and D, is formed with a projection M,

and to these are attached, by the pins J, the adjusting screws G and K. The screws pass through the snugs H and L, and by their means the eccentric can be moved in any possible direction required, so that if the centre shaft A is moved in any way it can easily be restored to its original position. In order to be able to readily detect whether the centre has been disturbed, the pedestal F has turned on its face a raised portion E, which is always concentric with the flexible. By employing a suitable gauge, which is made to



PATENT ADJUSTABLE CYLINDER PEDESTAL

Fig. 182.

fit this boss as well as the shaft A, we can detect at once whether A has moved or not; when it is found to be impossible to fit the gauge, the eccentric through the adjusting screws must be manipulated until this condition is obtained. In good machines, with bearings of the best material, it is scarcely necessary to touch the arrangement for long periods.

Our next example is given in Fig. 183. Here the cylinder shaft A is mounted in steps or brasses B and C, which slide vertically in the pedestal D. They are fixed in position when working, the bottom one B resting upon an eccentric

E, by means of which the whole arrangement can be raised or lowered. The eccentric is actuated by a worm and worm wheel F and G, so that a gradual and delicate adjustment can be made in a vertical direction. In addition to this, a lateral movement can be made by the adjusting screw at H ; a combination of the two movements will compensate for any angular displacement of the cylinder shaft.

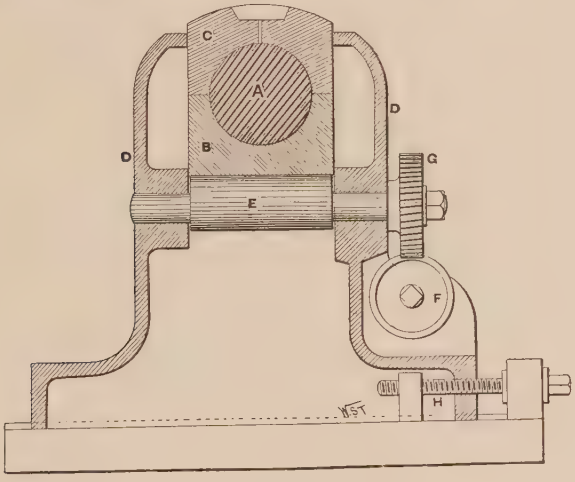


FIG. 183.

Fig. 184 represents another method, but differs from the previous one in the manner of obtaining the vertical adjustment, the same thing being effected by the employment of a wedge or cottar A. The brasses rest upon the wedge, so that its movement in either direction gives us the necessary compensation for the vertical displacement. The horizontal adjustment is performed in the usual way by the screw and nuts B.

The next illustration, Fig. 185, shows us another method,

which makes use of a wedge to raise the centre vertically, but the lateral movement is obtained by arranging the bearing itself in such a manner that the brasses can be moved sideways by means of adjusting screws, the amount of the adjustment being denoted on a special index-plate formed on the head of the screw.

There are many other effective arrangements for obtaining adjustment of the cylinder centre based upon the principle of the wedge, or its modification, the screw, but

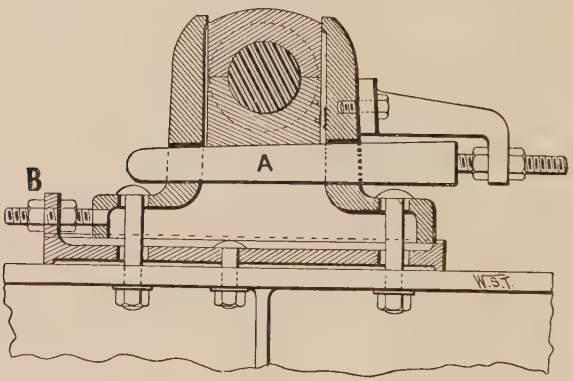


FIG 184.

the examples given may be taken as characteristic of the principal ones in use at the present time.

We can now direct our attention to the cotton as it passes forward after being carded by the combined action of the cylinder and flats. When the fibres cease to be under the influence of the wire of the flats, they are in a very loose and irregularly arranged condition on the teeth of the cylinder, and as a consequence offer little or no resistance to any action that tends to lift them from their position. The least draught would have this effect, but it is carefully

guarded against by covering in the cylinder between the flats and the doffer. When the cotton reaches the doffer, the very close setting that is adopted enables them to become attached to the wires, and when once this action of transferring the fibres commences, the cylinder is bound to continue it, for one fibre is crossed and recrossed by others;

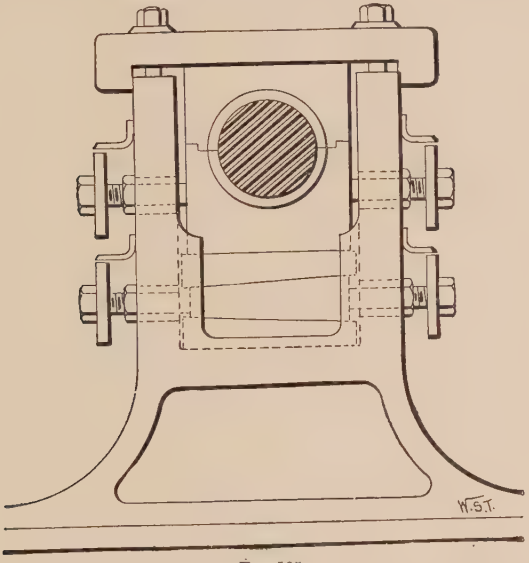


FIG. 185.

when one is taken away others are compelled to follow directly, or be so affected that the doffer easily catches them up. As the doffer takes the fibres from the cylinder it slowly carries them round, and this slow movement has the natural effect of causing the cylinder, as it were, to deposit the fibres in a condensed form upon the doffer, the degree or amount of the condensation of course affecting the weight per yard of the resulting web or sliver, according to the

relative speeds of the cylinder and doffer. This action of the doffer may be considered its chief object, for it is scarcely necessary to point out that in any average card the carding of the cotton is completed as the cotton leaves the flats, and its condition then is such that practically nothing more is done to it except placing it on the doffer. It may possibly happen that an isolated entanglement will get between the two organs, but it is doubtful whether it will be carded in the passage. If pieces of cotton are placed on the cylinder, and allowed to go down between the doffer, they are invariably seen in the web in almost the same condition as they entered, so that we may fairly conclude that no carding (such as the action between the flats and the cylinder) takes place at the doffer. By faulty adjustment of the doffer in connection with the cylinder we can destroy what up to that point has been good carding; if too closely set, short fibres, neps, etc., may be taken from the cylinder teeth, or if set too widely apart, patchy or clouded results will be obtained owing to the doffer not taking the fibres from the cylinder regularly.

A drawing is given in Fig. 186 showing the doffer and cylinder, together with the arrangement now generally adopted of covering them in. Sheet steel, polished both on the outside and inside, is used for these covers, and where they join between the two an almost knife edge is obtained, which very effectively prevents accumulations of fibres at this point, and so destroys that tendency to cloudiness caused through their getting on the doffer at intervals, which formerly caused so much trouble. By filling in a portion of the cover ends a receptacle or chamber C is obtained, into which the flat strippings can fall, and from which they can be collected with a minimum of trouble or waste. A great advantage of the system

shown in the drawing, Fig. 186, consists in arranging the cover upon a turned segment H concentric with the doffer. It simply rests upon this segment, and also rests against a similar one on the cylinder, a catch J keeping it in position. When it is desired to test the space between the cylinder and doffer, the whole cover can be unlatched and drawn back to the position shown at D with the slightest effort, and the same catch J will also latch it in this

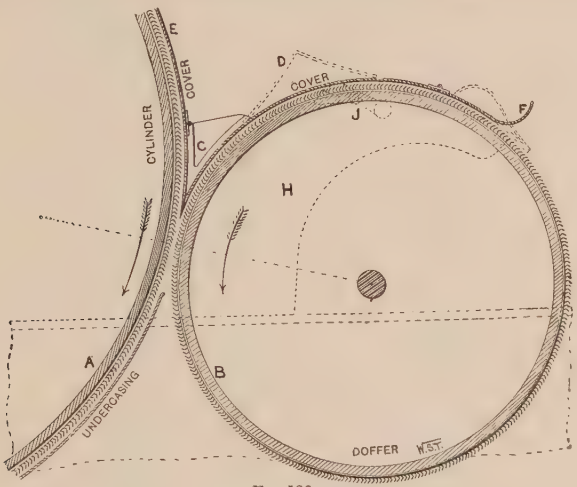


FIG. 186.

position. For grinding purposes the cover E can be turned down for the cylinder, whilst the end of the cover F is also hinged so that it can be turned back in the same way when the doffer requires grinding.

Since the cotton lies very loosely upon the surface of the doffer, it is a comparatively easy matter to take it off. This is effected by using a steel comb set close to the teeth, and causing it to vibrate very rapidly through a short arc of a circle, the means employed for doing this being usually

an eccentric and lever. From the doffer the sheet or web is taken forward and passed between a pair of rollers called calender rollers, or sometimes between two or three pairs

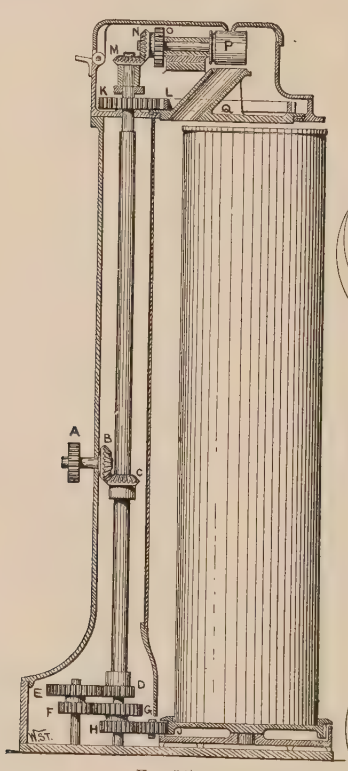


Fig. 187.

Fig. 189.

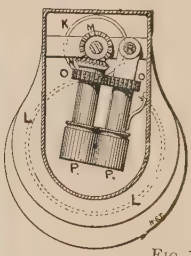


Fig. 190.

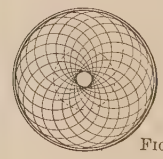


Fig. 191.

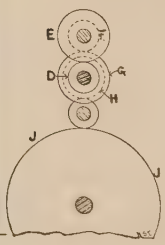


Fig. 188.

of fluted rollers called a draw box. From these it emerges in the form of a thick, loose rope, and is coiled very ingeniously and compactly in an upright tin cylinder by means of a small machine called a coiler, Fig. 187. The

sliver is carried to the top of the coiler, and passed down a funnel-shaped hole between a pair of rollers, P. These are speeded a little quicker than the calender rollers of the card in order to keep the sliver tight. They deliver it down an inclined hole formed in the boss of the wheel L, which, when it is revolved, carries the sliver round in a circle at the point where it emerges from the hole. This action winds it in the can in a circle a little larger than half the diameter. In order that the next circle shall not lie upon the first one, the can itself is caused to revolve, and so the circles of sliver are laid side by side until the whole can is filled. It will thus be seen that in the coiler we have two distinct movements, each receiving its motion from the card through the wheel A. The coiler plate is driven from the upright shaft through the wheel K, the same shaft also driving the calender roller through the bevels M and N. At the bottom end of the shaft a wheel D, keyed to the shaft, drives E, to which is connected F, and so forms a compound carrier. F drives G, which runs loose upon the upright shaft; and H, to which it is cast, drives the can disc wheel J. A plan view of this gearing is shown clearly in Fig. 188. The whole arrangement at the top and bottom must be geared in such a way as to obtain the most regular and compact condition for the coils, so that on withdrawing the sliver broken ends and strained portions will be avoided.

It is frequently asked if the coiler twists the sliver when laying it in the can; and the answer is often given that it does do so, but only very slightly—say, about one twist in 20 inches. Sometimes the answer is based upon the well-known appearance of the coils, but occasionally a calculation is used to show this result. Such a calculation can easily be made, but it is quite unnecessary to do so,

as it is based upon finding the amount of sliver delivered to the can, and upon the number of coils placed in the can; or, what is the same thing, the number of revolutions of the wheel L. We can see that in consequence of the sliver passing down the tube it will describe a circle, and as the end in the can follows the same path, the sliver will naturally be twisted once for every coil; but when the coil is withdrawn, this twist will be usually taken out, for on uncoiling it will twist in the opposite direction to the twist put in by the coiler plate. We use the word "usually" advisedly, because this is the general arrangement, but it can happen that the twist put in when uncoiling may be in the same direction as the one put in during the coiling, and in this case a double amount of twist will be given.

The rollers P are shown in section in Fig. 189. One of them is so arranged that it can move a little on one side round the stud R as centre (Fig. 190), according to the thickness of sliver going through. A spring keeps the two rollers together, and each is driven positively. Fig. 191 represents the coils as arranged in the can, and it will be noticed that each coil goes beyond the centre of the can—a condition which causes the whole of the coils to be well locked together.

Stripping Brush.—It has been explained that the flats, in their passage over the cylinder, become charged with fibres. These fibres must be cleared away before the flats again commence to work, so brushes or combs are provided for this purpose. In the case of combs, we have an illustration in Figs. 192 and 193. An eccentric A is driven from the cylinder or other point and it gives a reciprocating motion to a lever D centred at E. On the end of D is mounted a shaft P extending the full width of the card, to which is

screwed a comb R so set as to easily comb off the surface fibres from the flat. The flats are further cleaned by the brush K, so that we get clear flats again for their work when

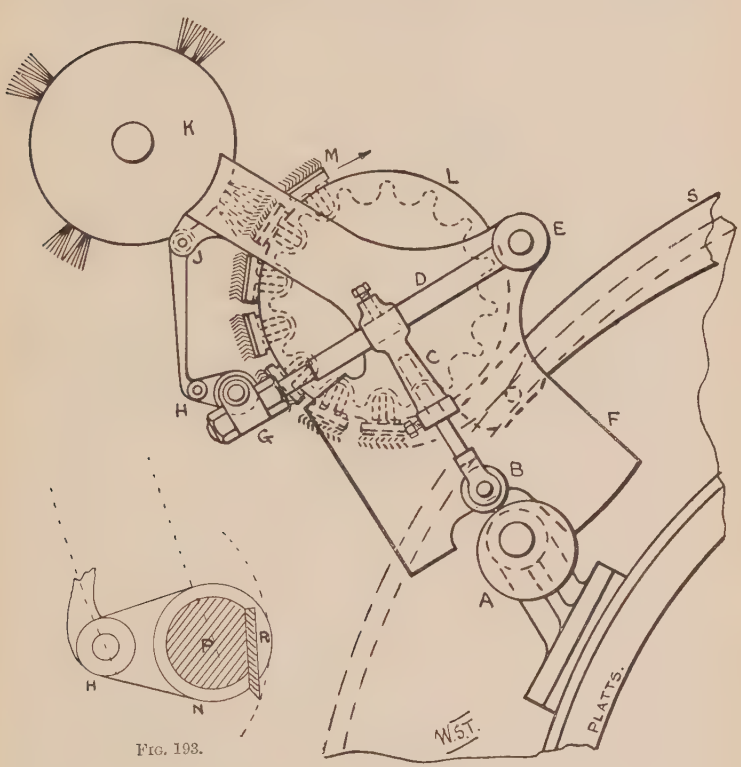


FIG. 192.

FIG. 193.

they reach the front of the card. The waste comes from the comb R in strips and forms a valuable waste product that is utilised in spinning lower counts of yarn. A refinement of this form of stripping is to be noted, though it is not

generally applied. In order to prevent any possibility of the comb R touching the wire of the flats on its return movement after stripping, the shaft is provided with an extension to H, and this is coupled to a link centred at J. This arrangement enables the comb R to be brought

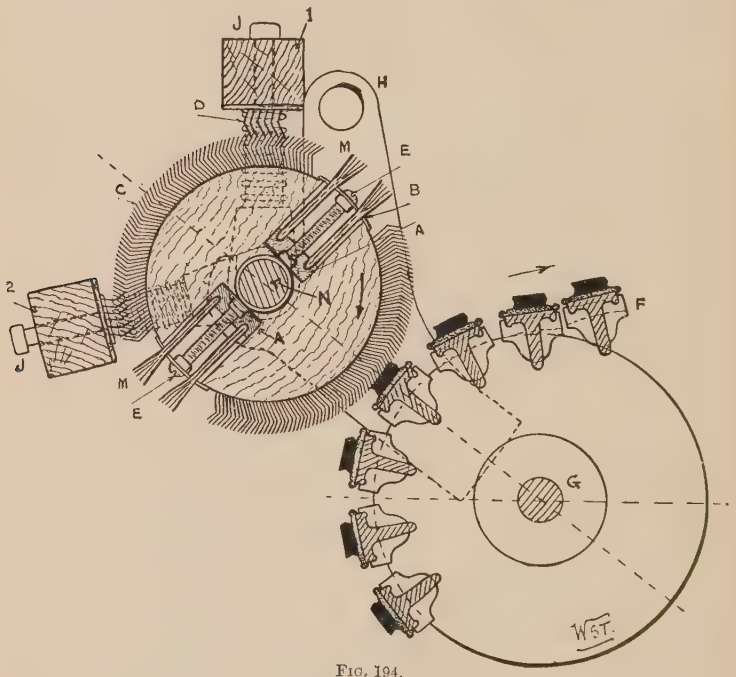


FIG. 194.

near to the flats at the moment of stripping, and moved away from the flats on its return journey.

In Fig. 194 an improved form of brush is shown, made by Tweedale and Smalley, for cleaning the flats more thoroughly than the usual brush given at K in Fig. 128. A wire brush is used, having bristles to break the continuity

of the wire. The wire of this brush will get charged with the cotton, but at intervals the wire clearers 1 and 2 are pressed down into the teeth of the brush (the brush being turned in the opposite direction for this purpose), and the cotton is lifted bodily away and taken off the clearer wire by the attendant.

There are a number of various forms of stripping arrangements similar to those illustrated; the ones given are representative of their type and purpose.

GRINDING.—The question of grinding the various organs of a card is a very important one, and its consideration has been deferred until now in order to leave the subject free from the accessory surroundings. A few of the main characteristics of the wire have already been dealt with. It now remains to add that the wire itself in its cross-section has a considerable effect in its specific action in carrying the fibres of cotton forward. Up to within a few years ago, ordinary round iron wire was used, and the grinding was performed by means of a roller covered with emery grinding on its upper surface or top. By several authorities these conditions (except that the wire now is tempered steel) are held to be the most suitable still for good work; but in view of the fact that no demonstrable difference exists when other sections of wire are used, it is doubtful whether preference can be given to round wire as the best. Various sections of wire are represented in Fig. 195. A is the plough-ground wire, and is formed by grinding the sides away, almost to the bend, by special emery discs; B is the round wire; and C the so-called needle-pointed wire, in which it will be seen that only a small portion of each side near the top is ground away; D is a double convex, or, as it is sometimes called, an oval section, and is made so by rolling; E is triangular in section, and is

formed in the same way. The dotted circle represents the corresponding diameter of a round wire. The arrow shows the direction in which the points of the wire travel on the cylinder, etc., and it will be noticed that the narrower part will catch the fibres first. To what extent each of these sections can claim to do this with the best results is a point upon which opinions differ widely, but when we consider that the top of the tooth is the chief element in carrying the cotton onward, it is on this point that we ought to seek for a solution. That form which offers the greatest area (other things being equal) of catching the fibres is certainly preferable to other forms; and on this consideration the round wire is superior—for here we have a full semicircle, any point of which is in a position to catch the fibres. Other considerations, however, may modify this superiority, for there is considerable doubt in regard to the precise action of the teeth when they come to pulling asunder any entanglement, and it

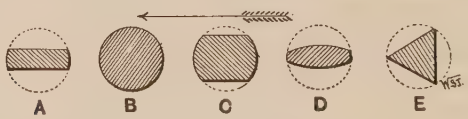


FIG. 195.

is the divergence of opinion upon this head that permits the various sections of wire to have their advocates. With the exception, perhaps, of triangular wire, they are all extensively used, and so far as experience goes little or no difference is noticeable in the results of their action.

In grinding the cylinder and doffer a Horsfall roller is used, of which an illustration will be given later, while a grinding roller, the full width of the cylinder, and having a small reciprocating motion, is used for the flats. In either case the emery, in passing over the points of the wire,

causes them to bend backwards and forwards at a very rapid rate as long as the grinding continues. If the wire is not of a good quality, or its foundation not well made, the card clothing will soon break up and become useless for good work. Tempering the wire enables it to withstand the vibration of working most effectually, and it is now the custom to temper all kinds of card wire for the sake of the extra resilience thereby obtained. The cylinder is generally ground in a position just over the doffer, whilst the doffer itself has the grinding roller applied almost vertically over its centre—these positions, of course, being chosen because they are the most convenient for the purpose. The amount of the grinding depends very much upon the experience of the man who has charge of the operation. In some mills frequent grinding (about every fortnight) of a slight character is each time resorted to, whilst in others the cards are only ground at longer intervals—say, every six weeks and upwards. It is much the better plan to grind frequently and lightly: a good point is thus preserved, and the rough action of a severe grinding is avoided.

In grinding the flats, it used to be the general practice to place the emery roller over the top of the returning flats, and grind them in this position. In striving after perfection it was discovered that the flats, resting on the flexible bend at each end, were deflected in the middle through their own weight, so that instead of a straight surface of wire it thus became slightly convex: as they returned over the top the wire surface would be upwards, and the deflection would, of course, exist here also, but in the opposite direction, so that a concave surface would be the result. A grinding roller would straighten this surface, and the natural effect of its doing so would be to increase the convexity of the flat when it came round to the cylinder

again. This state of things is undoubtedly an evil, and so we find that various remedies have been adopted, both for strengthening the flat and also in applying the grinding apparatus in positions where the deflection could be neutralised. One of these antiflexion grinding motions is shown in Fig. 196. The grinding roller is placed under the flats at the point where they are about to enter upon their work on the cylinder. In this position they have their wire downwards, and are in practically the same position as when working, their deflection giving them a convex surface. The grinding roller grinds this surface perfectly straight, and in this condition they work, and there is no doubt that better results are obtained in consequence.

Another feature must be carefully observed in connection with this grinding operation. We have previously alluded to and illustrated the heel-and-toe characteristic of the flat. In grinding, this must be carefully preserved, and, as the wire surface is not parallel to the travelling surface of the flat end, special surfaces must be formed for the flat to work upon in passing under the emery roller, so that the grinding takes place parallel to the wire teeth. In our sketch, Fig. 197, instead of the usual flat bowl there are two smaller ones, geared together so as to work regularly. The space between them is utilised to form a kind of bed for the flat to travel upon during the grinding (see also Fig. 200). This bed is made with a narrow raised strip, and the flat ends contain a corresponding recess, so that directly a flat comes upon the bed it is tipped up a little, and the necessary inclination for the heel and toe is obtained. The details of the motion are clearly shown in the drawings, Figs. 196 to 200. An arrangement is given in Fig. 201, and though not used as an antiflexion motion, is still very serviceable as a means of grinding the flat to its correct

inclination. The flats travel forward, and in doing so the portion D comes into contact with one end E of a lever F. An incline permits the flat to go forward, but directly it begins to move along the surface of E the pressure

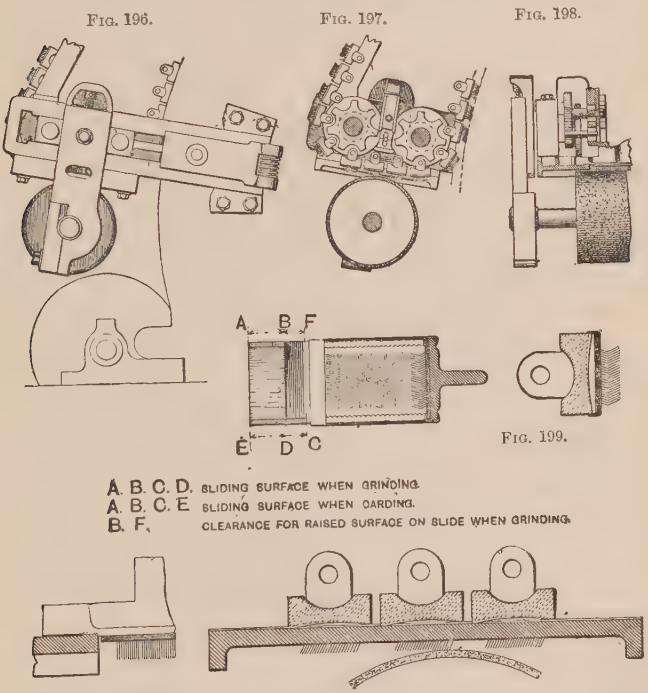


FIG. 200.

obtained by the weight on F presses it against an inclined sliding catch-piece G, which contains the required angle for grinding. In this position it passes on and is ground, and at the same time it moves G along with it until it is released by an inclined stop cast upon the fixing. Immediately the inclined catch G is released, it returns to its

original position in consequence of the action of the weighted quadrant-lever J, to which it is connected through the toothed rack C.

A very effective grinding motion for the card is given in Fig. 202. It represents an excellent attempt to grind the flats under the same conditions as exist when they are

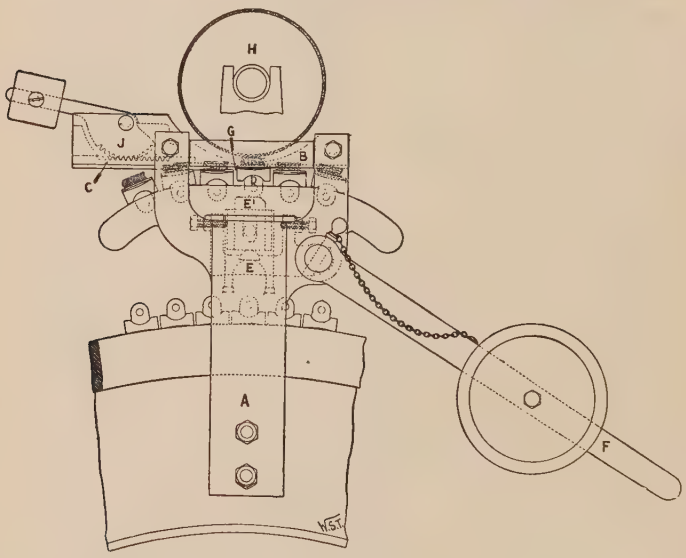


FIG. 201.

in their working position over the cylinder. An examination of the drawing will show that it differs radically from the examples already illustrated. Briefly it may be described as follows:—The flats in returning over the top of the cylinder to the front of the machine pass under a curved plate L, whose curvature is almost equal to that of the cylinder; they are pressed against the under side of the plate by the end K of the weighted lever J, and the

pressure continues so long as the flat is under the grinding roller B. Under ordinary working conditions the delicacy of the grinding operation is not likely to force the flat from the surface of L, though it is as well to guard against

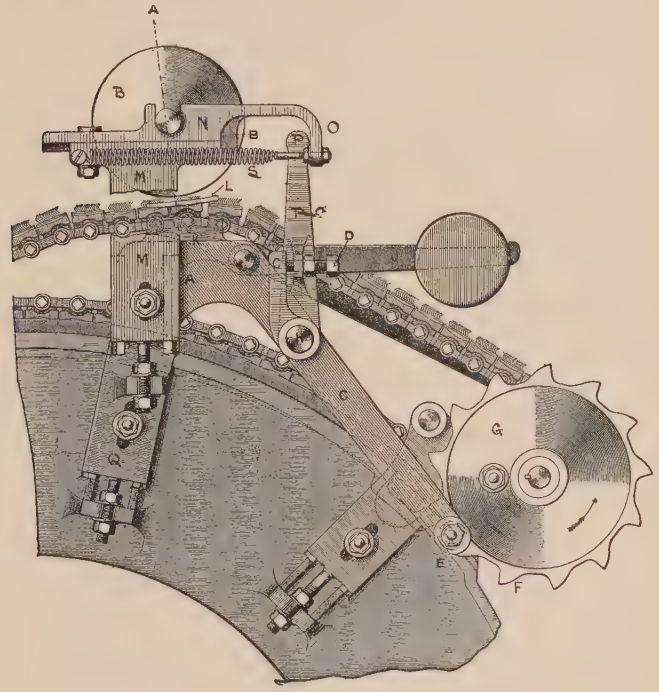


FIG. 202.

carelessness in this direction. If the flat travelled under the roller as described it would be ground to a perfect circle corresponding and parallel to the cylinder wire ; but inasmuch as the flat must be ground to be farther away from the cylinder at one edge than at the other in order to

obtain the "heel and toe" effect, an ingenious device is introduced to bring this about.

The grinding roller B is mounted in a bracket N, which is capable of sliding on the upper surface of the grinding roller fixing M. A projection of N at O is arranged to be pressed against by the end P of a lever centred at H, and whose other end E rests against specially cut cam teeth F on a disc G fixed on the end of the flat bowl. The pitch of these teeth corresponds to that of the flats, so that as the disc revolves each tooth moves the end E in and out, and correspondingly the bracket N slides upon the surface of M. When the cam surface of the tooth F has moved the grinding roller sufficiently forward, a spring S attached to N at O and to the fixing M forces the slide N back to its starting-point ready for the next flat.

Now the effect of moving the grinding roller during the passage of the flat under it whilst pressed against the surface L depends entirely upon the difference in the inclination of the curve L and the surface upon which N is made to slide. To illustrate this important feature an enlarged drawing is given in Fig. 203. If the flat which is pressed against J K passed forward as shown, it would be ground parallel to G H and the heel and toe entirely ground out; but by moving the slide in the direction of the arrow the grinding roller is brought gradually a little nearer to that edge of the flat nearest to the end J, and so follows in grinding the inclination of the flat to the cylinder. The two lines L M and J K will show the effect clearly; we have the flat following the curved surface J K whilst the grinding roller moves along the inclined surface E F; a combination is thus produced, which results in the grinding of the flat along the line L M. The upper part of the figure shows a flat with the inclination marked on it. An

advantage of this apparatus lies in the facility by which it can be easily regulated. It is sometimes considered desirable to have the first three or four rows of wire parallel to the cylinder and the rest to be inclined; this effect is

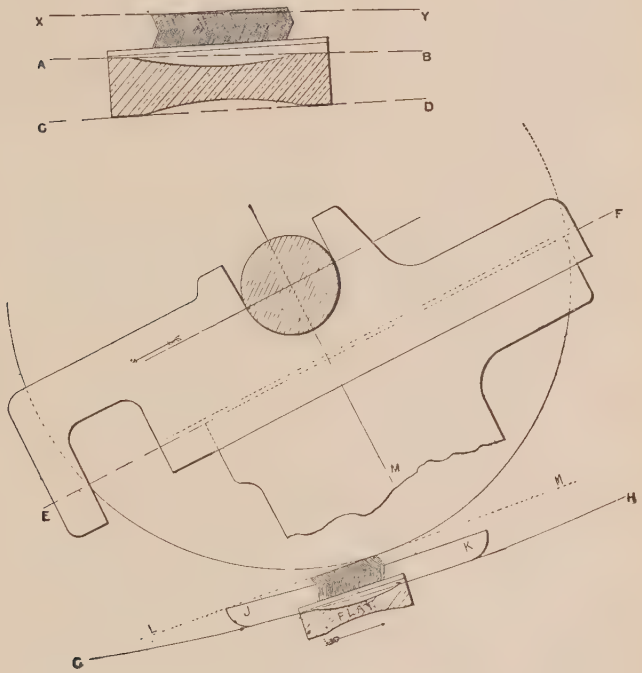


FIG. 203.

readily obtained by means of the setting screw shown at D. By leaving a small space between the end of the lever C and the setting screw D the roller is permitted to remain stationary for a short interval until the disc G moves the end C into contact; this means that a short parallel surface is ground on the flat; afterwards when C comes

into contact with D the remainder of the flat is ground to the inclination required.

Before leaving this part of the subject we may state that the stripping of the cylinder and doffer is performed by a wire brush, which has the additional effect of burnishing the teeth and partially freeing them from any roughness they may have on their surfaces. The operation is usually performed two or three times a day, but varies according to the character of the cotton used and the quantity being carded.

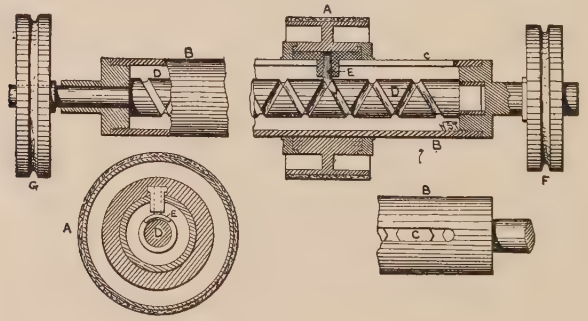


Fig. 204.

The Horsefall roller, which has already been mentioned, is represented in the accompanying drawing, Fig. 204. It has a grinding disc A, covered with emery. This disc slides upon a steel tube B, having a slot C cut longitudinally throughout its length. Within the tube B is a combined right and left handed screw D, the disc being connected to this screw by means of a fork E, which passes through the slot C. It will be seen that by fixing a pulley F on the end of the tube B it can be driven at whatever speed is desired, and if the screw D remains stationary a very quick traverse motion will be given to the disc; but if the screw is driven by means of the pulley G fixed on its shaft, the

traverse of the disc can be increased or diminished at will. The two threads on the screw combine at each end, so that a constant to-and-fro motion is given to the disc.

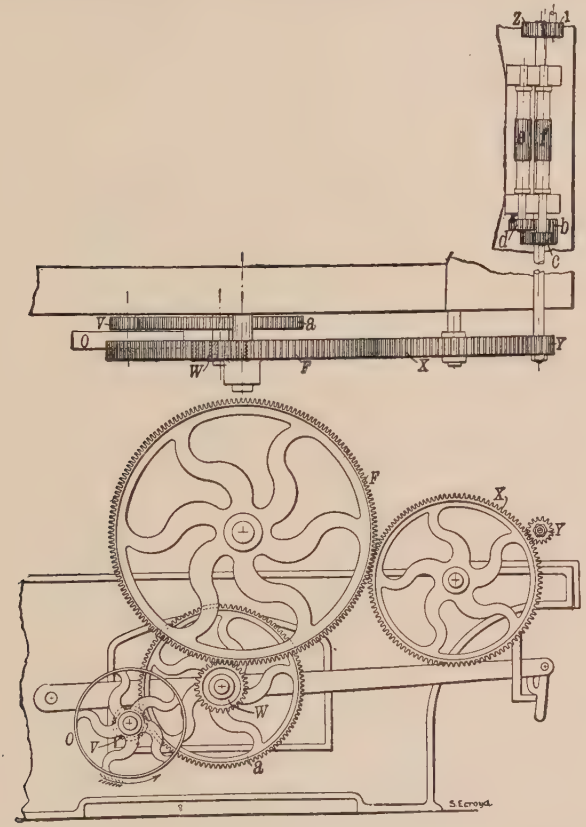


Fig. 205.

A drawing is given in Fig. 205 showing Howard and Bullough's device for overcoming a slight defect which exists in some cards. As a rule, the doffer is driven from

the taker-in by a very small pulley and crossed belt; slippage might easily occur unless great care is exercised in keeping the straps tight, and when such slippage does take place the web becomes cloudy, and even the wire of the doffer may get clogged with the fibres deposited upon it. By the arrangement shown, this possibility is considerably

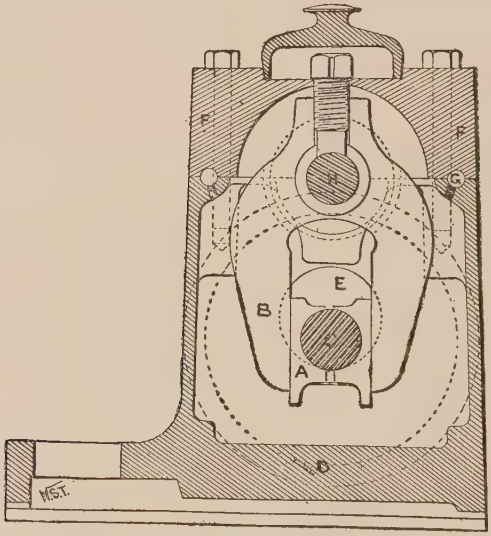


FIG. 206.

reduced; it permits a larger pulley on the taker-in by the introduction of another small driving wheel at Y, where the reduction in speed is easily made; for a similar reason the crossed belt is replaced by an open belt.

In Fig. 206 a drawing is given of a section of a doffer comb arrangement.

The number of revolutions, or rather vibrations, a comb has to make varies, but as a rule 1500 per minute will be

the average. To do this successfully it is necessary that the box containing the motion, as well as the motion itself, must be very strongly made and thoroughly balanced. Also, since such a high rate of speed will result in wear, the bearings of the shaft must be arranged so as to be capable of adjustment, and in the sketch under consideration this is done by using conical bearings. The driving pulley is fixed on the shaft E, and eccentric to this shaft, but connected with it, is the pin C, working in a sliding block A. This sliding block works between the jaws B of the lever, having H as its centre. H is a shaft to which the comb is fixed, and from which it receives its motion. The revolution of E causes the lever B to perform a vibratory movement, and its attachment to the comb shaft H transmits the same motion to the comb. The eccentric portion revolves constantly in a reservoir of oil, and to prevent the rapid action dashing the oil about so as to escape through the joints of the lid, grooves G are made. The oil in working its way through is stopped by these grooves, and falls back into the box again through holes drilled for that purpose.

Slow Motion for Doffer.—Fig. 207 represents Brooks and Doxey's doffer driving and slow motion driving.

The drawing is self-evident, so a description is unnecessary. The reader will readily note from the wheels how much the speed of the doffer will be reduced by changing the strap from one fast pulley to the other.

Feed Roller Weighting.—In Fig. 157 the usual method of weighting the feed roller is shown. As an improvement on this another drawing is presented in Fig. 208. The object is to weight the roller so that the pressure acts on the nose of the dish feed plate, so that in the sketch Fig. 208 this pressure will act along the line AD. The fulcrum

of the lever is at E, and a link C connects the roller ends to the end D of the weight lever. The weight at G therefore tends to pull the roller A in the direction indicated by the dotted line AD.

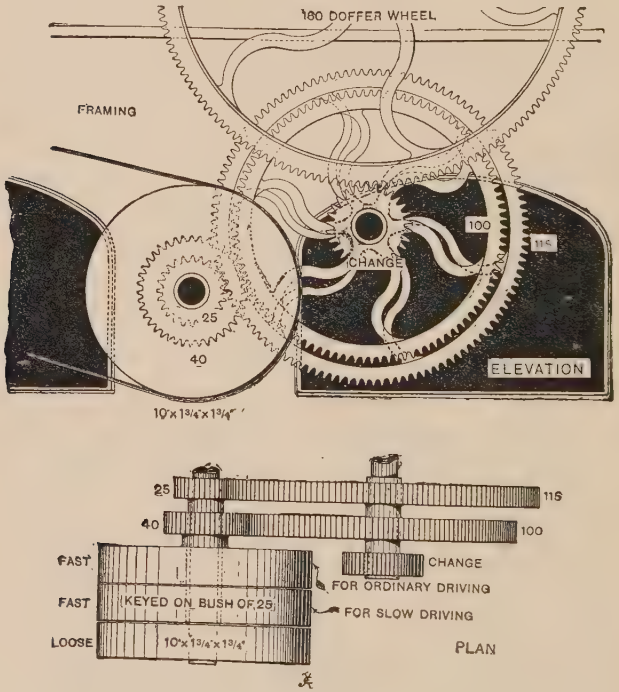


FIG. 207.

The Web from Doffer.—The web of cotton as it comes from the doffer represents the result of the work done by the card on the lap brought from the scutcher. A glance at this web will tell us a host of facts regarding the original lap and the effectiveness or otherwise of the carding, but experience is necessary to be able to judge correctly. The

more apparent faults in a web, such as neps, cloudiness, weak places, ragged selvedges, lumps, are all indications of something wrong with the lap or the operation of carding, and maybe the cotton. A baggy lap shows a wrong setting of the doffing comb. Granted a perfect web comes from the doffer, so far as human judgment enables one to decide,

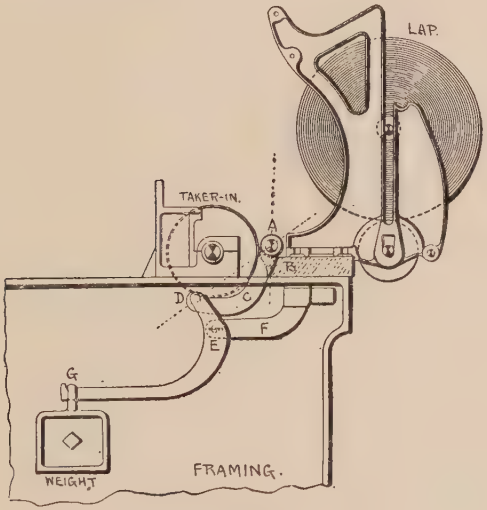


FIG. 208.

weighings will quickly show us that it is very irregular, and from this we may conclude that the web does not indicate to us much more than the crudest and most apparent faults of the resulting card sliver.

It may be interesting to point out that, in addition to the card being a vast doubling machine, we have quite an appreciable doubling effect in the web as it travels from the doffer surface to the calender rollers.

In Fig. 209 the calender rollers E are shown set about

the centre line of the doffer. The web is stripped from

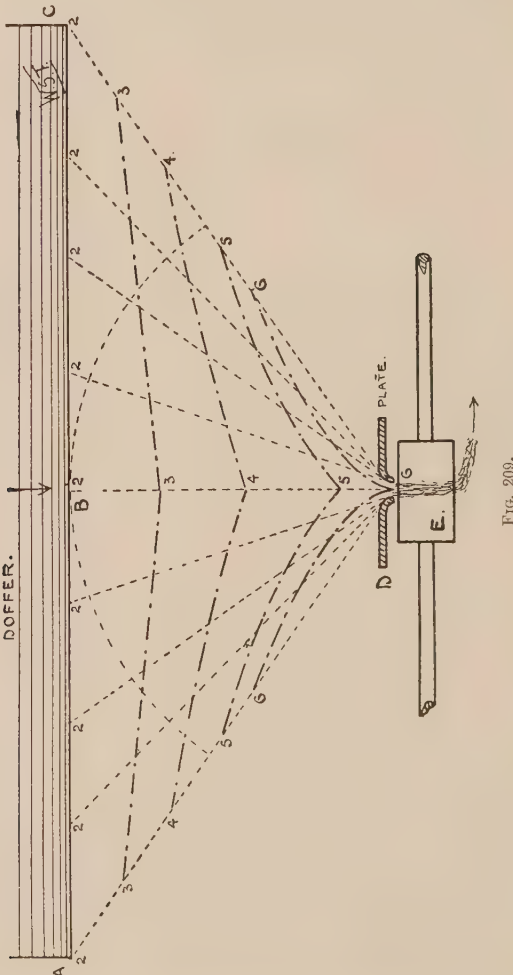


FIG. 209.

the doffer along the line 2, 2, 2, and every point of the web

along this line will advance towards the calender rollers at an equal rate; but, since the web assumes the form of a triangle, all the points 2, 2, 2 will not reach the calender rollers at the same time; for instance, the point on the web at B will arrive at the calender rollers at the time when the points at A and at C will reach positions A6 and C6 respectively; in other words, if a straight line were drawn on the web at the doffer, it would become two curved lines such as 6, 6, 6 by the time the middle point of it got to the calender rollers. Here we have a clear case of a given set of fibres being drawn apart and folded together in a new position with other sets of fibres.

If the calender rollers are placed out of the centre line of the doffer, the result is a more irregular mix up of the fibres in the web, and a better doubling effect is obtained; this is well illustrated in Fig. 210. Both these web diagrams are figured so that each point of the web can be traced as it advances; for instance, the line 2, 2, 2 becomes 3, 3, 3 and 4, 4, 4, and so on until it assumes the line 6, 6, 6.

Gearing and Calculation.—The gearing of the card may now be considered, and for this purpose two drawings, each complete in itself, are given.[1] One is an elevation of the driving, Fig. 211, the other, Fig. 212, being a plan view showing the relative positions of the various wheels and pulleys side by side. The machine is driven from the line shaft through the pulley F. From here the motion is taken by belt to the taker-in V, the other end of which transfers it to the barrow pulley H, and on through a train of wheels the doffer X. The feed roller is driven from the doffer through the side shaft and suitable gearing. The flats are

[1] Calculations and full drawings of the gearing of all the chief cards used in our mills will be found in the author's book on *Cotton Spinning Calculations.*

generally driven in the manner shown in the sketch, though

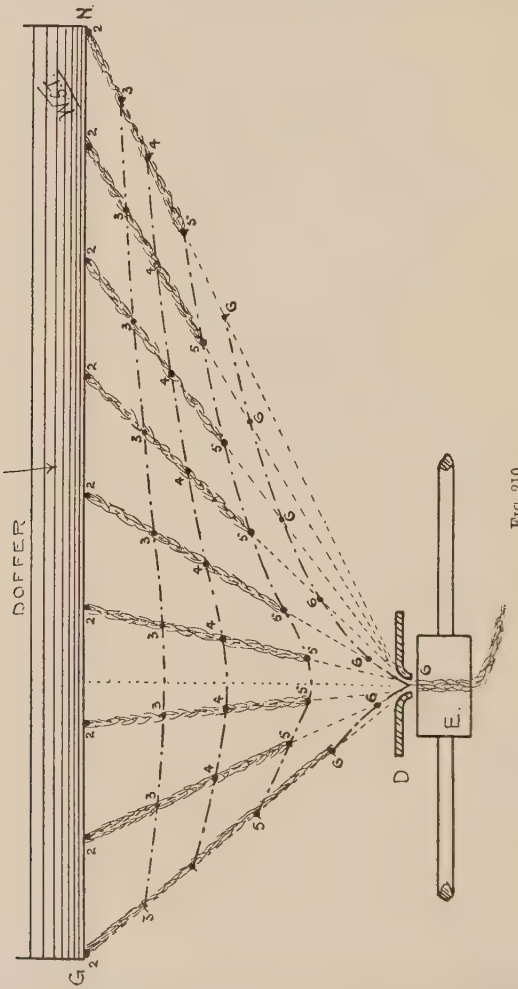


FIG. 210.

several methods have been tried to do it more directly—

chiefly by the employment of epicyclic trains of wheels—

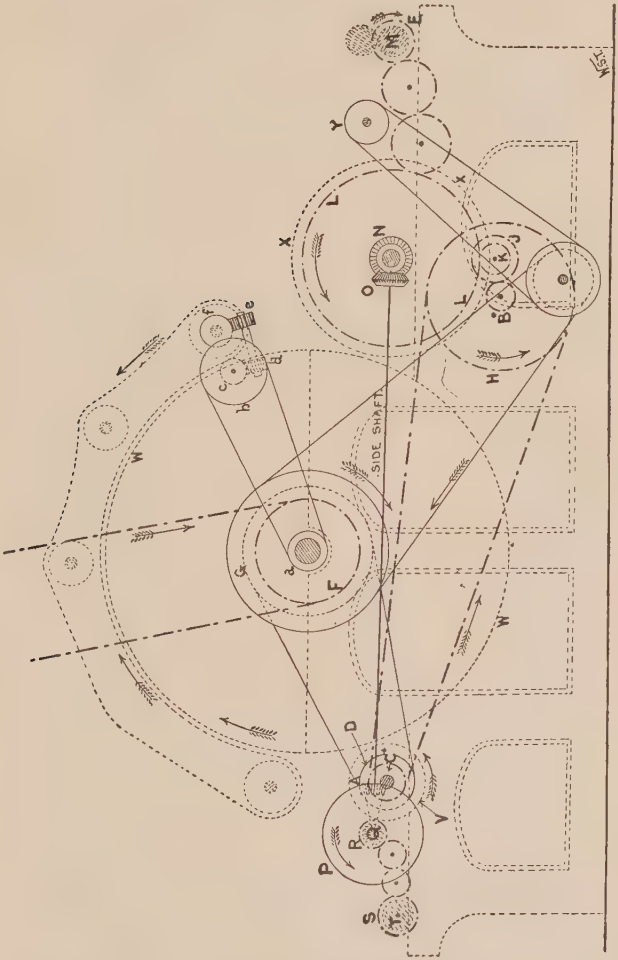
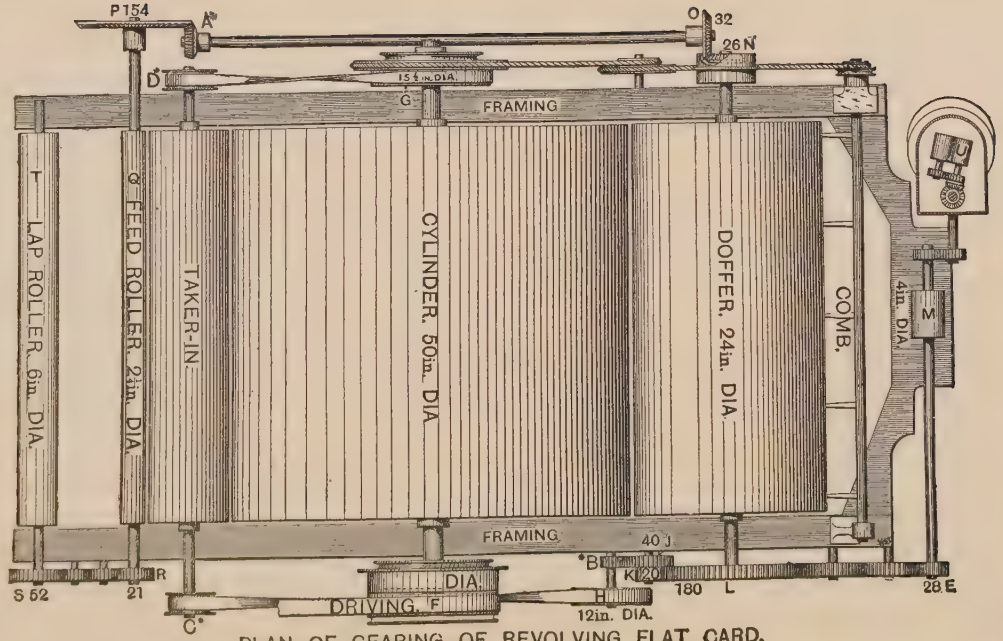


FIG. 211.

but hitherto little success has attended the efforts made in



PLAN OF GEARING OF REVOLVING FLAT CARD.

Fig. 212.

this direction. Slight variations to the gearing represented in the drawing exist in other makes of the machine, but these will not affect the principle of the calculations, and the rules can be easily modified to suit any differences that may exist.

The following table of particulars will be of use in putting to a practical test the formulæ that are given :—

A	Side shaft wheel	10 to 40 teeth, say	= 18 teeth
B	Barrow wheel	16 to 40 teeth „	= 26 „
C	Taker-in pulley	3 to 6 in. dia. „	= 6 in. diam.
D	„ „	5 to 10 in. diam. „	= 6½ „
E	Calender block wheel		= 28 teeth
F	Driving pulley	say	= 18 in. diam.
G	Taker-in driving pulley		= 15½ „
H	Swing lever pulley		= 12 „
J	Compound carrier		= 40 teeth
K	„ „		= 20 „
L	Doffer wheel		= 180 „
M	Calender roller		= 4 in. diam.
N	Side shaft driving bevel wheel		= 26 teeth
O	„ bevel wheel		= 32 „
P	Feed roller wheel		= 154 „
Q	Feed roller		= 2¼ in. diam
R	Lap roller driving wheel		= 21 teeth
S	Lap roller wheel		= 52 „
T	Lap roller		= 6 in. diam
U	Coiler calender roller		= 2⅛ „
V	Taker-in	Diameter on wire	= 9¾ in. „
W	Cylinder	„ „	= 50¾ „
X	Doffer	„ „	= 24¾ „
Y	Comb pulley		——
a	Flat driving pulley	3½ to 7 in. diam., say	= 5 in. diam.
b	„ „		= 12 „
c	Bottom worm		= Single
d	Worm wheel	12 and 17 teeth, say	= 17 teeth
e	Top worm		= Single
f	Worm wheel		= 40 teeth
	Speed of cyl., 130 to 180 revs. per min.,		say = 160 revs.
	„ comb		1600 to 2000 revs

It will be seen that four change-places are shown in the

drawings, all of which affect either the production or the weight of a given length of sliver.

By changing the wheel A, the production and draft are altered, as well as the weight of a given length of sliver. The speed of the doffer is not interfered with by the change, but the web is heavier or lighter according to the change made.

By changing B, C, D, or H, the production is changed without affecting the draft.

By changing D, and also changing C in the opposite proportion, nothing is affected except the speed of the taker-in.

The draft can be altered by changing B, C, or H, and then changing A in the opposite proportion.

To any one acquainted with the manipulation of gearing, a variety of combinations can be obtained, according to the change wheels or pulley in hand at the time.

(1) Total draft $= \frac{S \times P \times O \times L \times \text{diam. of M}}{R \times A \times N \times E \times \text{diam. of T}} = \frac{52 \times 154 \times 32 \times 180 \times 4}{21 \times 18 \times 26 \times 28 \times 6} = 111{\cdot}7$

(2) Revs. of $T = \frac{\text{Revs. of W} \times G \times C \times B \times K \times N \times A}{D \times H \times J \times L \times O \times P}$

$$= \frac{160 \times 15{\cdot}5 \times 6 \times 26 \times 20 \times 26 \times 18}{6{\cdot}5 \times 12 \times 40 \times 180 \times 32 \times 174} = 0{\cdot}528.$$

(3) Surface speed of $T = 0{\cdot}528 \times 6 \times 3{\cdot}1416 = 9{\cdot}95$ in. per min

(4) Revs. of $M = \frac{\text{Revs. of W} \times G \times C \times B \times K}{D \times H \times J \times E}$

$$= \frac{160 \times 15{\cdot}5 \times 6 \times 26 \times 20}{6{\cdot}5 \times 12 \times 40 \times 28} = 88{\cdot}57.$$

(5) Surface speed of $M = 88{\cdot}57 \times 4 \times 3{\cdot}1416 = 1113{\cdot}45$ in. per min.

The total draft can be obtained by dividing the surface speed of the calender roller M by the surface speed of the lap roller T, so that by dividing No. 5 by No. 3 we obtain—

(6) $$\text{Total draft} = \frac{1113 \cdot 45}{9 \cdot 95} = 111 \cdot 7.$$

The draft wheel, or feed wheel A, is obtained, according to the draft required, by working out the rule No. 1 and dividing the result by the draft wanted. For instance—

(7) $$\text{Draft wheel A} = \frac{\text{S} \times \text{P} \times \text{O} \times \text{L} \times \text{diam. of M}}{\text{R} \times \text{draft} \times \text{N} \times \text{E} \times \text{diam. of T}}$$
$$= \frac{52 \times 154 \times 32 \times 180 \times 4}{21 \times 111 \cdot 7 \times 26 \times 28 \times 6} = 18 \text{ teeth.}$$

In order to save the trouble of working out the long calculation above, it is found useful to obtain what is called the constant number. This number is the result of a calculation of No. 1, but leaving the wheel A out, and from it we can get the draft or the draft wheel.

(8) $$\text{Constant number} = \frac{\text{S} \times \text{P} \times \text{O} \times \text{L} \times \text{diam. of M}}{\text{R} \times \text{N} \times \text{E} \times \text{diam. of T}}$$
$$= \frac{52 \times 154 \times 32 \times 180 \times 4}{21 \times 26 \times 28 \times 6} = 2010 \cdot 6.$$

If this number is divided by the draft, we obtain the draft wheel; and if divided by the draft wheel the draft will be the result.

(9) $$\text{Draft wheel A} = \frac{\text{constant number}}{\text{draft required}}$$

(10) $$\text{Total draft} = \frac{\text{constant number}}{\text{draft wheel A}}$$

It will be understood that the draft between any two parts of the machine can be found by the methods given. For instance, the draft between the feed roller Q and the doffer X is found as follows :—

(11) $$\text{Draft between feed roller and doffer} = \frac{\text{P} \times \text{O} \times \text{diam. of doffer}}{\text{A} \times \text{N} \times \text{diam. of feed roller}}$$
$$= \frac{154 \times 32 \times 24 \cdot 75}{18 \times 26 \times 2 \cdot 25} = 115 \cdot 8.$$

(12) Draft between feed roller and taker-in $= \frac{P \times O \times L \times J \times H \times \text{diam. of } V}{A \times N \times K \times B \times C \times \text{diam. of } Q}$

$$= \frac{154 \times 32 \times 180 \times 40 \times 12 \times 9{\cdot}75}{18 \times 26 \times 20 \times 26 \times 6 \times 2{\cdot}25} = 1263{\cdot}5$$

(13) Draft between taker-in and cylinder $= \frac{D \times \text{diam. of cyl.}}{G \times \text{diam. of taker-in}}$

$$= \frac{6{\cdot}5 \times 50{\cdot}75}{15{\cdot}5 \times 9{\cdot}75} = 2{\cdot}1$$

(14) Draft between cylinder and doffer $= \frac{G \times C \times B \times K \times \text{diam. of } X}{D \times H \times J \times L \times \text{diam. of } W}$

$$= \frac{15{\cdot}5 \times 6 \times 26 \times 20 \times 24{\cdot}75}{6{\cdot}5 \times 12 \times 40 \times 180 \times 50{\cdot}75} = 0{\cdot}042.$$

A glance at the figures will show us that the denominator is the largest factor, and, as the result shows, we have a draft considerably below 1. The exact amount below may be obtained by dividing ·042 into 1, which equals 23·8 of a reduction in the draft.

Another method that is very generally adopted in making changes on cotton machinery is the proportionate one, and is worked out by the rule of three; but care must always be exercised in noticing whether the change wheel is a driver or a driven wheel. A larger driver gives increased speed, whilst with a larger driven wheel we obtain a reduction of speed.

In working out the calculation necessary for a change in the resulting sliver of the card, we can obtain it, in the first place, from the draft provided. We know the weight or length fed to the machine, but if we know the sliver at present being worked, and a change is desired to a heavier or lighter one, a simple proportion sum will give us the necessary change, or *vice versâ*, the change wheel in the majority of cases being the feed or draft wheel A. For instance, if a 20 wheel is being used, and the resulting

sliver is 0·15 hank, what wheel shall we require for a 17 hank?

$$\frac{20 \times 0{\cdot}15}{0{\cdot}17} = 17{\cdot}6 \text{ teeth.}$$

This result is impossible to apply, so we take an 18 wheel as the nearest one to the answer; but this will clearly not give 0·17 hank, but the following, which is slightly different:—

$$\frac{20 \times 0{\cdot}15}{18} = 0{\cdot}166 \text{ hank.}$$

This variation will be noticeable throughout spinning machinery, but does not much matter, as a slight reduction in one place may be neutralised by a corresponding increase in another; the only thing for the student to avoid is the habit of jumping at results with the idea that they are near enough for practical purpose. Exactness ought to be cultivated until an experience is obtained which is thoroughly reliable.

The hank of the sliver produced from a given weight of lap is found by dividing the weight of the lap by the draft. If this result, which is the weight in ounces of a yard of the sliver, is divided into 16 oz., the number of yards in 1 lb. is obtained. This is now divided by 840, the answer being the hank of the sliver—

Weight of one yard of lap = 13 oz.; draft = 100.

(15) Ex.— $$\frac{16 \times 100}{13 \times 840} = 0{\cdot}146 \text{ hank.}$$

To find the production of a card in 10 hours—

(16) Production in 10 hrs $$= \frac{\text{min. in 10 hrs.} \times \text{revs. of doffer} \times 24\tfrac{3}{4} \times 3{\cdot}1416 \times \text{weight of sliver in grains per yard}}{36 \times 7000}$$

The length of filleting, 2 in. wide, to cover the cylinder is found by—

$$(17)\quad \frac{\text{The diam. of cyl. and width of cyl.} \times 3{\cdot}1416}{\text{Width of fillet} \times 12 \text{ in.}} = \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{length in feet} \\ \text{of fillet.} \end{matrix} \right.$$

$$(18)\quad \left.\begin{matrix} \text{Surface speed} \\ \text{of flats} \end{matrix}\right\} = \frac{\text{revs. of cyl.} \times a \times c \times e \times \text{dia. of flat wheel} \times 3{\cdot}1416}{b \times d \times f}$$

$$= \frac{160 \times 5 \times 1 \times 1 \times 8 \times 3{\cdot}146}{12 \times 17 \times 40} = 2{\cdot}4 \text{ in. per min.}$$

Useful Information.—The **waste** from the hopper bale breaker in the form of dust and dirt is about 0·1 per cent, *i.e.* about 50 lb. for every 100 bales.

In the double opener allow about 3 to 3½ per cent for waste.

The scutcher about 3 per cent waste.

The card about 4½ per cent waste, viz. 2 per cent in strips, 2 per cent under the card, and about ½ per cent invisible waste in the form of dust and loose fibres.

Of course waste varies considerable according to cottons and the class of yarn.

The cleaning of the machines must receive regular and thorough attention.

The openers and scutchers are cleaned twice a day and waste removed.

The cards are stripped, cylinder and doffer, twice a day, the cylinders and doffer to be ground every four weeks, and the flats about every nine weeks.

Universal list relating to single revolving flat cards agreed to by representatives of the Federation and Cardroom Amalgamation at a joint meeting, 13th March 1903 :—

1. 350 lb. to 750 lb. per card, 2/- per card. Below 550 lb., ½d. per card for every 50 lb., to be deducted down to

300 lb., beyond which no further deductions shall be made.

Above 750 lb., ½d. per card for every 50 lb., to be added up to 1000 lb., beyond which no further addition shall be made.

Minimum price 1/9½d. per card.
Maximum price 2/2½d. per card.

In arriving at the weights and prices, no alteration in price shall be made unless the difference in weight is above half the difference between one scale and the other.

2. Weight carded to be based on hanks produced by slubbers. Four weeks to be taken in case a test is required, full weeks preferred. When cards have worked full weeks, if the material is put through the slubbers, such to be taken as full weeks irrespective of time worked by slubbers.

3. Where the employers and operatives jointly agree to have lap carriers at a lesser wage, it shall be permissible, but in such cases the saving obtained shall be divided amongst the remaining strippers and grinders employed.

4. Four strippings per day or 22 strippings per week on a working week of 55½ hours. Any variations from four strippings per day, 10d. per man per week per stripping on or off. Where slow stripping motion is used, two strippings per day to be the basis. Any variation from two strippings per day, 10d. per man per week per half stripping on or off.

5. Grinding through up to one and a half times per fortnight.

6. Mills having no lap bogeys, 1d. per card extra to be paid. If bogeys are put in, the 1d. to come off. Where laps are required to be carried up or down less than four steps, no further payment to be made. Four to twelve steps another 1d. per card extra to be paid. If over twelve steps, to be dealt with if required as per clause 10.

7. Where no under-carder is employed, and the grinders assist to do under-carder's work, 2d. per card to be added to the prices paid. This to apply to firms having not more than five preparations, beyond which grinders shall not be called upon to do under-carder's work.

8. Grinders and brush down cards twice per day in fine mills, and once per day in other mills. Grind and strip as above. Oil and clean cards as usual, sweep up, gather fly, strip doffers, carry laps. Piece bands and straps on cards. Sweep down each week their proportion of drums and shafting that drive cards and frames up to and including roving preparations. Clear all waste from all preparations up to and including roving preparations. Scouring through drawing frames twice per year. Other frames once per year. Extra scouring to be paid for at the rate of 6d. per hour per man.

Where the price per card is below 2/-, such to be considered as fine mills.

9. When a grinder absents himself from work, and the other grinders are called upon to do his work, 90 per cent of the absent person's work shall be paid to those performing his work.

10. In formulating this list of prices and duties, it is agreed that should any case arise with which the foregoing clauses do not deal, there shall be a case for adjudication as per the Brooklands Agreement.

Note.—This list is for a week of 56½ hours.

Interpretations of above Clauses

1. *Employers making own arrangements with men.*—If a case has not been before the Local Joint Committee, then an employer has the right to make arrangements with his

own men, such arrangements, however, not to have any binding effect upon others who disagree.

2. *What does the term "Lap Tram" cover?*—Where there is a lap tram or trams sufficient for the number of cards in a given mill, so placed as not to require the workman to pass on the side of not more than one card, no extra payment to be made. Where required to pass on the side of two cards from the bogey, one halfpenny per card to be paid for the last row. For instance, no payment is to be made in a mill with the three rows of cards all set one way, with a lap tram between the first and second rows. All the cards shall be deemed to be served, and no extra payment to be required.

3. *Grinding above ¾ through per week.*—Where an employer requires more than three-fourths of his cards grinding through per week, threepence per card (not per man) shall be paid for such extra grinding.

4. *Minimum wage of* 28/-. *How does it apply?*—There is no minimum wage of 28/-. What has been agreed upon is, that not less than 28/- shall be the wage of the grinder where there are such a quantity of cards and conditions of work in accordance with the list as will allow of the same. Where there are a lesser number than 14 per man, on medium weight with lap tram, and no extra work to be performed, the wages of the grinder will be lessened in proportion. All other cases must depend on the number of cards in the mill, and should be adjusted in a reasonable manner by consultation with both parties.

5. *Cards over* 50 *yards from Blowing Room.*—Where lap trams are employed, in cases in which **the first card** is 50 to 80 yards from the door nearest to the cards in the room where the laps are stored, one halfpenny per card extra to be paid. Where there are no lap trams, the halfpenny per

card is to be added to the penny per card, as per clause 6 of the list, making the payment three halfpence per card.

6. *Clean cards "as usual."*—Clean cards as usual shall be understood to mean the custom of the district, on fine cards, medium cards, and coarse cards, each section to be treated separately.

7. *Under-carders and their duties.*—Where grinders are called upon to assist in performing under-carders' duties, such duties shall be deemed to consist of—

Loosening spindles.

Putting spindles in gear.

Filling large oil can.

Piecing all straps on frames.

Assisting carder in a two-handed job on frames.

Assisting in putting in and lifting out calender rollers in blowing room where required, and generally in small matters in card room usually performed by an under-carder.

The Universal List and the Interpretations of various clauses were agreed to by the Federation of Master Cotton Spinners' Association, Ltd., and the Amalgamated Association of Card and Blowing Room Operatives,—

The Universal List on 13th March 1903.

The Interpretations on 17th Dec. 1903.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES.

Mote Knives and Undercasings.—Various drawings have already been given of these features, notably in Figs. 152

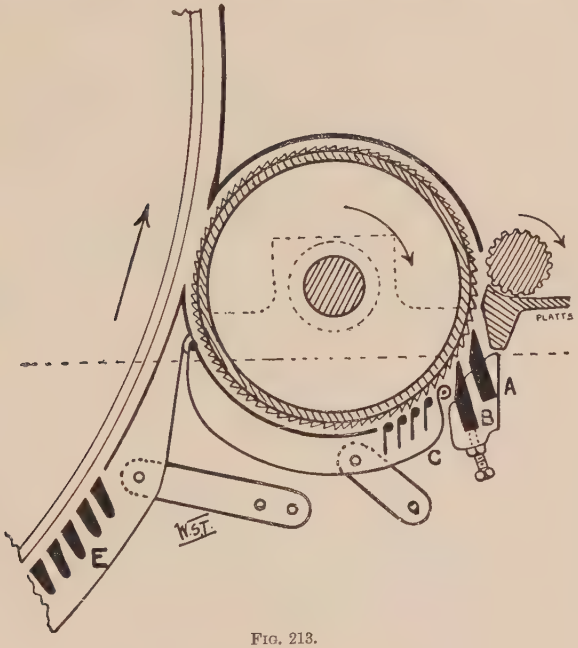


FIG. 213.

and 157. They are important features of the card, so a further well-known arrangement is illustrated in Fig. 213. The mote knives are the chief factor for extracting the impurities and they are adjusted simultaneously. The few bars with their rounded surfaces are to be noted and also the long bars of the cylinder undercasing.

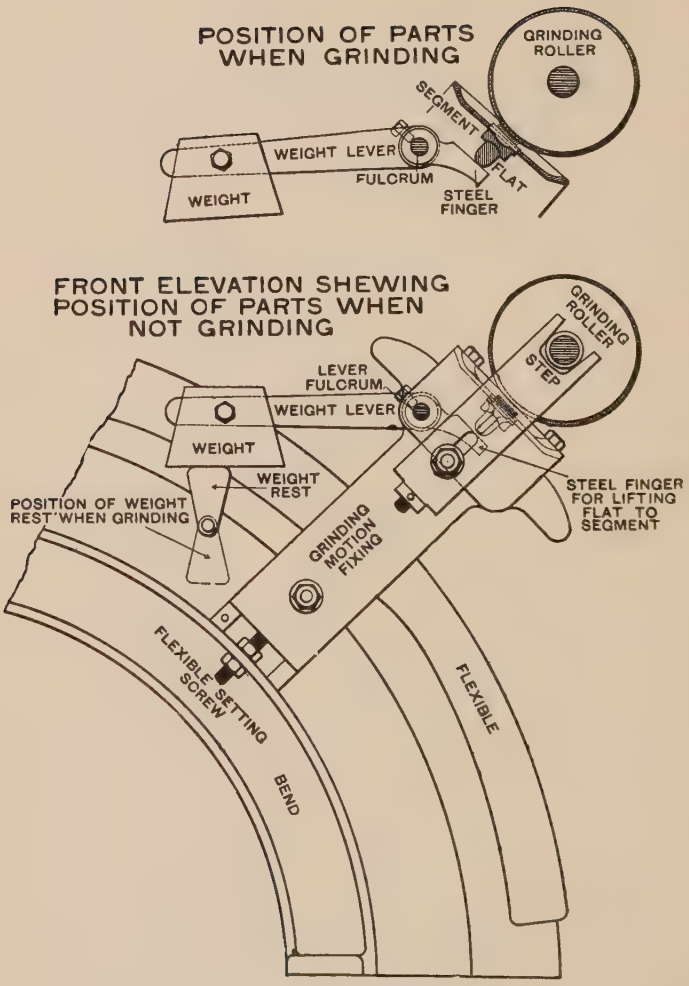

POSITION OF PARTS WHEN GRINDING
GRINDING ROLLER
SEGMENT
WEIGHT LEVER
FLAT
FULCRUM
WEIGHT
STEEL FINGER
FRONT ELEVATION SHEWING POSITION OF PARTS WHEN NOT GRINDING
GRINDING ROLLER
STEP
LEVER FULCRUM
WEIGHT LEVER
WEIGHT
WEIGHT REST
POSITION OF WEIGHT REST WHEN GRINDING
STEEL FINGER FOR LIFTING FLAT TO SEGMENT
GRINDING MOTION FIXING
FLEXIBLE SETTING SCREW
BEND
FLEXIBLE

Fig. 214.

Flat Grinding Apparatus.—Fig. 214 adds another to the several grinding arrangements already illustrated in the body of the book. It is so simple in character and the details are shown so clearly that it is unnecessary to add a description.

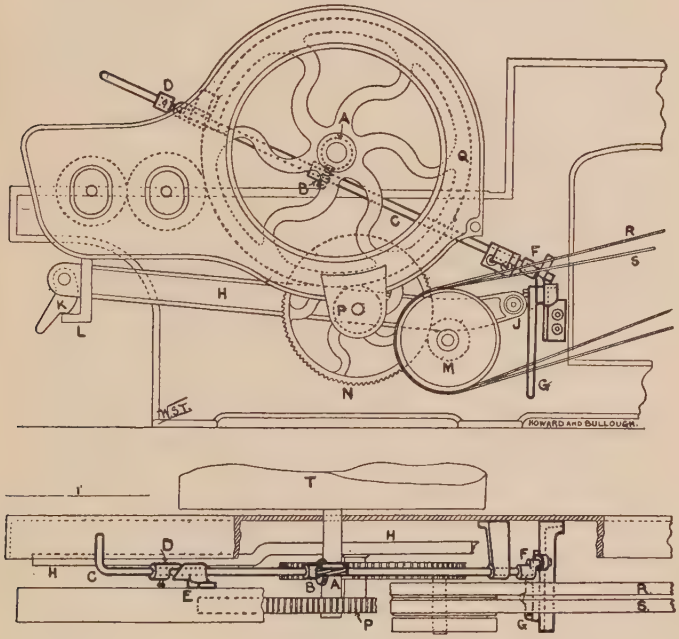


FIG. 215.

Doffer Slowering Motion.—The arrangement shown in Fig. 215, whilst representing in its chief features the usual method of giving the doffer a slower speed, also illustrates how the doffer will automatically return to its quicker or normal speed. The usual three pulleys are provided and the strap fork and guide for them. The handle rod

actuating the strap fork leads up to C. On setting the doffer to its slow speed, the handle bar slides up through the contract of the projection P and incline E, the incline E being fixed on the wheel cover, at the same time a worm wheel on the handle bar C is brought into gear with a worm on the doffer shaft and at once the handle bar begins to turn until it begins to slide downwards, as the projection P moves over the incline E, until the strap fork is changed over to the quicker speed.

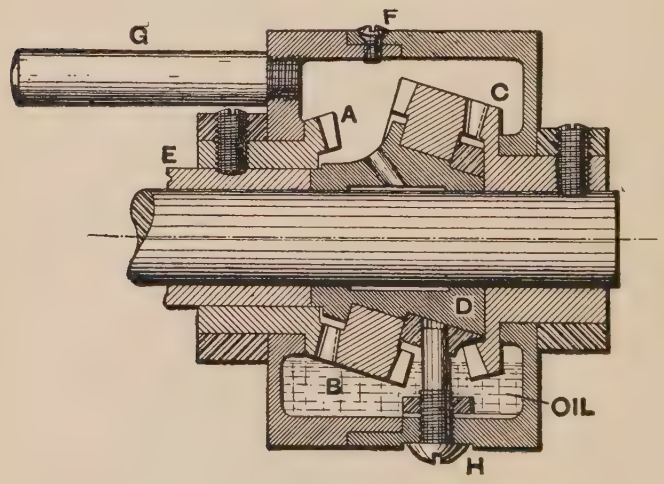


FIG. 216.

Traverse Motion for Grinding Roller.—This differential gearing can be fitted on the usual disc grinding roller and enables the screw to be driven at a reduced speed to the tube or shell. Only one pulley is required instead of two as is usual. This saves both time and care in making changes.

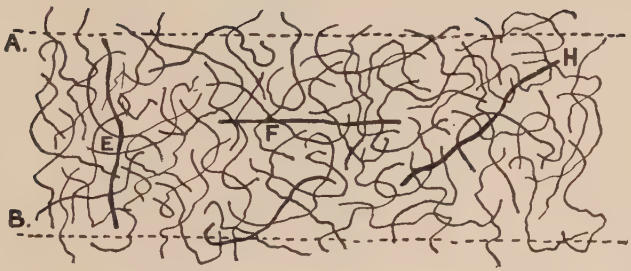


FIG. 217.

Arrangement of Fibres in the Web.—Fig. 217 will convey some idea of how the fibres in the web are disposed. When these fibres are gathered together, as they pass through the trumpet, they assume a very bent and folded condition, and it is this bent mass of fibres that the process of drafting has to bring out into a parallel condition.

Combined Carding Machine.—One of the serious defects in the revolving flat card has always been the initial dashing of imperfectly opened tufts of cotton into the closely set first flats. This fault will always exist until the cotton is properly prepared to be presented to such a delicate machine as the card. In Fig. 218 an attempt has been made to considerably modify the fault by placing a couple of rollers and clearers over the taker-in and reducing the number of flats to 74.

Locking Device for Cards.—Fig. 219 presents a safety arrangement to prevent the cylinder door being opened before the machine is stopped. The door is hinged to a lever, and to this lever is attached a bar whose other end is notched. This notched end can be held by a hooked lever

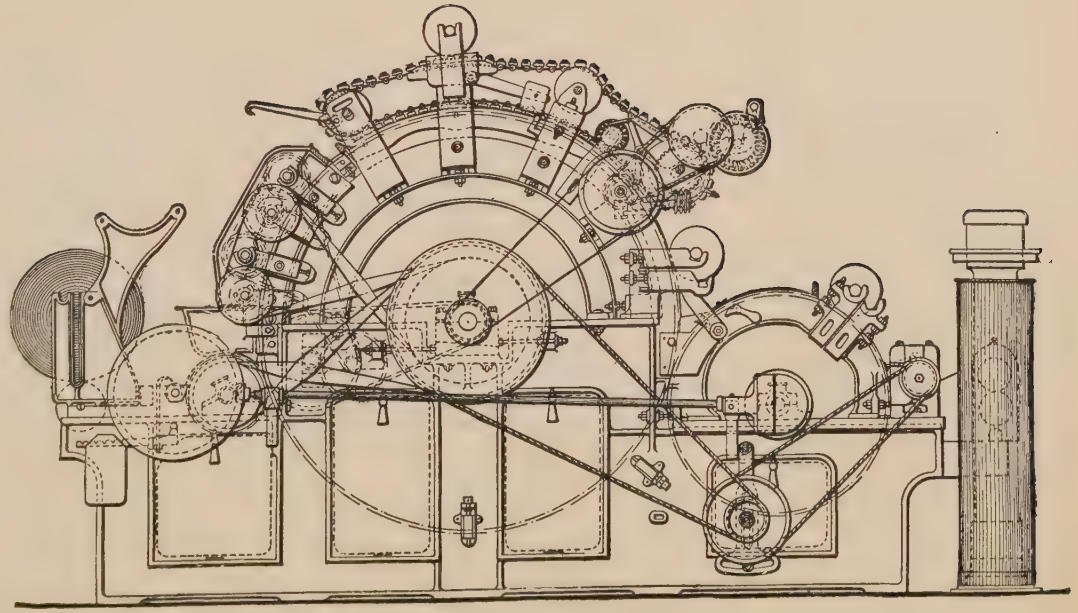


Fig. 218.

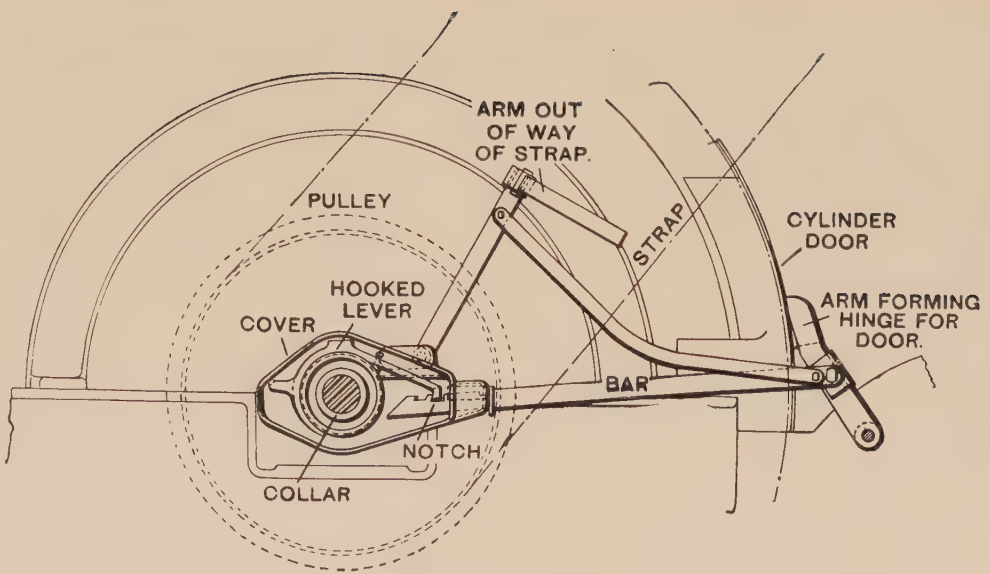

ARM OUT
OF WAY
OF STRAP.
PULLEY
STRAP
CYLINDER
DOOR
HOOKED
LEVER
COVER
ARM FORMING
HINGE FOR
DOOR.
BAR
NOTCH
COLLAR

Fig. 219.

or arm projecting from a loose bush encircling a collar on the cylinder shaft. As the cylinder revolves, the friction of the collar and bush causes the projecting hook to fall into the notched end of the bar, and so locks the bar and prevents the cover being opened. On the stoppage of the cylinder the hook can be lifted free from the notch and the door opened. On opening the cover door into the position shown in Fig. 220, a link, centred on the bar, pulls over an arm on which is a projecting finger. This finger is thus pulled into such a position that it prevents the movement of the belt on to the fast pulley, and the machine cannot be set on so long as the cover door is open.

Card Wire.—A large part of the carding action of a carding machine depends upon the wire clothing. It may be interesting, therefore, to place on record a few experimental facts concerning the behaviour of wire, with special reference to the effects produced on the wires as they act on the cotton fibres.

Observation Difficult.—The card itself presents little opportunity for observation, partly because the working parts are practically out of sight, and partly because the actions that take place are done so rapidly. Full-sized models, worked slowly, aid a little in confirming the general idea of how carding is done. Detailed effects on the wire and its carding actions are, however, only partially guessed at.

It is obvious what will happen when masses of fibres pass between two layers of wire points, arranged as they are on the cylinder and flats of a revolving flat card, and under the prevailing condition of speeds. This obvious carding action may be taken for granted at the moment, and a few experiments described to note the effect of the forces acting on the wire as it performs its functions.

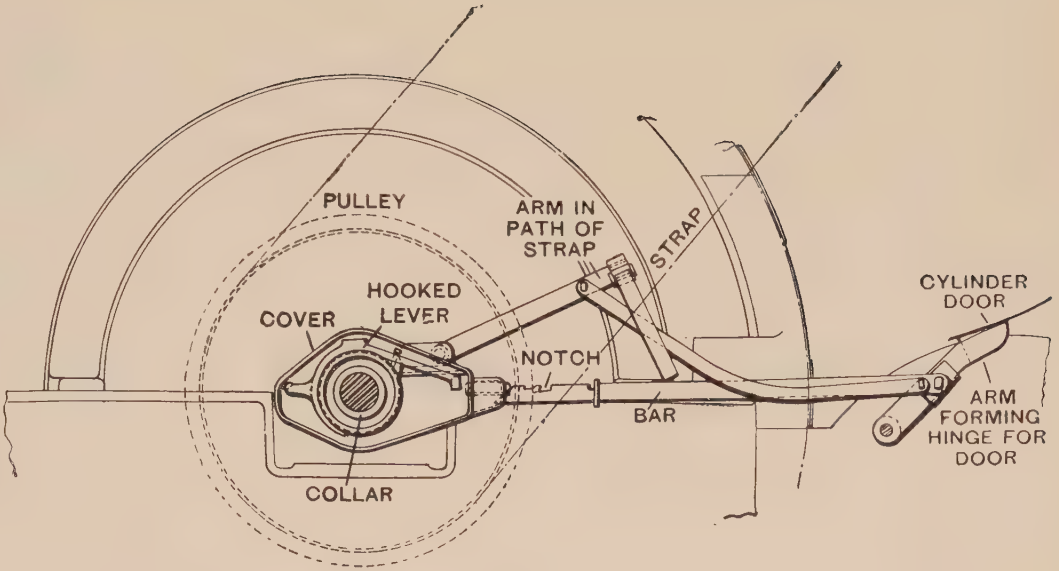

PULLEY
ARM IN PATH OF STRAP
STRAP
HOOKED LEVER
COVER
NOTCH
CYLINDER DOOR
BAR
ARM FORMING HINGE FOR DOOR
COLLAR

Fig. 220.

Effect of Forces.—A straight wire AB (Fig. 221) is fixed at F so that a pull acting at B will cause the wire to bend or turn round A as a centre. Weights hung from B or a force applied in a vertical direction will cause a deflection of the wire, and as the weight or force is increased the

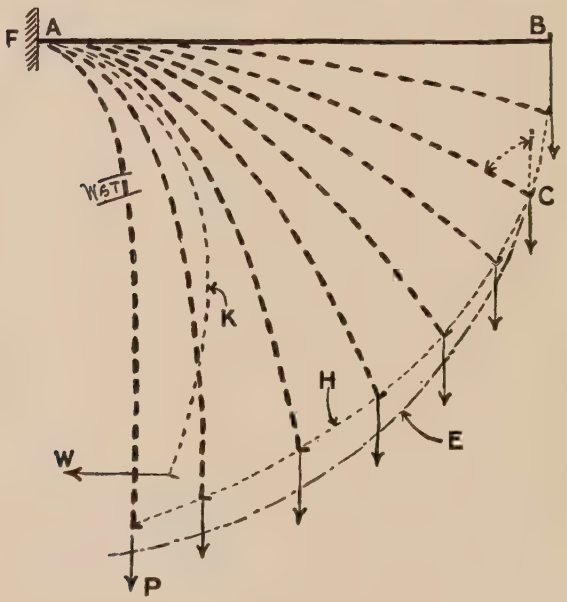


Fig. 221.

wire will assume the forms shown by the dotted lines in their various positions. A small hooked end has been formed at B to retain a hanging weight. If the end of the wire at B is made perfectly smooth, a fibre of cotton or a cotton thread will slip off when the wire is bent down to the point C. This slipping point, or the angle made by the inclination of the wire with the direction of the applied

force, may prove of some importance in subsequent experiments. The path followed by the end B as the wire is bent is shown by the curve H, whilst the circular path struck from A as centre is marked by the curve E. The variation of these two curves may also be of importance

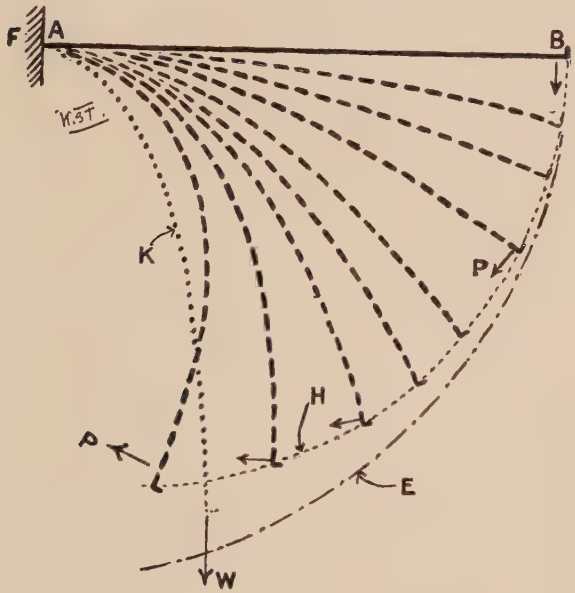


Fig. 222.

when we come to examine the action of the card wire.

To proceed further on general lines, the wire AB (see fig. 222) has been subjected to a force P, at right angles to the wire, as shown by the arrows. A comparison of the two diagrams, Figs. 221 and 222, will show characteristic differences in the curves formed by the bent wire, and whilst the earlier stages in the deflections are similar, there

are marked differences in the latter stages; these have been indicated and emphasised by introducing the curve K in each diagram. The variation of the path H (of the end B of the wire), from a circular path E, is also a noticeable feature.

If a wire is now made in the form of the card wire, as

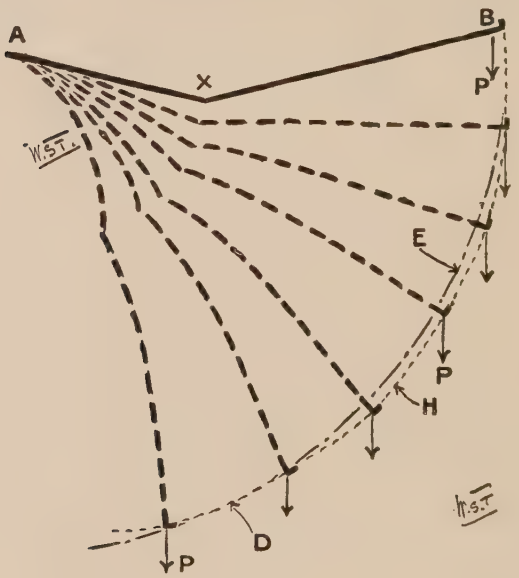


FIG. 223.

at AXB, Fig. 223, and the experiments repeated, each portion of the bent wire assumes its own characteristic curves, these curves depending upon the direction of the force applied to deflect the wire. In Fig. 223 the wire is pulled down by a force which remains vertical. In Fig. 224 the force acting is at right angles to the portion of the wire near the end B. In both examples the end B

describes a path that rises above the circular path, this effect being due to a straightening of the wire. The effect of the curved form assumed by the bent wire, as a shortening effect which neutralises the straightening effect, is shown at the point D in each case, after which a continu-

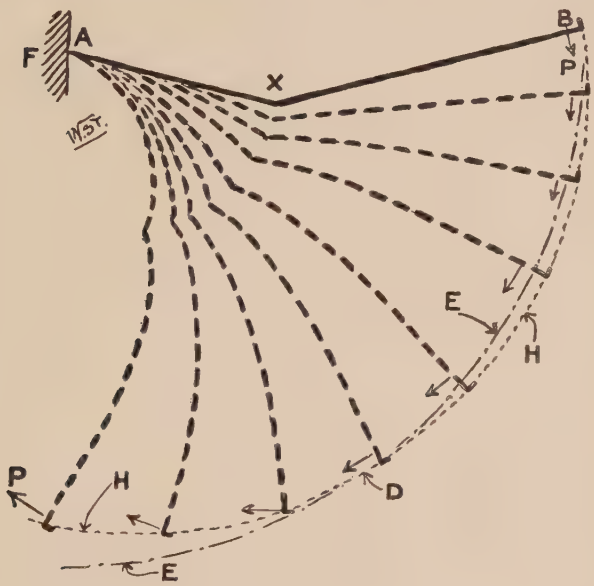


FIG. 224.

ance of the bending brings the curve H within the circular path E.

The results of another experiment are shown in diagram, Fig. 225. In this case the direction of the force deflecting the wire is shown by the wires, and it will be noted that the direction is a varying one, and that the deflection or bending reaches a maximum within a small angular dis-

placement of the wire. Without the hooked end to the wire at B, the fibres that are used to pull and cause the displacement of the wire, would slip off the end of the wire very early in the movement. Attention may be drawn to the fact that although the ends A and B are vertically over each other, the bending effect, or deflection, causes the end

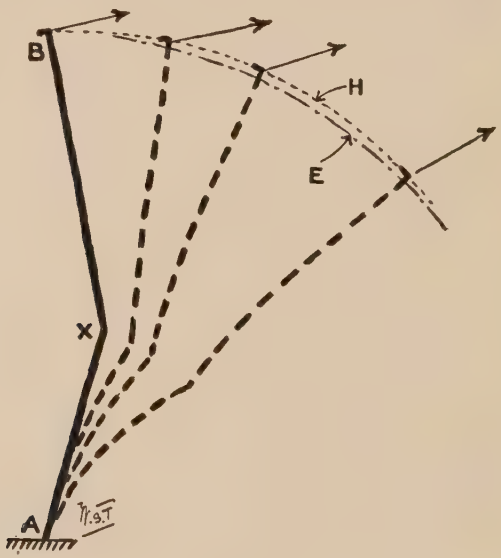


FIG. 225.

of the wire to rise above the circular path that the wire would describe if it were capable of free movement round the centre A. Most card wire is made with the end B set back from A, a position hitherto considered a disadvantage owing to the end rising. This disadvantage was supposed to be eliminated by setting the wire as in Fig. 225, or by having B slightly in advance of A. We see from the

diagram that the straightening effect on the wire is an important factor in causing the point to rise, and that it continues for quite an appreciable angular deflection of the wire. The series of diagrams just given represent the effect on the wire in experiments, and are not calculated. Their interest is general for textile purposes, and they represent fundamental facts.

FIG. 226.

In the carding machine, however, the conditions under which it acts are somewhat unusual, and apparently the subject has not been dealt with before, so far as the writer has been able to ascertain. In order to explain the actual conditions, a small sketch in Fig. 226 has been made. C is the cylinder moving in the direction of the arrow. F is the flat, with its direction indicated. The points of the two wires are separated by a very short space at T, and between the two points a small entangled tuft of cotton is held by both points. If both cylinder and flat travelled at the same speed, nothing would happen to the tuft of cotton, as it would be carried bodily forward by the two wires, but since the cylinder C moves very fast and the flat F moves very slowly, it may be considered that the flat, for practical purposes, is stationary. Under these conditions, the cylinder C, which holds the lower end of the wire, will move forward, and the upper end of the wire at T will be held by the cotton tuft, and be bent back as shown by the arrow. At the same time, the flat wire from

F will be bent in the same direction as the flat is moving. If the tuft is easily separated, very little bending of the wires will be sufficient to disentangle the fibres. On the

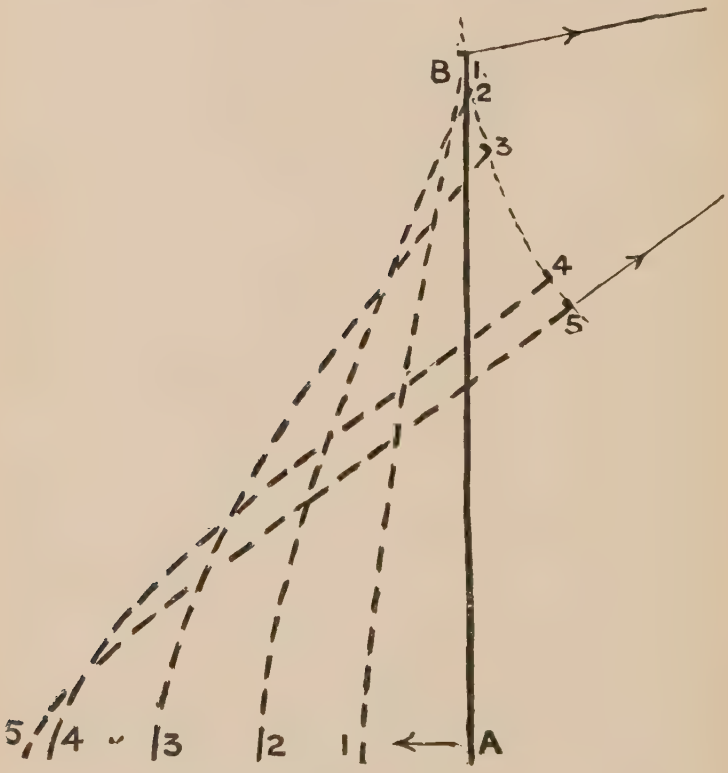


FIG. 227.

other hand, the continued bending of the wires, due to the hooked end of their extremities (produced by grinding) will result in a simple tearing asunder of the fibres and, of course, breakages; or, if the wires are smooth, the bending,

on reaching a certain deflection, will slip out of the

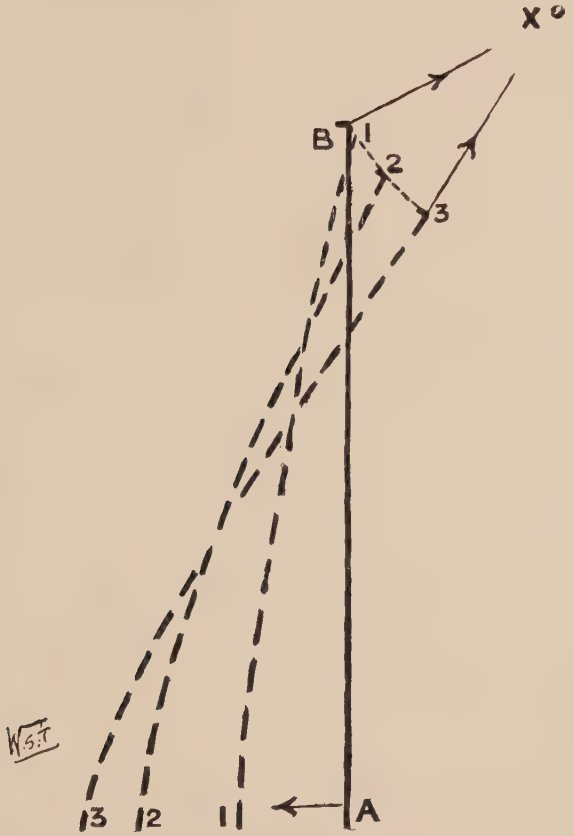


FIG. 228.

entanglement, and no carding or combing effect will be produced on that particular tuft by these two wires.

We are now in a position to analyse the action by actual

experiments with our wires. A straight piece of wire will be taken first. AB, in Fig. 227, has its end A fixed in the cylinder, which moves in the direction of the arrow. The out-end B is held by entangled fibres to the flat wire at X, and the direction of the pull of these fibres is shown by the arrows pointing towards X. As the cylinder passes from

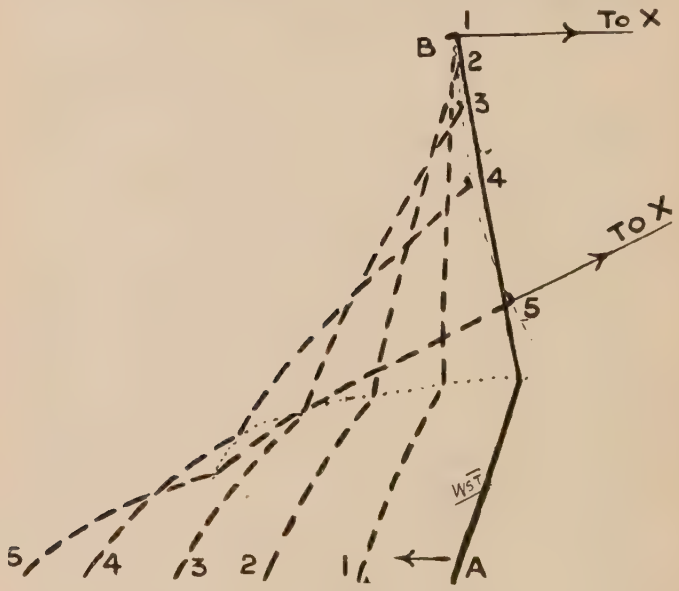


FIG. 229.

A to 1, 2, and 3, the point of the wire at B, being held firmly at X by the entanglement of the fibres, will compel the wire to bend and take the shape of the curves shown in dotted lines. A relatively short distance has been chosen for this test. A longer distance, though still a short one relatively, has been taken from X for diagram, Fig. 228. Very useful deduction can readily be made

from these two experiments, but the next diagrams, being more in accordance with actual conditions, are quite clear as to their meaning.

Figs. 229 and 230 represent the bent card wire AB, held by two different lengths of entangled fibres, the point X representing the holding point of the flat wire in each

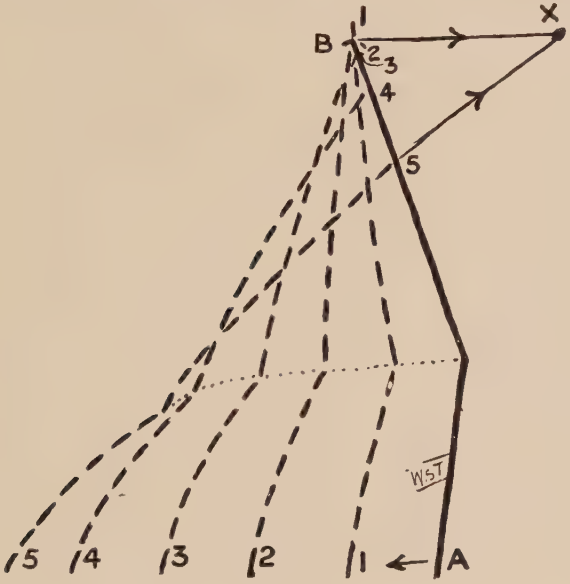


FIG. 230.

case. The cylinder moves from A to 5 in each diagram, and the holding power of the entangled fibres at X compels the point B to move to positions 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 as the cylinder moves the end A of the wire from A through 1, 2, 3, 4, to 5. The wire AB, during this movement, is bent, and assumes the curves shown by the dotted lines in each diagram. Unless the wire is set with the point B

back from A, the wire will bend downwards whenever it is held by fibres, so that the space between flats and cylinder during carding will always be in excess of the setting space or greater than the gauge used in setting.

A smooth-ended wire acting on an entangled tuft of fibres will naturally exert a force on the fibres tending to separate them, and, of course, the resistance will cause a bending of the wire. This bending will result in the bend taking up such a position that the wire would simply slip through the fibres. The angular position of the wire, relative to the angular direction of the pull of the fibres, as shown in the diagrams, will indicate that very little carding effects can be produced by wire that has not a holding hook at its end. On the other hand, a well-ground wire, with its hooked end, will hold the fibres, and will retain its hold until the fibres are drawn asunder, or until breakage of the fibres occurs. The innumerable short, broken fibres produced by this inevitable action of the card, on present-day opened cotton, and the large quantity of small particles of dust, dirt, etc., which all our present methods of opening and cleaning do not appear to eliminate from the cotton, settle down between the fibres, and ultimately in a short period of time (interval between stripping of the cylinder) we find a fairly compact wad of fibres embedded in the cylinder wire. A mere glance at the diagrams, Figs. 229 and 230, will indicate how this wad of waste is formed. Every bending of the wire AB lowers the whole wire bodily. This lowering of the wire naturally forces any fibres that are near it and below the surface of the wire further into the wires, and ultimately presses all these fibres into a compact mass on to the cylinder surface. This produces the wad of fibres so familiar to us when stripping the card cylinder.

Carding Organs.—Cotton is cleaned, opened, and combed by wires such as mentioned in the previous pages, but as the relative motions of the two opposing sets of wire are an all-important factor in carding, it may be interesting and of some value if a few remarks are made on this feature.

A necessary assumption must be made before we can deal with the problems involved, viz., that the points of the wire must be hooked and thus have a holding effect on the fibres. This hook is produced by grinding, and if from any cause the points of the wires become smooth, carding loses its effectiveness. The hook on the wire must also be such that it makes an obtuse angle with the bent wire on which it is ground or formed.

A further point to note is that of speed. In speaking of the speed of carding organs, it must be understood that this speed refers to surface speed of the wire and not to the revolutions made by the roller or cylinder on which the wire is fixed. When comparing these surface speeds, it is not necessary to know the actual speeds; the main consideration is the relative speeds or the ratio of one surface speed to another. Actual speeds are mainly productive factors in a machine, but the operative speeds are in most cases simply relative, and in fitting up experimental apparatus it is as well to bear this in mind, for by running very slowly and retaining relative speeds, it is possible to see clearly what actually occurs, which it is not possible to do if practical working speeds are used. Centrifugal and air-current effects are eliminated, and we are enabled thus to ascribe to these factors their requisite value on comparing high-speed effects with slow-speed working.

The most simple case of transferring fibres from one

wire surface to another is seen in Fig. 231. Here a roller R has combed a quantity of fibres from some source and carried them round in the direction of the arrow. Another roller C is set very close to roller R with its teeth inclined as shown, and moving as indicated by the arrow. Since C is moving faster than R, it is inevitable that the teeth of C should simply remove the fibres from R and carry them forward on its own teeth. The fibres will readily slip off the wire of R, owing to the inclination of the wires, and as the hook on the wires offers no opposition to this, we have here a mere transferring of the fibres without any combing

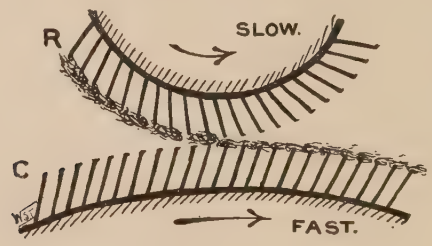


FIG. 231.

action being performed between the two organs. It will be noted that this diagram illustrates the action that takes place between the taker-in and cylinder of the card, save that saw teeth are on the roller R, and that the taker-in, although actually fast in speed, is relatively slow compared to the speed of the cylinder. The transference of the fibres from R to C is complete, and it is only by the accidental distortion or damage of the teeth of R that would allow any fibres to escape the action of the teeth on C.

Now practically all carding is done by working the changes on the conditions presented in Fig. 231, and the following diagrams represent some of these changes.

Fig. 232 is the reverse of Fig. 231. C is now carrying the original fibres and these meet the roller R running as shown. C will be stripped and R will carry the whole of the fibres forward, no carding action having taken place.

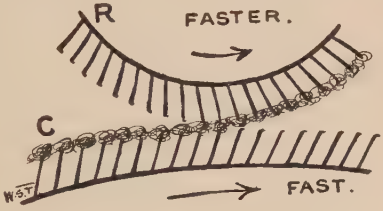


Fig. 232.

By altering the angle of the wires in Fig. 232, but keeping the same speeds, we obtain Fig. 233. Here the fibres are taken between two wire-covered surfaces, but no carding takes place simply because the wires on R, owing to their inclination, can only displace the fibres on C, but cannot transfer them to their own points, or at least cannot retain them there. Further, it can readily be seen that this displacement of the fibres on C cannot be a carding action, as the fibres will not be held on account of the hook pointing in the same direction as that in which the displacement takes place, these fibres therefore simply slip over the points of the wire. A modification of Fig. 233 is given in the diagram Fig. 234. Here we have C running at a higher surface speed than R, the two sets of teeth being opposed to each other as before. The main point to carefully observe is that as the roller R has changed in speed from "faster" in Fig. 233, to slow in Fig. 234, it

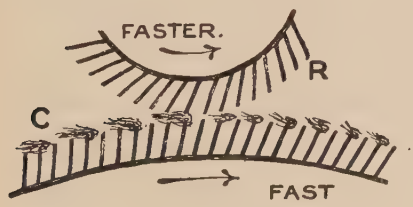


Fig. 233.

has passed through a critical point when the two organs R and C were equal in speed. Up to this point the wires of R offered no resistance to the passage of the fibres carried by C, but directly the speed of R becomes slower than the speed of C then the wires on R offer a resistance to the fibres passing between the two organs. It will be seen from Fig. 234 that the fibres carried by C will be taken hold of by the wires on R, precisely as the wires on C are holding them. Any given set or group of fibres on C will therefore have two sets of wires embedded in them. One set of wires (C) will be travelling fast, whilst the other set (R) will be moving slowly, and although this slow movement is in the same direction, the effect will be that the set of fibres will be drawn or torn asunder. Now, since the organ C already has the fibres on its teeth, and the teeth of R do not touch the teeth of C, though the space is very small between them, it follows that R will only retain a few of the loose and shorter fibres after passing through the fibres held by C. The fibres retained by R will be taken round, as shown in the sketch, and could be removed as waste. It will be noted that the resistance to the passage of fibres depends entirely on the fact that R must move slower than C. A little thought, however, will show that this slower movement of R need not be in the same direction, as shown at Fig. 234. It may be reversed in direction as given in Fig. 235, and we still have practic-

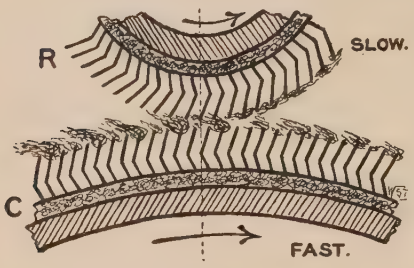


FIG. 234.

ally the same conditions as in Fig. 234, the fibres retained by R being now taken round in the opposite direction. In either diagram there is a distinct carding effect on the fibres. This carding effect, moreover, does not even depend on the slow movement of R in Fig. 235. It requires but a slight imagination to see that, if R be revolved at any speed, from nil upwards, there will be a carding action on the fibres between the two organs. Its application to the roller and clearer card will be apparent. A point of importance to be observed is that the carding effect only

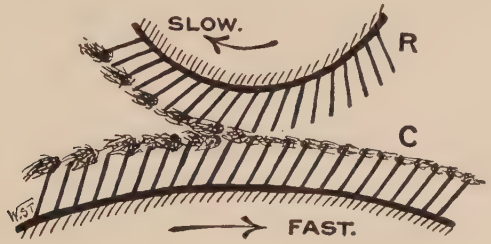


FIG. 235.

occurs between a few wires at the point of contact, between R and C, and in a carding machine these points can only be repeated a few times on the upper surface of the cylinder. It will be seen, however, that this factor is not a disadvantage, for since the organ R revolves it is constantly presenting fresh wires for carding. The real advantage lies in the fact that the arrangement of revolving rollers offers no opportunity of clearing away the waste, so that whilst a good carding or opening effect is produced the effect is spoiled by the return of the waste to the cylinder and its incorporation with the good fibres.

The next diagram, Fig. 236, is one that is easily recognised as drawn, but it is really a duplicate of Fig. 234.

In reference to Fig. 234, it was pointed out that a carding effect was its chief characteristic, and the extraction of waste. This, of course, was based on fibres in a comparatively bulky and massed form as taken from the taker-in. When these fibres have undergone a repeated carding, such as it receives as at Fig. 234, they are in a very loose and free condition near the points of the wire. When they reach the more closely set wires on the doffer D in Fig. 236, there will be an attempt at carding, but owing to the fibres being comparatively free they will become attached to the wires on D, and the cylinder wires on C will simply slide through their ends. This, of course, happens if the card has done its work thoroughly, but as no card ever carries out its functions perfectly, it follows that when the fibres on the cylinder reach the doffer there still remains some groups of fibres that require opening out. These are, therefore, carded at the junction of the cylinder and doffer, and a number of fibres will naturally be carried forward by the cylinder and either escape at

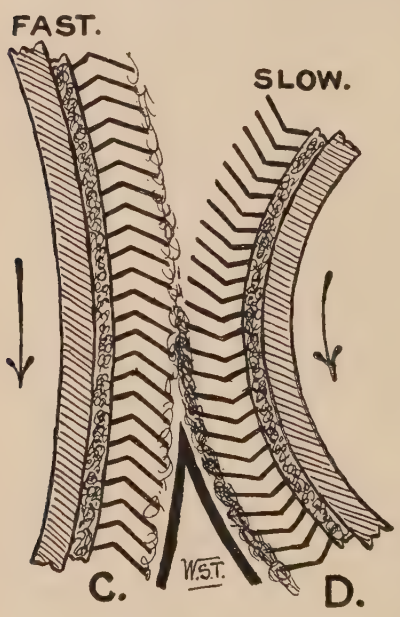


FIG. 236.

the cylinder undercasing or be carried round again past the taker-in. (In most carding machines this can be proved

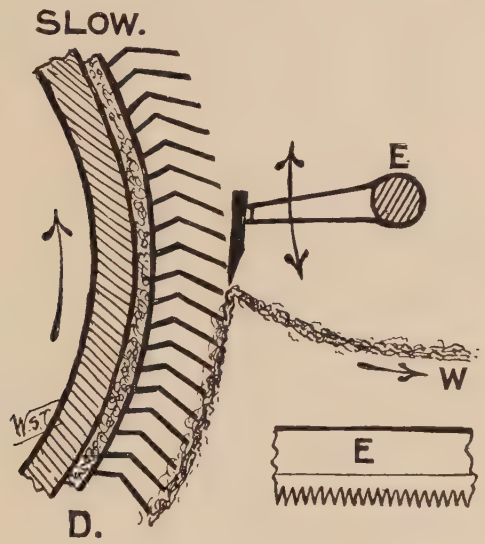


Fig. 237.

by placing a supplementary doffer or roller below the present doffer.) A condensed series of fibres will be deposited on D, which are slowly carried away and stripped off the doffer in the usual way, as in Fig. 237, or by a roller R, as in Fig. 238.

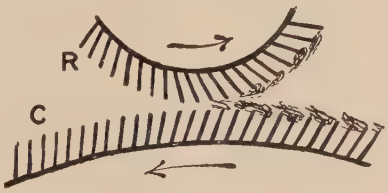


Fig. 238.

It is desirable to mention that this series of diagrams are not intended to be drawings of actual machine practice. They are given

to illustrate a large number of wire-covered organs in carding machines of various types. They represent the elements upon which carding has been built up, and if carefully studied many of the little problems surrounding the actions that take place in a carding machine will be readily solved.

Some Notes on Carding

In these brief notes it is not possible to do other than indicate the functions of the carding machine, and to offer suggestions upon which our reason may be exercised. It may be stated very definitely that the material fed to the card never is, and never has been, in a condition suitable for such a machine to act upon. Probably more than any other class of machinery in our mills, the blowing-room machinery, or rather all the machinery and processes that prepare the cotton for the card, has always been in a state of flux. Mixing, opening, and cleaning organs and their accessories are constantly being altered with the object of improving the condition of the fibres in the lap, but an enormous amount of work still requires to be done in the way of improvement before the card can be expected to work perfectly.

A Simple Experiment.—A simple experiment can be carried out easily by any mill authority who wishes to know something definite about the card's action. Make a series of laps on the sliver lap and ribbon lap machines, of some combed slivers, and compare the results with a lap from the scutcher when both kinds of laps have been passed through the same card. An examination of the material stripped from the flats, the material embedded in the wires of the cylinder and doffer, the droppings from the taker-in and cylinder, and the character of the web, would

open the eyes of most spinners to the fallacy of many ideas they have of the carding action, that is, beyond the obvious ones that the card breaks up groups or tufts of fibres into their individual constituents, forms them into a

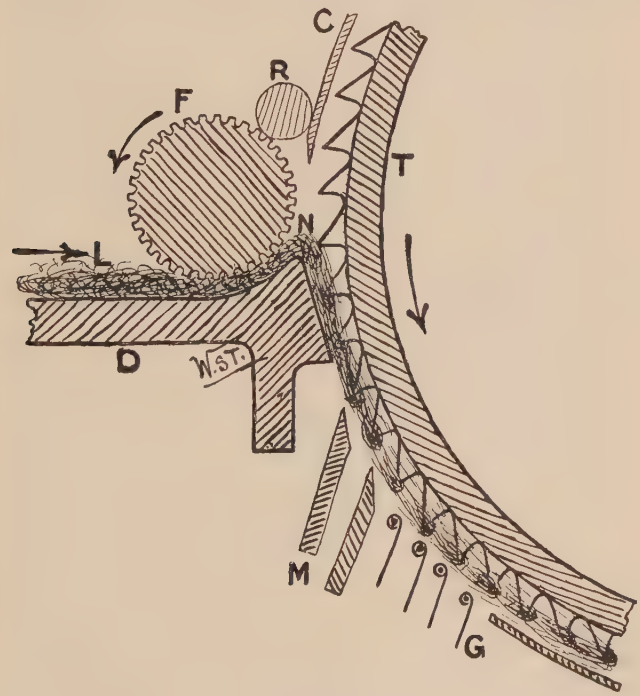


FIG. 239.

web, and incidentally eliminates dust and takes out a certain proportion of fibres which are dogmatically considered to be short fibres, and are therefore very undesirable in the sliver.

Research Necessary.—Until a satisfactory series of research

work is carried out it will be advisable not to dogmatise on any particular action of the carding organs. All that will be done in these notes will be on the lines of the obvious. In the first place, the action of the taker-in is obvious to the elementary student; one does not require to be a cotton spinner to understand its action, yet its functions are highly important if the subsequent actions of the card are to be effectively performed.

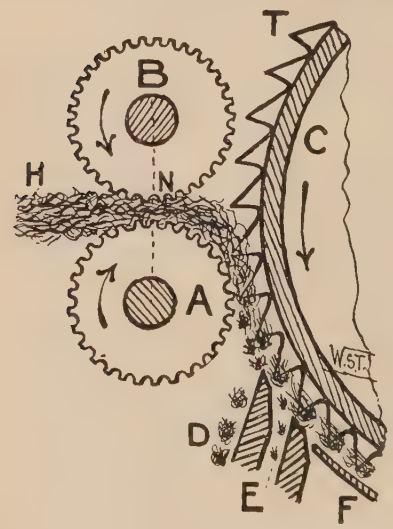


FIG. 240.

Settings and Adjustments.—The chief factors are the setting or adjustments of the various parts relative to the tips of the saw teeth (see Figs. 239 and 240), the pressure on the roller F in Fig. 239, and on B in Fig. 240, the setting between the taker-in and cylinder wire, and the condition of the bearing of the taker-in. Since "settings" are used that are represented by a few one-thousandths of an inch, the true running of the taker-in in its bearing, and also the perfect trueness of the cylindrical surface of the saw teeth, are absolutely essential. As adjustments are made whilst the taker-in is stopped, it need scarcely be pointed out that there is little room for assuming that any of the settings are the same as the gauges used, and the position

occupied by the taker-in when running at full speed is quite different in a card that has been at work for some little time than when new. The delicate adjustments required at, say, the dish-plates and the similar requirements, on the opposite side of the taker-in, with the cylinder, lose all their value if the taker-in is out of truth in running, or has a worn bearing even to a small extent. Ninety per cent of cards are unfortunately in this condition, and, in spite of this circumstance, it does not prevent mill authorities ascribing to these delicate settings much of the efficiency of the carding action.

The Action of the Taker-in.—A further obvious feature lies in the tearing action that takes place when the saw teeth take the cotton away from the nip of the feed-roller and dish-feed, or from the nip of the two feed-rollers. The feed-roller in either example of Figs. 239 and 240 is heavy, and, in addition, it is weighted so that the grip on the cotton is considerable. If this grip is not uniform throughout the length of the roller, then there will be a snatching away effect, and the cotton will be carried forward on the tips of the saw teeth in entangled tufts. On the other hand, if a uniform grip is obtained, the very entangled condition of the lap cotton will necessitate a snatching effect on the part of the saw teeth in order to withdraw the fibres from the tight grip of the feed-roller, and this snatching action is emphasised when it is remembered that the teeth of the taker-in are travelling in the neighbourhood of 1800 times more quickly than the cotton that is being fed to them.

Saw Gin compared with Taker-in.—It has become a commonplace to refer to the action of the saws in a saw gin in breaking and otherwise rupturing the fibres, and it is by no means an infrequent cause of complaint in our

mills, but it is worth a moment's thought to compare the action of the saws of the taker-in in Figs. 239 and 240 with the action of the saws in the saw gin in Fig. 241. The analogy, of course, is by no means identical, but it is safe to say that the saw gin will not compare unfavourably with some of our present-day opening by the taker-in. Needless to say, the opening and cleaning processes require greatly improving before this faulty action of the taker-in can be diminished, and with the highly compressed bales,

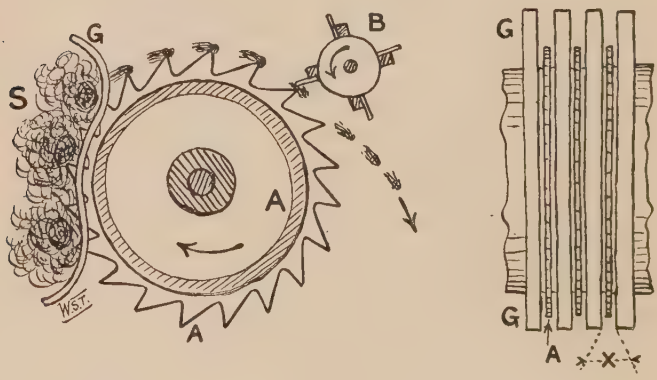


FIG. 241

now so strongly advocated, the necessity for more perfect opening machinery will become imperative in the near future.

The Cylinder and Flats.—The next obvious action is the one that takes place on the fibres between the cylinder and flat wires. It is obvious, inasmuch that the tufts or collection of fibres taken from the taker-in are split up, almost into individual fibres, during their passage. How this is done is not so obvious, and some real research work is desirable on this feature of carding. The generally

accepted conception of the action, and one usually taught in classes, is that centrifugal action causes the short fibres to fly off on to the flats where they are retained, and become waste in the flat strips. Of course, this is wrong, for there are far more short fibres in the cylinder and doffer strips than in the flat strips. It may also be added that the flat strips contain a large proportion of long fibres; in most cases the greater proportion of flat strips consist of good long fibres, many of them doubled-up and bent so as to be almost unrecognisable as good fibres. This can

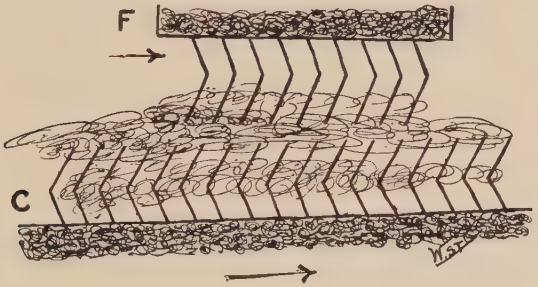


Fig. 242.

easily be seen if flat strips are carefully examined. The reason for this is easily explained. A sketch is given in Fig. 242. The cotton fibres C carried by the cylinder meet the flat F, and some of them are caught by the first few rows of flat wire somewhere between the length of the fibres, and especially is this the case on the first few flats over the taker-in end of the card. The cotton at this part of the card is lying on the teeth of the cylinder in practically the same condition as it is taken from feed-roller by the taker-in, for it must be remembered that the cylinder, although it has a higher surface speed than the

taker-in, has only a transferring action, and simply takes the fibres from the saw teeth without in any way opening them out or drafting them. These fibres therefore lie on the surface of the cylinder in all directions, so that on meeting the flat wire those fibres not lying in the direction of the rotating cylinder will be caught and naturally bent round the wires. An enlarged diagram of this effect is

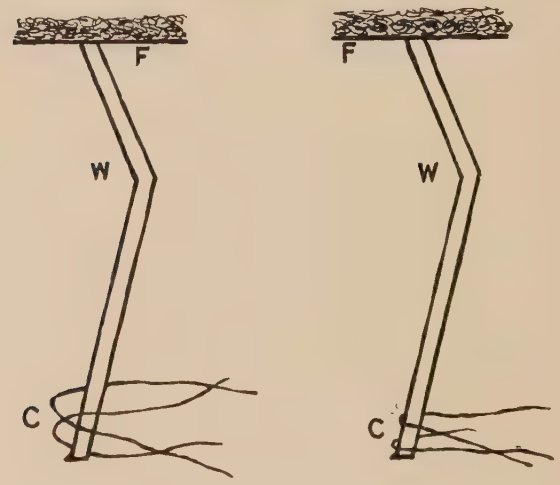


FIG. 243.

shown in Fig. 243, and if the flat strip is examined it will be seen to be composed of a folded set of fibres in its densest part and shorter fibres interlocked and adhering to these bent long fibres. Fig. 244 may represent this condition. If a finger and thumb hold be taken at A, and another similar hold at B, it will quickly dispel any idea that the flat strips are composed of short fibres.

What occurs with a single wire, as at Fig. 243, occurs on

the whole first few rows of wires on every flat, and these soon get completely charged or covered with the fibres. When this happens it becomes more difficult for the flats to hold or retain any more fibres; so from this we deduce the great influence the speed of the flats exercise in controlling the amount of waste made by them. The whole question of flat waste and how produced requires far more consideration than it appears to have received. A far too

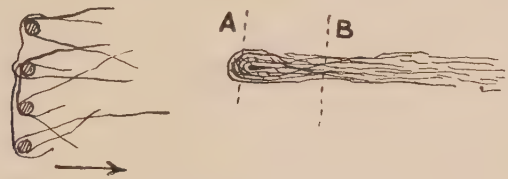


FIG. 244.

common method of increasing or decreasing this waste is by adjustments of the front plate over the doffer end. This is a very effective method, but when one realises that carding has completely finished at this point, any addition or subtraction of waste must mean good fibres added to the waste, or short, loose, dirty fibres added to the cotton. Those who adopt the method fail to appreciate this important fact.

Lengths of Cotton Fibres.—An ideal cotton would be one of which all the fibres were uniform in length. No cotton attains this ideal. All cottons are a mixture of various lengths of fibres. Each class of cotton has its own maximum of length. The minimum lengths are not so easily defined, for all classes have very short fibres. An average length is usually taken as the length of any given class of cotton. The method of estimating this average length is done by *pulling samples* by hand, or *hand drawing* as it is termed, and the hand-drawn sample is then judged by sight.

Cotton is classed and graded by this system of hand drawing and the spinner buys his cotton, so far as length is concerned, on the same test. The mixings in the mill are also settled in the same way. This system is as old as cotton spinning itself, and men attain a high degree of skill in thus judging the length of fibres. The subject is therefore a highly important one. Its well established character, however, is no bar to an enquiry as to whether such a test is quite scientific, whether it is correct or whether it is even quite satisfactory. One factor in its favour is that it is used by everybody so that all start out on the same basis in this respect.

In considering the matter, it is necessary to realise, fully, that practically all the important processes, through which the cotton passes, depend on a fairly exact knowledge of the average length of the staple used. The rollers must be set to work it, adjustments in the opening machines and cards are based on it. The diameters of rollers, their weighting, speeds and drafts, are based on an assumed average length of the cotton fibres. Success or failure will always, more or less, be associated with the right choice of cotton as regards its length. This being so, one can reasonably describe the present hand drawing method as an inadequate one.

The small bunch of fibres drawn from a bale, lap sliver or roving, may appear to have a certain average length, but it is very deceptive. The sample will contain every variety of length and all in different proportions, the short lengths below the average may be excessive. The long lengths may be very long for a given class but there may be very few of them. It is quite clear that only a genius could form even a moderate idea of an average from such a test. Good guesses are occasionally made, and some men,

in judging cotton in this way, will deliberately allow a discount off what appears the average length and so be in a position to set their rollers, adopt the right drafting, etc., for the cotton they buy. The United States Department of Agriculture have made a special investigation into this particular question of judging cotton by hand drawings and it was found that most of the best experts, men who almost devote their whole time to the work, fail to judge the *average* length nearer than $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch. A small percentage came within $\frac{1}{16}$ of an inch in their judgment of the length. But after all, the whole problem of hand drawing is, at present, a question of good guessing and to call it *judging* is really a misnomer. If experts show this lack of accuracy, what is to be said for the hosts of managers and buyers who have never been trained and who have only commenced to test cotton comparatively late in life. The errors of guessing, in such cases, must be and are much greater than the $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch error shown by the tests of the expert hand drawers of the cotton exchanges. Under the circumstances, it is not surprising that there are found such wide variations in the weights of slivers, rovings, and yarn. A perfect yarn is impossible in any case, but much of the prominent unevenness of even the best spinnings are due to errors of judgment of the staple.

Some substitute for hand drawing appears necessary and strongly advisable, so that a clear and actual average length can be ascertained. The lengths of the fibres in the sample must be measured, so that their dimensions can be put down in definite figures and all the fibres included, not merely the majority of the long ones as given by the hand-drawn sample. The composition of a sample can then be seen at a glance and the exact proportions of long, medium, and short fibres will be clearly indicated.

It will, of course, be clear that the present method of hand drawing, in judging cotton, is due to the strong and highly developed practical sense so characteristic of everything connected with the textile industries. Its simplicity and the rapidity with which it can be performed appeals to the practical mind. All other methods appear cumbersome, complicated, possibly expensive and requiring time.

As the necessity arose for more scientific methods of growing cotton, it has become more increasingly necessary to have also some exact scientific method of judging the fibres of new varieties of cotton; some means of knowing definitely if a cotton is improving or deteriorating; if a long-stapled cotton was handicapped by too much short fibre mixed with it on its seed, etc.; hand drawing is too crude a method for this purpose. Hence have arisen various methods that enable a better estimate to be given of lengths. Among these methods must be placed that of Dr. Cobb of the United States Department of Agriculture. It consists essentially of making a lantern slide of a sample of cotton, projecting the fibres on a screen, and measuring the very enlarged views by means of a suitable map-measuring instrument. It is a perfectly simple arrangement; less trouble than indicating an engine; of a positive value in judging the main factor in the business of cotton spinning, and ought to be an absolutely necessary test in all our mills. Its usefulness may be indicated by giving a few diagrams of the results obtained. The tests, of course, simply give us a series of figures representing lengths of fibres, but if these are arranged in the form of a graph on squared paper, they can be used in deducing very valuable information. A vertical line at the side will denote the lengths of the fibres in inches, and a series of vertical lines are drawn to represent the fibres, placed at

regular intervals. These lines have measured on them their respective lengths in a descending order. A curve can then be drawn through the ends of the lengths, and from the curve we may begin our reasoning and form our judgments on the material so far as its work in the mill is concerned.

On the question of choosing a suitable cotton, other factors, of course, are taken into account, but so far as length is concerned, variations in length of what might be termed $1\frac{1}{8}$ inch fibre may extend over six qualities in the broker's office and a difference in price, between the highest and lowest, of as much as an eighth of a penny. All these six qualities would range from a nominal $1\frac{1}{8}$ inch to a nominal $1\frac{3}{16}$ inch. There is a big opportunity here of profit and loss in the selection. A mill could easily lose, in the price of the cotton alone, as much as £1500 per year if too good a cotton were chosen, and probably much more if too poor a selection were made. The more need therefore to know exactly what is being bought.

Several diagrams will now be given showing, in a practical way, the advantages to be gained by actually measuring the samples in the manner just described.

Fig. 245 is a diagram built up of the individual fibres from two samples of American cotton. The fibres have been arranged in the order of their lengths and a graph is obtained which gives at a glance the variation from the longest to the shortest staple. The average length of each sample is marked, in the one case by a full line and in the other by a dotted line. There is no question here as to the correct average; too many measurements were made for there to be any doubt as to the result, and no mere fluff is included so far as shaking it out would free the sample. This distinct view of the composition of the raw

cotton and the clear indication of the average length would be unusually helpful to the buyer. He would see immediately the relative quantities of the long and short fibres and the proportion of the fibres that approached the

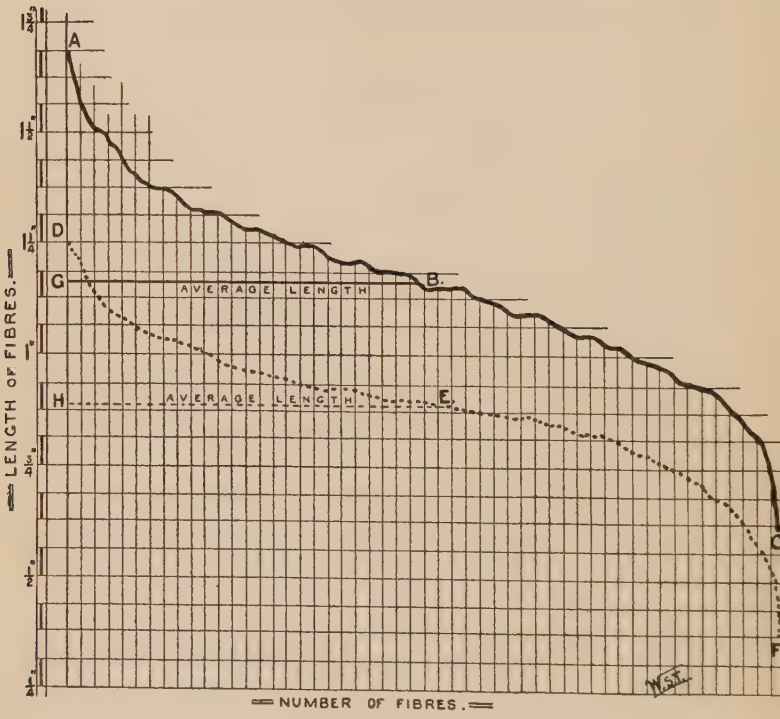


FIG. 245.

average. This phase in the judging of cotton is all important. The average itself means very little unless there is a large proportion of the fibres of nearly the average length. If, in any given sample, the fibres varied uniformly from the longest to the shortest, the average

length would be half-way, 50 per cent would be above the average and 50 per cent below. To judge correctly, therefore, we must examine the diagram and note what is the proportion of fibres that can reasonably be expected to fall within average conditions of working.

Further, in judging the staple, it is known, or supposed to be known, that the very short fibres will be largely eliminated in the various opening machines and the card. But is one's knowledge even fairly exact on this point? The percentages of waste or loss is not a criterion, not even a rough one, as to the proportions of the various lengths of fibres that are extracted. It is naturally desired that as little fibre as possible needs to be extracted, and on this point the diagram of bought cotton will inform us immediately, but in any case some of the short fibre will be cleared out as waste and fly, and this may happen without bringing about any noticeable increase in the average length. Especially would this be the case in a good cotton, but in a bad cotton where they are plentiful this elimination of the short fibres would make an important difference in the average length. These points are all capable of easy and quick judgment from the diagram of lengths. We have here then a ready means of aiding us in forming a correct idea of the suitability of any cotton for any given purpose.

Since the usefulness of this cotton diagram is so apparent in the case of raw cotton, its application, to tests of the waste made at the various machines, is also clear. By such a graph one should be in a position to say definitely what fibres were being extracted, by an examination of the fibres forming the waste. By testing the sliver after each process, such as the sliver from the card and comber, there would be a clear indication as to the

actual working of these machines in the direction of producing a uniform set of fibres.

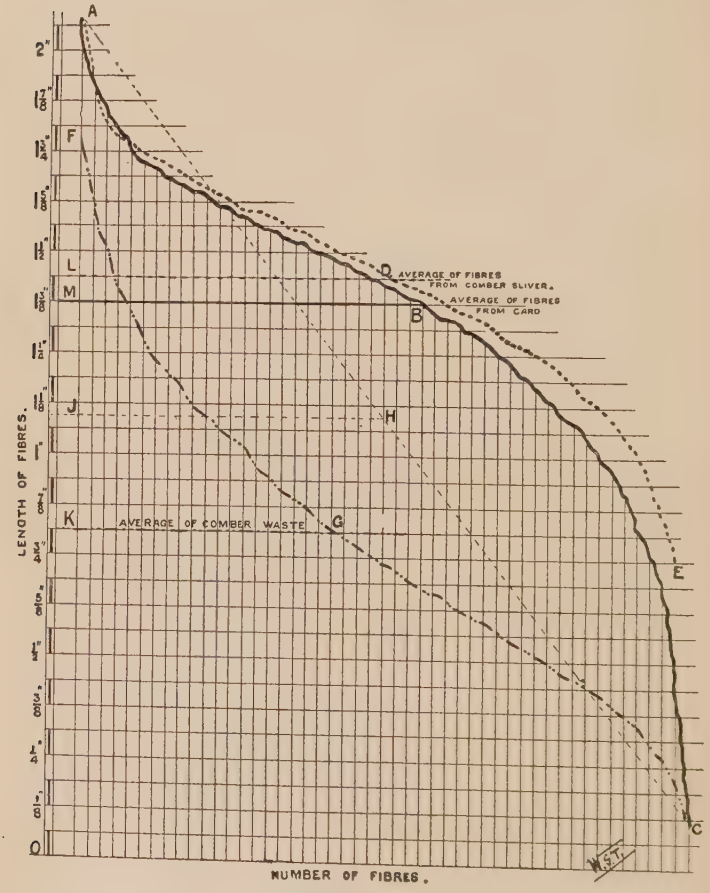


FIG. 246.

A specimen diagram showing the fibres in a card sliver is given in Fig. 246. It is Egyptian cotton of a fair

quality, and of course has been passed through the usual opening, scutching, and carding processes. These operations have not eliminated all the short fibres, though some have disappeared, and especially the extremely short ones. This carded cotton is passed through the comber, and the resulting sliver, as well as the waste, has been measured as regards the lengths of their fibres. Each result has been plotted alongside the original card sliver. The percentage of waste taken out by the comber was not high, but apart from this it is quite clear that the comber has not confined its attention to the short fibres: some have certainly been taken out, but long and intermediate fibres have also been extracted, as shown by the waste diagram, and this to such an extent that the resulting sliver from the comber has only had its average length increased by $\frac{1}{16}$ of an inch. A quantity of short fibres still remains in the combed, finished sliver. It is quite evident that the comber is performing very indifferently and requires a thorough re-setting and overhauling. Hosts of similar problems are readily settled by tests such as described, and all more or less valuable and useful to the practical man who can reason from results.

The well-known impression, that damp cotton is longer or pulls longer than dry cotton, is easily proved a fallacy; the reason being that damp cotton pulls straighter than the dry cotton, which is crinkly. In the same way it is proved that it is an error to suppose that cotton stored, after picking, continues to grow. It simply gins better, because of a gradual drying of the fibres; consequently the fibres are stronger and come from the seed more readily and without so much breakage. This naturally gives a longer average fibre. Incidentally it might be mentioned that all questions of the substitution of poor cotton for

good cotton, inferior crops, the causes of bad spinning or the retention of too much short fibre in the cotton through not taking out enough waste, could be readily settled if tests, on the lines described, were carried out.

Until measurement of the fibres becomes a recognised system, there will always be an undercurrent of doubt on any explanation of several problems that puzzle the cotton worker. Given a satisfactory assurance of the lengths of the fibres, many difficulties would be satisfactorily overcome simply because one would know actual conditions and not have to guess at them.

Testing Laps.—The usual general guide in testing laps from the scutcher is to weigh the complete lap; every lap is weighed and its weight written down on a paper or chalked up on a board. This is of course a very rough and ready test, and as a rule it shows very small variations between the complete laps. Four ounces up or down on a 30 lb. lap represents a variation of only $1\frac{1}{2}$ per cent total variation.

The finer test is to take two yards or even one yard lengths and carefully weigh them. A much better idea of the regularity of a lap is thus obtained. Fig. 247 gives a diagram, plotted on squared paper, of a number of consecutive two-yard lengths cut from a lap, and the variation, between the extremes, is seen to be about $8\frac{3}{4}$ per cent. Shorter lengths would show still greater variations. The dotted line represents consecutive lengths in the order of cutting them from the lap, whilst the black line shows the weights plotted in order from the lightest to the heaviest. If a perfectly regular lap is analysed by stamping out 6-inch squares and weighing each square, it would be represented by something similar to the diagram in Fig. 168. Each square represents 6 inches.

and the weight of each square is 180 grains, so the whole piece shown is 1 sq. yard and weighs 14·8 ounces. Such a piece of lap is not possible, though efforts are made to attain it. The more likely conditions found in a square yard of the usual scutcher lap would be as shown in

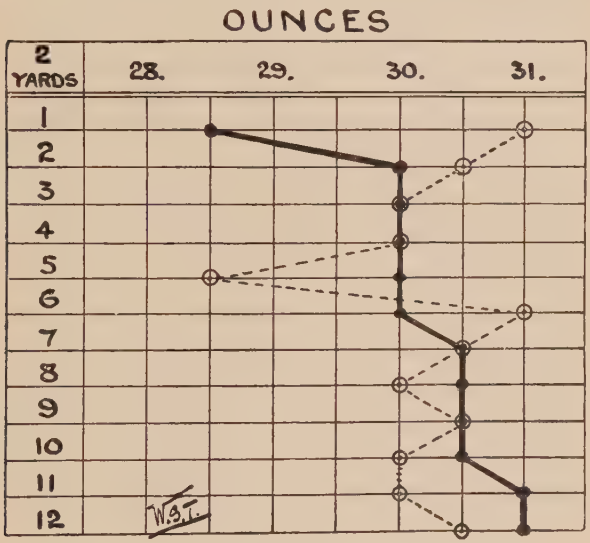


FIG. 247.

Fig. 125. The total weight of the yard of lap is the same as the perfect piece in Fig. 124, and if they were compared, yard for yard, one would show up equally good as the other, but Fig. 125 is very irregular, taking it bit by bit, and it is therefore bad. The real object in all opening and scutching is to produce a lap more like Fig. 124 than like Fig. 125, and to do this requires unusual care in the preliminary stages before presenting the cotton to the scutcher.

Card Sliver Tests.—To those who are interested and are anxious to really know the condition of the sliver, it need scarcely be pointed out that the orthodox method of taking six yards is not in any sense a test for regularity. A real test for irregularity would be to take short lengths, even to an inch in length, and weigh a long series of such lengths. The card shows up as a very irregular producer of sliver when this is done, but even six-yard test lengths give indications

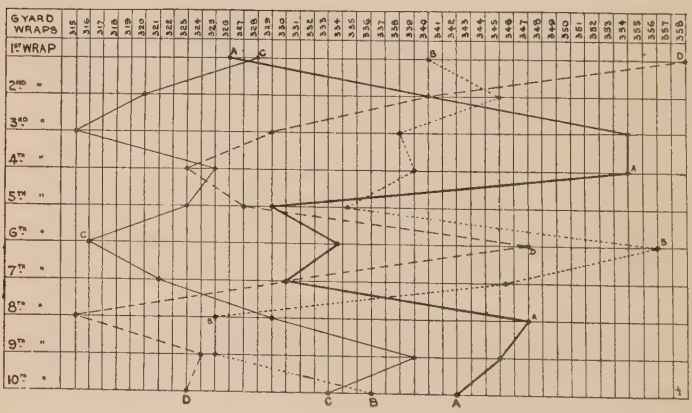


FIG. 248.

of wide variations. Six yards of sliver are usually taken and weighed in grains, and from this is deduced the hank. In addition to simply requiring to know the hank it is very desirable to know the degree of regularity of the sliver. It is necessary therefore to make a number of tests by taking a series of 10 lengths of 6 feet from several cans taken from different cards. A table of numbers is thus obtained which indicates all the variations in the wrappings, and from it

we can calculate the percentage of irregularity. A better way, however, is to plot the tests as a graph, as in Fig. 248, in which four different cans were taken and ten tests made from each can. Much may be learned from such a graph. With a little extra trouble the graph may be constructed as in Fig. 249, where each can sliver is plotted as a curve from the lightest to the heaviest weight. Six cans of sliver are so treated in Fig. 249, four of which, viz. A, B, C, and D, are the same as in Fig. 248. It will be noted that the graph tells one at a glance that A and E are on the light side and C and F are on the heavy side, whilst B and D are very erratic and vary considerably, though strange to say their average is nearer correct than the other four. This of course simply shows that a few tests are worthless as a means of discovering the actual work of the card and scutcher.

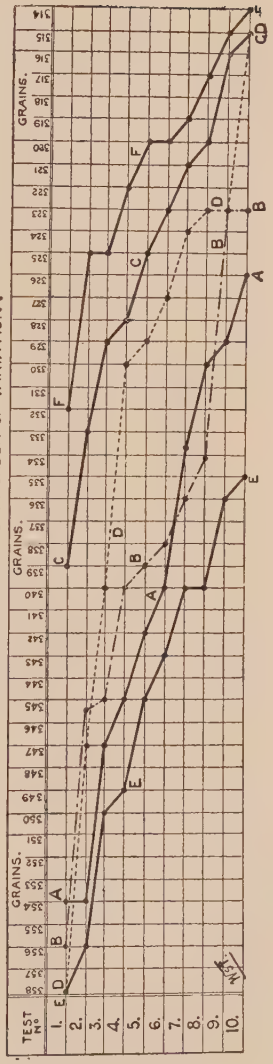


FIG. 249.

INDEX

Abassi, 6, 7
Action of card wire, 326
  of doffer, 281
  of taker-in, 349
Actual and calculated draft, 192
Adjustable beater bars, 174
  card pedestals, 273, 278, 280
Adjustment of cone drum strap, 193
Advantages of hopper bale breaker, 70
Afifi cotton, 6
Air pressure gauge, 205
American bales, 57
  cottons, 10
    grades of, 13
    local names of, 11
    Mobile, 12
    names of, 11
    Orleans, 12
    quotations of, 15
    Texas, 12
    Uplands, 12
Analysis of cotton fibre, 30
Application of cone drums, 158
Area planted with Egyptian cotton, 8
Arrangement of fibres in web, 323
Arrangement of twists in fibres, 28
Ashmouni cotton, 6, 7
Assili cotton, 6, 7
Automatic stop motions on openers and scutchers, 185
Average diameters of cotton fibres, 20
Average length of cotton fibres, 20

Bagging on bales, 57
Bale breakers, 56, 65
  hopper, 65
    advantages of, 70
    power to drive, 70
    production of, 70
  pedal, 63
  porcupine, 64
Bales, bands on, 58
  covering of, 58
  size of, 47, 51
  weight of, 47, 51
Baling of cotton, 53
Bamieh cotton, 6
Barbadense, Gossypium, 2, 4
Beater bars, 150, 174, 177
  adjustable, 175
Beaters, 179
  combing, 183
Bends, flexible, 256
Bengal, 19
Botanical varieties of cotton, 2
Bowl rail, 161
Brazilian cotton, 9
  grades of, 10
Breaking weight of fibres, 32
British Cotton Growing Association, 20
Broach cotton, 19
Broken fibres, 226
Brushes, stripping, 286
Buckley opener, 119
  double, 121

Cages in openers and scutchers, 117
Calculated strength of fibres, 32
Calculations, introduction to, 206

Calculations for surface speed, 210
of card, 305
of scutcher, 211
Calender rollers in scutcher, 184
weighting, 188
Cambodia cotton, 17
Card, revolving flat, 232
calculations, 305
centres, 277
clothing, 247
coiler, 284
cylinder, 245
cylinder wire, 245
deflection of flats, 291
dish feed, 236
doffer, 282
doffer comb, 300, 345
draw box, 284
feed part of, 233
feed rollers, 234
feed roller weighting, 301
flat grinding, 291, 321
flats, 251
flexibles, 256
gauges, 244
gearing, 305
grinding, 255, 289
Horsfall roller, 290, 298
mote knives, 239, 313
pedestals, 273, 280
roller and clearer, 228
sections of wire, 290
slow motion for doffer, 300, 321
stripping brushes, 286
supplementary notes on, 319
taker-in, 232, 236, 348
taker-in grids, 240
teeth of taker-in, 241
web, 302
Wellman, 227
wire, 245
counts of, 248
sections of, 247, 251, 255
Carding, 225
notes on, 346
Carding action, 251
Carding organs, 339
Ceara cotton, 10
Cell of cotton fibre, 26, 28
Cellulose, 31
China cotton, 19
Churka gin, 37
Cocanadas cotton, 18
Coiler of card, 284
Comb of doffer, 300, 345
Combined roller and flat card, 323
Combing beater for scutcher, 183
Composition of cotton fibre, 31
Condition of lap, 225
Cone drums on scutcher, 156, 193
Cone drum driving, 161, 201, 213
Cone drum strap, adjustment of, 193
Conical vertical beater opener, 103
horizontal beater opener, 112
Construction of cone drums, 158
Cotton, American, 10
kinds grown, 11
names of, 11
arrangement of twists, 28
bale breakers, 56
baling, 53
botanical varieties, 2
Brazilian, 9
cell structure, 26, 28
China, 19
composition of fibre, 31
countries of origin, 4
cultivation of, 33
Egyptian, 6
fibre, 1, 24
breaking weight of, 32
cell structure, 26, 28
crossed fibres, 226
damaged, 59
density of bale cotton, 56
diameters of, 20
faults in, 225
irregularity of twists in, 28
lengths and diameters of, 20, 353
microscopic appearance of, 25
natural twists in, 25
nepped, 226
strength of, 32
twists in, 26
Fiji and Tahiti Sea Island, 5
Florida Sea Island, 5
gins, 35
knife roller, 37
Macarthy, 8, 37, 42
saw, 49
used for various cottons, 53

Cotton, Gossypium Barbadense, 2, 4
Herbaceum, 2, 4
Hirsutum, 2, 4
Peruvian, 2, 4
Growing Association, British, 20
hopper feeders, 89
impurities in, 89
Indian, 17
linters, 53
mixing, 74
openers and scutchers, 101
picking, 34
plant, 1
pneumatic delivery of, 81
range of cultivation, 2
Russian, 20
sand and leaves in, 89
Scarto, 53
scutchers, 101, 149
Sea Islands, 2, 5
seeds, 1
sowing, 32
weights and measures, 221
Country damaged cotton, 59
Counts spun from Sea Islands, 5
Brazilian cotton, 9
of card wire, 248
Covering of bales, 58
Crighton's opener, 103
Cultivation of cotton, 33
Curves on cone drums, 156

Damaged cotton, 59
Deflection of flats, 291
Density of cotton in the bale, 56
Dharwar, 19
Dhollera, 19
Diameters and lengths of cotton fibres, 20, 353
Dish feed of card, 236
setting of, 181
Dividends, table of, 222
Doctor knife in gins, 37, 41, 48
Doffer, 282
comb, 300, 345
slow motion for, 300, 321
Double opener, 111, 118, 130
Doubling from laps, 152
Draft, 210
actual and calculated, 192
in openers, 191
Draft in scutcher, 191
Draw box in card, 284
Driving of the cone drums, 161, 213, 201
Drums, curves of cone, 160
Dust chambers, 222
trunks, 124

Egyptian cotton, 6
Abassi, 6, 7
Afifi, 6
area planted, 8
Ashmouni, 6, 7
Assili, 6, 7
Bamieh, 6
Feddan, 8
Gallini, 6
gins used for, 8
grades of, 8
Joanovitch, 6, 8
Jumel, 6
Kantar, 8
Mit Afifi, 6
Nubari, 6, 8
Sakellarides, 6, 8
Scarto, 53
Voltos, 6, 8
white, 6
Equalisation of laps, 154
Errors in card gauges, 244
Exhaust opener, 122
power, 125
production, 125
speed, 125

Fans in openers and scutchers, 188
speed of, 218
Feddan, 8
Feed part of card, 232
Feed roller weighting of card, 301
Feed rollers and pedals, 170
Feeders, hopper, 89
Fibre, composition of, 31
cotton, 1
natural twists in, 25
strength of, 32
Fibres, broken, 226
crossed, 226, 323
immature, 226
length and diameters of, 20, 353
short, 226

Fibres, stained, 225
Fiji and Tahiti Sea Islands, 2, 5
Fish-tail pendants, 160
Five setting-point flexible, 257, 262, 276
Flat card, revolving, 232
Flat grinding, 291
Flats of card, 251
Flexible bends of card, 256
Florida Sea Islands, 2, 5
Footsteps of vertical opener, 109
Foundation of card wire, 247
Full lap stop motion, 185

Gallini cotton, 6
Gauge for air pressure, 205
Gauges for card, 244
Gearing calculations, 206
  of card, 305
  of scutchers, 211
Georgia Sea Islands cotton, 5
Ginning output, 54
Gins, 35
  Churka, 37, 55
  double roller Macarthy, 47
  iron-framing, 53
  knife roller, 37
  leather roller of, 47
  Macarthy, 37, 42
  number of saws in, 50
  production of, 42, 46, 52
  saw, 49
  used for various cottons, 53
    Egyptian cotton, 8
  wood-framing, 53
Gossypium family of plants, 2
  Barbadense, 2, 4
  Herbaceum, 2, 4
  Hirsutum, 2, 4
  Peruvian, 2, 4
Grades of American cotton, 13
  Brazilian cotton, 10
  Egyptian cotton, 8
  Indian cotton, 19
  Peruvian cotton, 10
Grinding, 255, 289
  of card, 255, 289, 322
  flats, 291, 321
  roller, Horsfall, 290, 298

Hank, 221, 313
Heel and toe of flat, 252, 296
Herbaceum, Gossypium, 2, 4
Hinganghat cotton, 19
Hirsutum, Gossypium, 2, 4
Hopper bale breaker, 65
  advantages of, 70
  power to drive, 70
  production, 70
Hopper feeders, 89
  automatic feed, 92
  connected to openers, 97
Horizontal conical beater opener, 112
  production of, 115
  speed of, 115
Horsfall grinding roller, 290, 298
Hunter cog stop motion, 185
Hydraulic cotton press, 53
Hyperbola, 157

Immature fibres, 226
Imperfections of card gauges, 244
Impurities in cotton, 89
Indian cotton, 17
  Bani, 19
  Bengal, 19
  Broach, 19
  Buri, 18
  Cambodia, 17
  Cocanadas, 18
  Dharwar, 19
  Dhollera, 19
  Hinganghats, 19
  Jari, 18
  Kumpta, 19
  Madras or Westerns, 18
  Malvensis, 18
  Northerns, 18
  Oomra, 19
  Rosea, 18
  Surtee-Broach, 19
  Tinnevelly, 17, 18
  Vera, 18
  Westerns, 18
Indicator for speeds, 216
Information, useful, 314
Inspection of scutcher lap, 225
Introduction to gearing calculation, 206
Iron gins, 53
Iron bands on bales, 58

Irregularity of twist in the fibres, 28

Jari cotton, 18
Joanovitch cotton, 6, 8
Jumel cotton, 6

Kantar of cotton, 8, 54
Knife, doctor, 37, 41
  rail, 177
  roller gin, 37
    production of, 42
    speeds of, 42
Knives, mote, 239, 313
Kumpta cotton, 19

Lap, conditions of, 225
  end of scutcher, 184
  weight of, 185, 219
Laps, doubling of, 152
  equalisation of, 154
  testing of, 362
Lattice feeding machine, 126
  mixing, 76
  opener, 140
Leather roller of gins, 47
Length of lap, 219
Lengths, average of cotton fibres, 24
  and diameters of cotton fibres, 20, 353
Links and levers, arrangement of, 165
Linters, 53
List, universal, 314
Locking device for card, 323
Locking motion for scutcher beater, 198

Macarthy gin, 8, 37, 42
  power to drive, 46
  production of, 46
  speed of, 46
  gins, double roller, 47
Maceio cotton, 10
Madras cotton, 18
Malvaceæ, 2
Malvensis, 18
Maranham cotton, 9
Measures, weights and, 221
Microscopic appearance of cotton, 25
Mit Afifi, 6
Mixed card, 323
Mixing bins, 75
Mixing cotton, 74
Mixing without stacking, 78
Mobile cotton, 12
Mote knives, 239

Names of American cottons, 11
Natural twists, 26
Nepped cotton, 226
Northerns cotton, 18
Notes on carding, 346
Nubari cotton, 6, 8
Number of iron bands on bales, 58

Oomra cotton, 19
Opener, Buckley, 119, 121
  calender roller weighting, 188
  Crighton, 103
  double vertical, 111
  dust trunks, 124
  exhaust, 122
  fans, 187
  horizontal conical, 112
  patent lattice, 140
  porcupine, small, 101
    large, 115
  S. T. patent, 147
  stop motions, 185
  vertical conical beater, 103
  weight of laps, 219
  weighting calender rollers, 188
  Youlten, 135
Openers and scutchers, 101
  draft in, 191
Open-set card wire, 248
Orleans cotton, 12
Output of gins, 55

Parahyba, 10
Pedal bale breaker, 63
  motion, 154, 160, 189
  roller, speed of, 217
Pedestals of card, 273, 280
Percentage of waste in scutcher, 218
Pernambuco, 10
Pernams, 10
Peruvian cotton, grades of, 10
  rough, 9
  Sea Islands, 5
  smooth, 9
Piano motion, 154, 160

Picking cotton, time of, 34
Pneumatic delivery of cotton, 81
Porcupine bale breaker, 65
  opener, large, 115
    small, 101
Power to drive exhaust opener, 125
  hopper bale breaker, 70
  vertical opener, 112
Press, hydraulic cotton, 53
  screw cotton, 53
  steam cotton, 53
Pressure on cotton bales, 57
Principle of cone driving, 156
Production of exhaust opener, 125
  horizontal conical opener, 115
  knife roller gin, 42
  Macarthy gin, 46
  saw gin, 52
  scutcher, 219
  vertical opener, 112

Quotations of American cotton, 15

Rail, bowl, 161
  knife, 177
Regulation of air in openers and scutchers, 203
Regulator, cone drum, 156
Revolving flat card, 232
Rib-set wire filleting, 248
Roller and clearer card, 228
Rollers, scutcher calender, 184
  Horsfall, 290, 298
Rosea cotton, 18
Rough Peruvian cotton, 9
Russian cotton, 20

Sakellarides cotton, 6, 8
Sand in cotton, 89
Saw gins, 49
  number of saws in, 50
  production of, 52
Scarto, 53
Screw press, 53
Scutcher beaters, 179
  beater bars, 150, 174, 177
  calculations, 211
  combing beater, 183
  cone drums, 156
  doubling from laps, 152
  dust chambers, 222
Scutcher, equalisation of laps, 154
  fans, 188
  gearing calculations, 211
  knife rail, 177
  lap, inspection of, 225
    condition of, 225
  lap end, 184
  pedal motion, 154, 160
  piano motion, 154, 160
  production of, 219
  stop motions, 185
  stripping plate, 173
  supplementary notes on, 189
  three-bladed beater, 179
  two-bladed beater, 179
  waste, 182, 219
  weight of laps, 185
  weighting of calender rollers, 188
Scutchers, 101, 149
  draft in, 191, 217
  locking motion, 198
Scutchers and openers, 101
Sea Islands cotton, 2, 4
  Carolina, 5
  Fiji and Tahiti, 2, 5
  Florida, 2, 5
  Georgia, 5
  Peruvian, 5
  varieties of, 2, 4
Sections of card wire, 290
Seeds, cotton, 1
Setting of dish feed, 243, 348
  taker-in, 243, 348
Short fibres, 226
Single setting-point flexible, 258
Size of bales, 47, 51
Sliver, testing of, 364
Slow motion for doffer, 299, 301, 321
Smooth Peruvian, 9
Sowing cotton, time of, 32
Speed of beater, 216
  indicators, 216
  of pedal roller, 217
Speeds of exhaust, 125
  gins, 42, 46, 52
  horizontal conical opener, 115
  vertical opener, 112
S. T. opener, 147
Stained fibres, 225
Steam press, 53
Stop motions on scutchers, 185

Strength of cotton fibre, 28
Stripping brushes of card, 286
  plate, 173
Supplementary notes on cards, 319
  scutcher, 189
Surface speed calculations, 210
Surtee-Broach, 19

TABLE of dividends, 222
  measure, 221
Table of weights, 221
Tachometer, 216
Tahiti Sea Islands cotton, 2, 5
Taker-in, 174, 233, 236
  action of, 242
  setting of, 243
  teeth, 241
  undercasing, 240
Teeth of card cylinder, 245
  taker-in, 241
Testing laps, 362
  card slivers, 364
Texas cotton, 12
Tinnevelly, 17
  American, 18
Traverse motion for grinding roller, 322
Trunks, dust, 124
Twill-set wire, 248
Twists in cotton fibre, 26

UNDERCASING of taker-in, 240, 319
Universal list, 314
Uplands cotton, 12
Useful information, 314

VARIETIES of cotton, 2
  Sea Islands cotton, 5
Vertical beater opener, 103
  double, 111
  footsteps, 109
  power, 112
  production, 112
  speed, 112
Voltos, cotton, 6, 8

WASTE in scutcher, 182, 219
Web of card, 302, 323
Weight of bales, 47, 51
  bands on bales, 58
  laps, 185, 219
Weighting of calender rollers, 188
  feed rollers of card, 301
Weights and measures, 221
Wellman card, 227
Westerns cotton, 18
White Egyptian cotton, 6
Wire of card cylinder, 245, 326
  counts of card, 248
  open-set, 248
  rib-set, 248
  sections of card, 247, 251, 255, 290
  stripping brush, 286
  twill-set, 248
Wooden gins, 53

YOULTEN opener, 135

END OF VOL. I

Printed in Great Britain by R. & R. CLARK, LIMITED, *Edinburgh.*

The Textile Mercury

THE WEEKLY TEXTILE JOURNAL

for

REPORTS of MEETINGS of TEXTILE SOCIETIES, and the earliest information on TEXTILE MARKETS, FINANCE, MACHINERY, &c.

Weekly, 6d. :: Annual Subscriptions: U.K., £1 : 10 : 0. :: Abroad, £1 : 17 : 6.

The Cotton Year Book.

These Books review the Cotton and Wool Industries, give comprehensive descriptions of processes of Manufacture from Raw Material to Finished Product, and include descriptions of the latest Machinery and Inventions.

Used by Mill Managers, Overlookers, etc., and as Text Books in Textile Colleges.

Price 7s. 6d., Post Free 8s.

The Wool Year Book.

PUBLISHED BY

MARSDEN & CO. LTD.,

1 Brazennose Street, MANCHESTER.

London Office: 69 Fleet Street, E.C.4.

Codes used:

Telegraphic Address:
"ASA, OLDHAM."

"A1," "A B C,"
4th & 5th Editions,
"Atlantic,"
"Bentleys."

Telephone:
No. 777 OLDHAM.

ASA LEES & CO.

LIMITED,

SOHO IRON WORKS, OLDHAM.

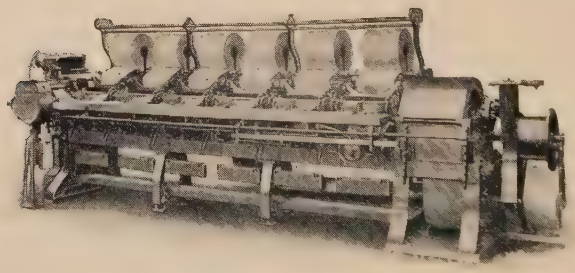
MAKERS OF

ALL KINDS OF MACHINERY

FOR

PREPARING, COMBING, SPINNING & DOUBLING

Cotton, Wool, Worsted, etc.



(IMPROVED COMBER NASMITH TYPE)

SAMUEL O'NEILL & SONS

LIMITED

CASTLETON, *near* MANCHESTER

MAKERS OF PAPER TUBES OF EVERY DESCRIPTION FOR ALL TEXTILE PURPOSES

Telephone:
92 Rochdale (2 Lines).

Telegrams:
"O'Neill, Castleton, Lancs."

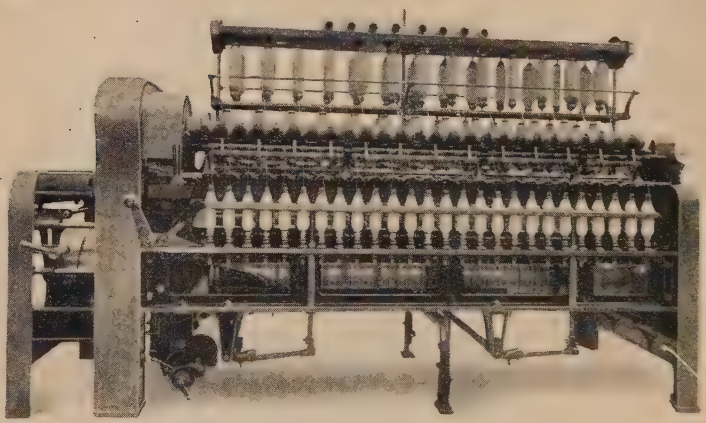
Telegrams: "Globe, Castleton-Lancashire"
Telephone: 287 Rochdale.

Royal Exchange, Manchester
Pillar H.2.

TWEEDALES & SMALLEY,

(1920) LTD.,

CASTLETON, LANCASHIRE



COTTON SPINNING AND DOUBLING MACHINERY

Hopper Bale Openers.
Hopper Feeders.
Porcupine Feed Tables.
Crighton Openers.
Exhaust Openers.
Large Cylinder Openers.
Scutchers.

Viz.:

Flat Carding Engines.
Drawing Frames.
Slubbing Frames.
Intermediate Frames.
Roving Frames.
Twist and Weft Ring Frames.
Wet and Dry Ring Doubling Frames.

Also ROLLER and CLEARER CARDS (4-coiler and condenser systems) for WASTE.

TAYLOR, LANG & CO., LTD.

Castle Iron Works, STALYBRIDGE.

Telegraphic Address: "*Lang, Stalybridge.*" *Telephone No.* **107.**
Manchester Exchange, Tuesdays and Fridays, **E8.**

MAKERS OF

MACHINERY FOR PREPARING & SPINNING COTTON

ALSO FOR

SPINNING WOOL & WASTE YARNS.

"BUCKLEY'S" COMBINED OPENER.
With Patent Cleaning Arrangement, made only by Taylor, Lang & Co., Ltd.

- Hopper Bale Opener and Cotton Mixer.
- Conveying and Distributing Lattice Work.
- Exhaust Fans for Transit of Cotton.
- Hopper Feeder with Patent Feed Supply Apparatus.
- Buckley's Patent Combined Opener with One Cylinder and One Beater.
- Buckley's Patent Combined Opener with Two Cylinders and one Beater.
- Buckley's Patent Opener specially arranged for Sea Island Cotton.
- Crighton Opener.
- Roving Waste Opener.
- Scutcher or Lap Machine (Single or Double).
- Self-acting Mules for Coarse, Medium, or Fine Counts.
- Patent Self-acting Mules, with One, Two, or Three Spindle Speeds for Spinning Waste, Barchant, or Woollen Yarns.

PLATT BROTHERS & CO., LTD.

HARTFORD WORKS

OLDHAM, ENGLAND

(ESTABLISHED 1821)

MAKERS OF MACHINERY IN GREAT VARIETY

FOR

GINNING COTTON, OPENING, CARDING, COMBING, PREPARING, SPINNING, DOUBLING & WEAVING COTTON, WOOL, WORSTED, WASTE, SILK WASTE, ASBESTOS, Etc.

Highest Awards of Merit at International and other Exhibitions for Textile Machinery

Telephone: No. 1826.

Telegrams: "PLATTS, OLDHAM."

WM. SCOTT TAGGART, M.I.MECH.E.

CONSULTING ENGINEER.

22 BRIDGE STREET,
MANCHESTER.
TELE.: 3815 CENTRAL.

ALSO EAST BANK,
DOFFCOCKER,
BOLTON.

SPECIAL BRANCH

MILL MACHINERY.
MILL EQUIPMENT.
MILL METHODS.
MILL ORGANISATION.

AUTHOR OF

COTTON SPINNING

3 VOLUMES

COTTON MILL MANAGEMENT.
COTTON MILL CALCULATIONS.
COTTON MACHINERY SKETCHES.

Crown 8vo. **10s.** *net.*

COTTON MILL MANAGEMENT

A PRACTICAL GUIDE FOR MANAGERS, CARDERS AND OVERLOOKERS

BY

WILLIAM SCOTT TAGGART, M.I.Mech.E.

CONTENTS

Introduction. Chap. I. Cotton. II. Bales. III. Mixing. IV. Bale Breakers, etc. V. Hopper Feeder. VI. Openers and Scutchers. VII. Carding. VIII. Drawing Frames. IX. Comber and Preparing Machines. X. Bobbin and Flyer Frames: Speed Frames. XI. Self-acting Mule. XII. Ring Frames. XIII. Testing. XIV. Miscellaneous. Index.

The above contents will indicate the scope of the book. Each section is treated very fully in every practical detail. Very complete conditions are given for each process in regard to the most efficient and economical working, with hanks, speeds, drafts, settings, etc., for all ranges of counts and cottons.

Many mills are working under conditions that are far from being economical or efficient. This may be due to careless supervision, or too strict an adherence to old methods, or a failure to appreciate the great importance of the essential details, or in many cases to a lack of a clear understanding of how to obtain the best and most out of each machine with a view to reducing labour, increasing production, eliminating machines and attaining a high standard in the ultimate yarn.

The book deals with these practical factors in mill management and has been written solely for practical men.

TRANSMISSION OF POWER BY ROPES

FOR EFFICIENCY AND ECONOMY USE

KENYON'S PATENT INTERSTRANDED COTTON DRIVING ROPES

EXPERT ADVICE.

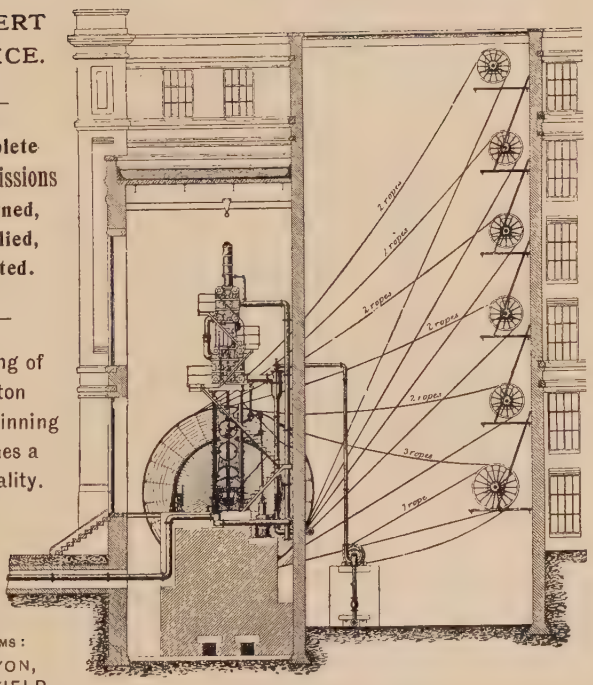
—

Complete Transmissions Designed, Supplied, Erected.

—

Driving of Cotton Ring Spinning Frames a Speciality.

—



SPINNING MILL DRIVE.

Ask for our Pamphlet: "The Transmission of Power by Ropes."

New Edition in Preparation.

—

Place your Problems before us.

—

CABLES—TELEGRAMS: KENYON, DUKINFIELD.

TELEPHONE: 494-495 ASHTON-U.-LYNE.

WM. KENYON & SONS, LTD.

DUKINFIELD, CHESHIRE, ENGLAND.

Branches—
Cablerie du Nord, Armentieres, France.
Woodhouse Bros., Preston, Lancs., Eng.
John Ruscoe & Co., Ltd., Hyde, Ches., Eng.

LONDON OFFICE: Wm. Kenyon & Sons, Ltd., 95-97 Finsbury Pavement, E.C.

CANADIAN AGENTS: Dodge Manufacturing Co. of Canada, Ltd., Toronto.

U.S.A. AGENTS: Dodge Manufacturing Co., Mishawaka, Indiana.

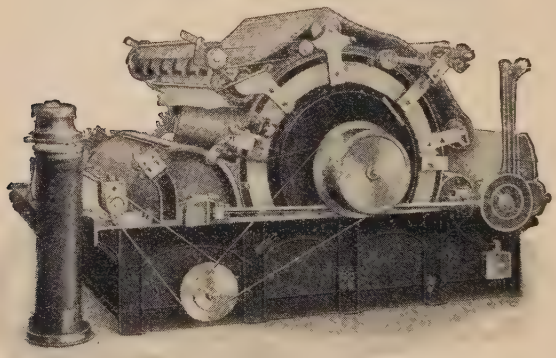
Telephone No. 3745 City.
Telegraphic Address: "HETH," MANCHESTER.

JOHN HETHERINGTON & SONS,

(Proprietors of Curtis, Sons, & Co.) **LTD.**

Pollard Street, MANCHESTER.

Makers of all kinds of Machinery for
OPENING, SCUTCHING, CARDING, PREPARING,
SPINNING, and DOUBLING COTTON.



NEW PATENT CARD

Combining all the latest improvements.

CARDING and SPINNING MACHINERY for Waste and Wadding,
also for Woollen and Worsted Yarns.

MAKERS OF

THE "NASMITH" COMBER

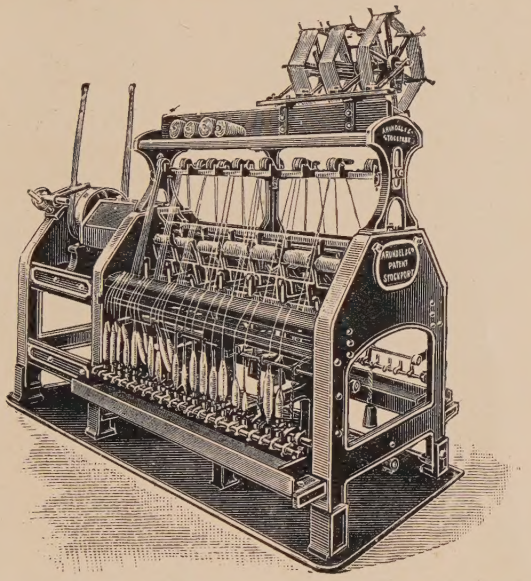
And ALL-METAL CARRIAGE FOR SELF-ACTING MULES.

Engineers' Machine Tools, Mill Gearing, Hoists, &c.

MODERN WINDING.

High Speed. Maximum Production. Minimum Waste.

INSTANTANEOUS STOP MOTION.



NO COBWEBBED ENDS.

To Wind any Class of Yarns, with or without Stop Motion.

This Frame is arranged specially for the Woollen and Worsted Trades, for both Single and Multiple End Winding, and with and without Conditioning Arrangement.

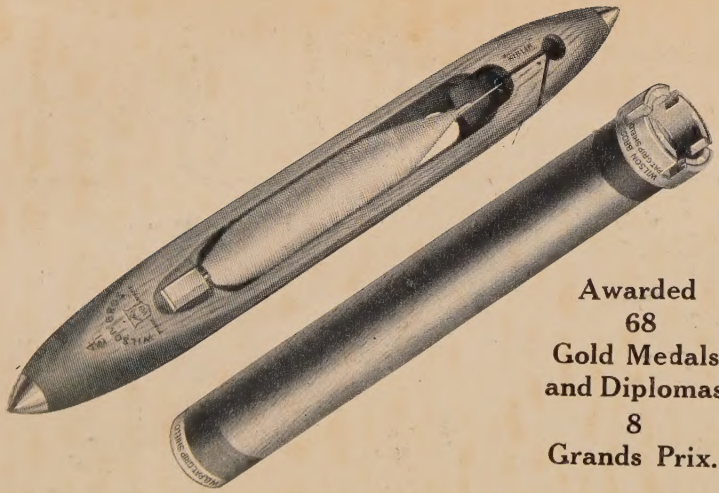
The Most Perfect Machine on the Market for Winding Yarns for the Creel of Twisting Frames.

ARUNDEL & CO.

Sovereign Works,

STOCKPORT.

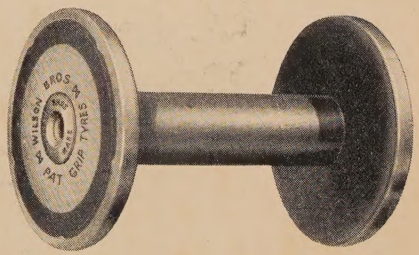
Manchester Exchange, Tuesday and Friday, No. 14 Pillar. Tel. No. **606**.



BOBBINS & SHUTTLES

FOR

TEXTILE PURPOSES



Awarded
68
Gold Medals
and Diplomas
8
Grands Prix.

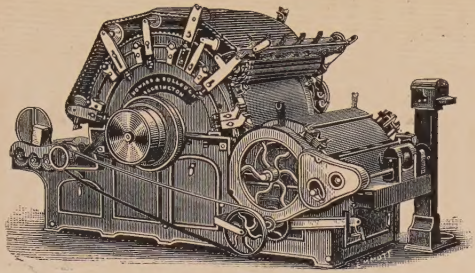
Wilson Bros. Bobbin Co. Ltd.,

GARSTON, LIVERPOOL.

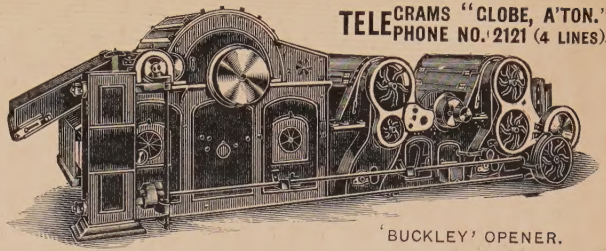
Largest Makers in the World.

HOWARD & BULLOUGH, Ltd., ACCRINGTON.

TELEGRAMS "GLOBE, A'TON."
TELEPHONE NO. 2121 (4 LINES).



FLAT CARDING ENGINE.



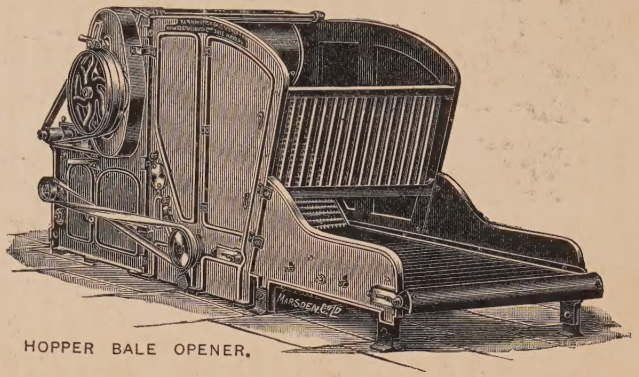
'BUCKLEY' OPENER.

MAKERS OF

Cotton Opening, Scutching Carding, Combing, Roving, Spinning and Doubling Machinery,

also of

Winding, Beaming and Sizing Machines.



HOPPER BALE OPENER.